

## NOTICE

THE MATERIAL ON THIS CD-ROM DOES NOT  
CONSTITUTE AN OFFICIAL COPY OF THE D.C.  
CONSTRUCTION CODES SUPPLEMENT OF 2003.

DCRA HAS PROVIDED THIS MATERIAL AS A COURTESY  
FOR TRAINING PURPOSES, BUT IS NOT RESPONSIBLE  
FOR ANY ERRORS OR OMISSIONS, OR ANY  
INCONSISTENCIES WITH THE OFFICIAL VERSION.

THE OFFICIAL VERSION OF THE REGULATIONS CAN  
ONLY BE FOUND IN THE D.C. REGISTER OR IN THE  
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS  
PUBLISHED BY THE DC OFFICE OF DOCUMENTS. TO  
ORDER AN OFFICIAL COPY, YOU MAY CALL THE OFFICE  
OF DOCUMENTS AT (202) 727-5090 OR GO TO 441 4<sup>TH</sup>  
STREET, NW, ROOM 520S BETWEEN THE HOURS OF 9AM  
AND 4PM, MONDAY THROUGH FRIDAY.

<b>DCMR 12 CONSTRUCTION CODE.TITLE PAGE.....</b>	<b>- 1 -</b>
<b>DCMR 12A BUILDING CODE .....</b>	<b>- 2 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1A ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT (12A).....</b>	<b>- 2 -</b>
<b>SECTION 101A GENERAL.....</b>	<b>- 2 -</b>
<b>SECTION 102A APPLICABILITY .....</b>	<b>- 10 -</b>
<b>SECTION 103A DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND REGULATORY AFFAIRS .....</b>	<b>- 14 -</b>
<b>SECTION 104A DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL.....</b>	<b>- 15 -</b>
<b>SECTION 105A PERMITS .....</b>	<b>- 19 -</b>
<b>SECTION 106A CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS.....</b>	<b>- 46 -</b>
<b>SECTION 107A TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND USES.....</b>	<b>- 58 -</b>
<b>SECTION 108A FEES.....</b>	<b>- 58 -</b>
<b>SECTION 109A INSPECTIONS.....</b>	<b>- 60 -</b>
<b>SECTION 110A CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY .....</b>	<b>- 69 -</b>
<b>SECTION 111A SERVICE UTILITIES .....</b>	<b>- 74 -</b>
<b>SECTION 112A APPEALS .....</b>	<b>- 74 -</b>
<b>SECTION 113A VIOLATIONS AND INFRACTIONS .....</b>	<b>- 75 -</b>
<b>SECTION 114A STOP WORK ORDER.....</b>	<b>- 77 -</b>
<b>SECTION 115A UNSAFE STRUCTURES.....</b>	<b>- 78 -</b>
<b>SECTION 116A EMERGENCY MEASURES.....</b>	<b>- 79 -</b>
<b>SECTION 117A POSTING STRUCTURES.....</b>	<b>- 79 -</b>
<b>SECTION 118A STREET NUMBERING AND ADDRESSES OF STRUCTURES,..</b>	<b>- 80 -</b>
<b>SECTION 119A ADMINISTRATIVE PLUMBING PROVISIONS.....</b>	<b>- 81 -</b>
<b>SECTION 120A ADMINISTRATIVE MECHANICAL PROVISIONS.....</b>	<b>- 84 -</b>
<b>SECTION 121A ADMINISTRATIVE ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS .....</b>	<b>- 87 -</b>
<b>SECTION 122A AMENDMENTS AND COPIES.....</b>	<b>- 88 -</b>
<b>SECTION 123A TRANSITORY PROVISIONS .....</b>	<b>- 89 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2A DEFINITIONS.....</b>	<b>- 92 -</b>
<b>SECTION 202A DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>- 92 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3A USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION .....</b>	<b>- 94 -</b>
<b>SECTION 310A RESIDENTIAL GROUP R.....</b>	<b>- 94 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4A SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND</b>	
<b>OCCUPANCY.....</b>	<b>- 95 -</b>
<b>SECTION 419A GROUP HOMES FOR THE MENTALLY RETARDED.....</b>	<b>- 95 -</b>
<b>SECTION 420A COMMUNITY BASED RESIDENTIAL FACILITY.....</b>	<b>- 96 -</b>
<b>SECTION 421A ASSISTED LIVING FACILITY .....</b>	<b>- 97 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5A GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS .....</b>	<b>- 99 -</b>
<b>SECTION 503A GENERAL HEIGHT AND AREA LIMITATIONS .....</b>	<b>- 99 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7A FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION.....</b>	<b>- 100 -</b>
<b>SECTION 704A EXTERIOR WALLS.....</b>	<b>- 100 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9A FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>- 102 -</b>
<b>SECTION 907A FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>- 102 -</b>
<b>SECTION 908A EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS .....</b>	<b>- 102 -</b>
<b>SECTION 911A FIRE COMMAND CENTER .....</b>	<b>- 103 -</b>
<b>SECTION 912A FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS.....</b>	<b>- 104 -</b>
<b>SECTION 913A FIRE PUMP.....</b>	<b>- 104 -</b>
<b>SECTION 914A EXPLOSION CONTROL.....</b>	<b>- 105 -</b>

SECTION 915A FIRE DEPARTMENT ACCESS TO EQUIPMENT .....	105 -
SECTION 916A PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS.....	105 -
SECTION 917A KEY BOXES .....	105 -
SECTION 918A PREMISES IDENTIFICATION .....	106 -
SECTION 919A FIRE APPARATUS ACCESS ROADS .....	106 -
CHAPTER 10A MEANS OF EGRESS .....	107 -
SECTION 1003A GENERAL MEANS OF EGRESS .....	107 -
SECTION 1004A EXIT ACCESS .....	107 -
SECTION 1005A EXITS.....	107 -
CHAPTER 11A ACCESSIBILITY.....	110 -
SECTION 1101A GENERAL.....	110 -
SECTION 1102A DEFINITIONS .....	110 -
SECTION 1103A SCOPING REQUIREMENTS .....	112 -
SECTION 1104A ACCESSIBLE ROUTE .....	113 -
SECTION 1105A ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES.....	115 -
SECTION 1106A PARKING AND PASSENGER LOADING FACILITIES.....	115 -
SECTION 1107A DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS.....	117 -
SECTION 1108A SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES.....	124 -
SECTION 1109A OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES .....	129 -
SECTION 1110A SIGNAGE .....	135 -
SECTION 1111A TELEPHONES .....	137 -
SECTION 1112A BUS STOPS AND TERMINALS .....	139 -
SECTION 1113A FIXED TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES .....	140 -
SECTION 1114A REFERENCED STANDARD.....	143 -
CHAPTER 12A INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT .....	150 -
SECTION 1204A LIGHTING .....	150 -
CHAPTER 16A STRUCTURAL DESIGN .....	151 -
SECTION 1604A GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS.....	151 -
SECTION 1607A LIVE LOADS .....	151 -
SECTION 1608A SNOW LOADS.....	151 -
SECTION 1609A WIND LOADS.....	152 -
CHAPTER 18A SOILS AND FOUNDATION .....	153 -
SECTION 1805A FOOTINGS AND FOUNDATIONS .....	153 -
CHAPTER 24A GLASS AND GLAZING .....	154 -
SECTION 2406A SAFETY GLAZING .....	154 -
CHAPTER 30A ELEVATOR AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS .....	155 -
SECTION 3001A GENERAL.....	155 -
CHAPTER 31A SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION .....	157 -
SECTION 3105A AWNINGS AND CANOPIES.....	157 -
SECTION 3106A MARQUEES.....	158 -
SECTION 3107A SIGNS.....	158 -
SECTION 3110A FENCES.....	187 -
CHAPTER 32A ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT OF WAY .....	190 -
SECTION 3201A GENERAL.....	190 -
SECTION 3202A ENCROACHMENTS .....	190 -
CHAPTER 33A SAFEGUARDS .....	206 -
SECTION 3301A GENERAL.....	206 -

SECTION 3303A DEMOLITION.....	206 -
SECTION 3307A PROTECTION OF ADJOINING PROPERTY .....	207 -
CHAPTER 34A EXISTING STRUCTURES.....	210 -
CHAPTER 35A REFERENCED STANDARDS .....	210 -
DCMR 12B RESIDENTIAL CODE .....	211 -
CHAPTER 3B BUILDING PLANNING.....	211 -
SECTION R-301 DESIGN CRITERIA .....	211 -
SECTION R-303 LIGHT, VENTILATION & HEATING .....	211 -
SECTION R-304 MINIMUM ROOM AREAS.....	211 -
SECTION R-305 CEILING HEIGHT .....	212 -
SECTION R-310 EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS .....	212 -
SECTION R-312 LANDINGS .....	212 -
SECTION R-314 STAIRWAYS .....	212 -
SECTION R-315 HANDRAILS .....	213 -
SECTION R-321 DWELLING UNIT SEPARATION.....	213 -
SECTION R-328 SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS, AND HOT TUBS .....	214 -
CHAPTER 5B FLOORS.....	215 -
SECTION R-502 .....	215 -
CHAPTER 6B WALL CONSTRUCTION .....	217 -
SECTION R-602 WOOD WALL FRAMING .....	217 -
CHAPTER 30B SANITARY DRAINAGE.....	218 -
SECTION R-3005 DRAINAGE SYSTEM .....	218 -
CHAPTER 31B VENTS .....	219 -
SECTION R-3111 COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM.....	219 -
CHAPTER 33B GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.....	220 -
SECTION R-3301 GENERAL.....	220 -
DCMR 12C ELECTRIC CODE.....	221 -
CHAPTER 1C DEFINITIONS.....	221 -
ARTICLE E-100 GENERAL.....	221 -
ARTICLE-110 REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS .....	222 -
CHAPTER 2C WIRING AND PROTECTION.....	223 -
ARTICLE E-210 BRANCH CIRCUITS .....	223 -
ARTICLE E-225 OUTSIDE BRANCH CIRCUITS AND FEEDERS .....	223 -
ARTICLE E-230 SERVICES .....	226 -
ARTICLE E-240 OVERCURRENT PROTECTION .....	228 -
CHAPTER 3C WIRING METHODS AND MATERIALS.....	229 -
ARTICLE E-300 WIRING METHODS.....	229 -
ARTICLE E-310 CONDUCTORS FOR GENERAL WIRING.....	229 -
ARTICLE E-384 SWITCHBOARDS AND PANEL BOARDS .....	229 -
CHAPTER 6C SPECIAL EQUIPMENT .....	231 -
ARTICLE E-680 SWIMMING POOLS, FOUNTAINS AND SIMILAR INSTALLATIONS.....	231 -
CHAPTER 7C SPECIAL CONDITIONS.....	232 -
ARTICLE E-700 EMERGENCY SYSTEMS .....	232 -
ARTICLE E-760 FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS.....	232 -
DCMR 12D FUEL GAS CODE.....	233 -
CHAPTER 3D GENERAL REGULATIONS.....	233 -

SECTION FG-304.....	233 -
SECTION FG-305 INSTALLATION .....	234 -
CHAPTER 5D CHIMNEY AND VENTS .....	235 -
SECTION FG-503 VENTING OF EQUIPMENT.....	235 -
CHAPTER 6D SPECIFIC APPLIANCES.....	236 -
SECTION FG-622 COOKING APPLIANCES .....	236 -
DCMR 12E MECHANICAL CODE.....	237 -
CHAPTER 4E VENTILATION.....	237 -
SECTION M-401 GENERAL.....	237 -
CHAPTER 5E EXHAUST SYSTEMS .....	238 -
SECTION M-506 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE DUCTS AND EXHAUST EQUIPMENT.....	238 -
SECTION M-514 Laboratory Hoods.....	238 -
CHAPTER 8E CHIMNEYS AND VENTS .....	239 -
SECTION M-801 GENERAL.....	239 -
CHAPTER 9E SPECIFIC APPLIANCES, .....	240 -
SECTION M-922 KEROSENE AND OIL-FIRED STOVES.....	240 -
CHAPTER 10E BOILERS, WATER HEATERS .....	241 -
SECTION M-1004 BOILERS.....	241 -
SECTION M-1012 INSPECTION CRITERIA.....	241 -
SECTION M-1013ADDITIONAL GENERAL & SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS .....	241 -
SECTION M-1014 CONSTRUCTION, INSTALLATION, AND OPERATION OF BOILERS AND UNFIRED PRESSURE .....	248 -
SECTION M-1015 WATER STORAGE TANKS, WATER HEATERS, HYDRO- PNEUMATIC TANKS .....	264 -
SECTION M-1016 WELDING ON BOILERS AND UNFIRED PRESSURE VESSELS.....	270 -
SECTION M-1017 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS. POWER BOILERS .....	278 -
SECTION M-1018 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS - HEATING BOILERS .....	283 -
SECTION M-1019 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS - MINIATURE BOILERS .....	285 -
SECTION M-1020 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS - UNFIRED PRESSURE VESSELS.....	288 -
CHAPTER 11E REFRIGERATION .....	292 -
SECTION M-1105 MACHINERY ROOM, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS .....	292 -
CHAPTER 15E REFERENCED STANDARDS .....	293 -
DCMR 12F PLUMBING CODE .....	294 -
CHAPTER 2F DEFINITIONS .....	294 -
SECTION P-202 gENERAL DEFINITIONS.....	294 -
CHAPTER 3F GENERAL REGULATIONS .....	295 -
SECTION P-301 GENERAL .....	295 -
SECTION P-305 PROTECTION OF PIPES AND PLUMBING SYSTEM COMPONENTS.....	295 -
SECTION P-306 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL .....	295 -
CHAPTER 6F WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION.....	297 -
SECTION P-605 MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS.....	297 -
CHAPTER 7F SANITARY DRAINAGE.....	299 -
SECTION P-708 CLEANOUTS.....	299 -
CHAPTER 11F STORM DRAINAGE .....	300 -

SECTION P-1101 GENERAL .....	300 -
DCMR 12G PROPERTY MAINTENANCE CODE.....	301 -
CHAPTER 2G DEFINITIONS .....	301 -
SECTION PM-201 GENERAL .....	301 -
CHAPTER 3G GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.....	302 -
SECTION PM-301 GENERAL .....	302 -
SECTION PM-302 EXTERIOR PROPERTY AREAS .....	302 -
SECTION PM-303 EXTERIOR STRUCTURE .....	302 -
CHAPTER 5G PLUMBING FACILITIES.....	304 -
SECTION PM-505 WATER SYSTEM .....	304 -
CHAPTER 6G MECHANICAL.....	305 -
SECTION PM-602 HEATING FACILITIES .....	305 -
SECTION PM-608 AIR CONDITIONING.....	305 -
CHAPTER 7G FIRE SAFETY REQUIREMENTS.....	307 -
SECTION PM-702 MEANS OF EGRESS .....	307 -
SECTION PM-704 FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS.....	307 -
SECTION PM-705 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS AGAINST FIRE .....	307 -
DCMR 12H FIRE CODE.....	309 -
CHAPTER 1H ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .....	309 -
SECTION F-101 GENERAL .....	309 -
SECTION F-102 APPLICABILITY .....	310 -
SECTION F-103 THE FIRE DEPARTMENT .....	311 -
SECTION F-104 APPROVAL.....	311 -
SECTION F-105 AUTHORITY .....	312 -
SECTION F-106 DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL.....	313 -
SECTION F-107 PERMITS.....	314 -
SECTION F-108 INSPECTIONS.....	324 -
SECTION F-109 AUTHORITY AT THE SCENE OF FIRES AND OTHER EMERGENCIES.....	325 -
SECTION F-110 UNSAFE CONDITIONS.....	326 -
SECTION F-111 EMERGENCY MEASURES .....	328 -
SECTION F-112 VIOLATIONS .....	328 -
SECTION F-113 MEANS OF APPEALS.....	330 -
SECTION F-114 STOP WORK ORDER.....	331 -
CHAPTER 3H GENERAL PRECAUTIONS.....	333 -
SECTION F-307 OPEN BURNING.....	333 -
SECTION F-308 OPEN FLAMES.....	333 -
SECTION F-314 INDOOR DISPLAYS.....	333 -
CHAPTER 5H FIRE SERVICE FEATURES .....	335 -
SECTION F-503 FIRE APPARATUS ACCESS ROADS .....	335 -
SECTION F-505 PREMISES IDENTIFICATION .....	335 -
SECTION F-508 FIRE PROTECTION WATER SUPPLIES .....	335 -
SECTION F-508 FIRE COMMAND CENTER .....	335 -
CHAPTER 6H BUILDING SERVICES AND SYSTEMS .....	336 -
SECTION F-603 FUEL-FIRED APPLIANCES.....	336 -
SECTION F-604 EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS.....	336 -
SECTION F-606 MECHANICAL REFRIGERATION .....	336 -

SECTION F-607 ELEVATOR RECALL AND MAINTENANCE .....	336 -
SECTION F-608 STATIONARY LEAD-ACID BATTERY SYSTEMS .....	336 -
SECTION F-609 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS .....	337 -
CHAPTER 7H FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED .....	338 -
SECTION F-704 FLOOR OPENINGS AND SHAFTS .....	338 -
CHAPTER 9H FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS.....	338 -
SECTION F-901 GENERAL .....	338 -
SECTION F-902 DEFINITIONS .....	338 -
SECTION F-903 AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS .....	338 -
SECTION F-904 ALTERNATIVE AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS.....	338 -
SECTION F-905 STANDPIPE SYSTEMS .....	339 -
SECTION F-907 FIRE ALARM DETECTION SYSTEMS .....	340 -
SECTION F-908 EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS.....	340 -
SECTION F-909 SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS.....	341 -
SECTION F-910 SMOKE AND HEAT VENTS.....	341 -
SECTION F-912 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS.....	341 -
SECTION F-913 FIRE PUMPS .....	341 -
CHAPTER 10H MEANS OF EGRESS .....	342 -
SECTION F-1011 MAINTENANCE OF THE MEANS OF EGRESS .....	342 -
SECTION F-1012 EMERGENCY ESCAPE WINDOWS.....	342 -
SECTION F-1013 STAIR IDENTIFICATION .....	342 -
CHAPTER 12H DRY CLEANING.....	344 -
SECTION F-1201 GENERAL .....	344 -
CHAPTER 14H FIRE SAFETY DURING CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION ..	344 -
SECTION F-1401 GENERAL .....	344 -
CHAPTER 15H FLAMMABLE FINISHES.....	344 -
SECTION F-1501 GENERAL .....	344 -
CHAPTER 22H SERVICE STATIONS AND REPAIR GARAGES .....	344 -
SECTION F-2201 GENERAL .....	344 -
CHAPTER 24H TENTS AND OTHER MEMBRANE STRUCTURES.....	345 -
SECTION F-2401 GENERAL .....	345 -
CHAPTER 25H TIRE REBUILDING AND.....	345 -
SECTION F-2501 GENERAL .....	345 -
CHAPTER 26H WELDING AND .....	345 -
SECTION F-2601 GENERAL .....	346 -
CHAPTER 33H EXPLOSIVES AND FIREWORKS.....	347 -
SECTION F-3309 FIREWORKS.....	347 -
CHAPTER 38H LIQUIFIED PETROLEUM GASES.....	355 -
SECTION F-3801 GENERAL .....	355 -
DCMR 12 I ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE .....	356 -
DCMR 12 J EXISTING BUILDING.....	357-
CHAPTER 1 ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .....	357 -
SECTION EX-101 GENERAL .....	357 -
CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS.....	358 -
SECTION EX-201 GENERAL .....	358 -

SECTION EX-202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS .....	358 -
CHAPTER 3 CLASSIFICATION OF WORK.....	362 -
SECTION EX-301 GENERAL.....	362 -
SECTION EX-302 REPAIRS .....	362 -
SECTION EX-303 ALTERATION - LEVEL 1.....	362 -
SECTION EX-304 ALTERATION - LEVEL 2.....	362 -
SECTION EX-305 ALTERATION - LEVEL 3.....	362 -
SECTION EX-306 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY.....	363 -
SECTION EX-307 ADDITIONS.....	363 -
SECTION EX-308 HISTORIC BUILDINGS .....	363 -
SECTION EX-309 RELOCATED BUILDINGS.....	363 -
CHAPTER 4 REPAIRS .....	364 -
SECTION EX-401 GENERAL.....	364 -
SECTION EX-402 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY .....	364 -
SECTION EX-403 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS .....	364 -
SECTION EX-404 FIRE PROTECTION .....	364 -
SECTION EX-405 MEANS OF EGRESS.....	365 -
SECTION EX-406 ACCESSIBILITY .....	365 -
SECTION EX-407 STRUCTURAL .....	365 -
SECTION EX-408 ELECTRICAL .....	368 -
SECTION EX-409 MECHANICAL .....	368 -
SECTION EX-410 PLUMBING.....	369 -
SECTION EX-411 FUEL GAS.....	369 -
CHAPTER 5 ALTERATIONS LEVEL1 .....	371 -
SECTION EX-501 GENERAL.....	371 -
SECTION EX-502 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY .....	371 -
SECTION EX-503 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS .....	371 -
SECTION EX-504 FIRE PROTECTION .....	372 -
SECTION EX-505 MEANS OF EGRESS.....	372 -
SECTION EX-506 ACCESSIBILITY .....	372 -
SECTION EX-507 STRUCTURAL .....	375 -
CHAPTER 6 ALTERATIONS LEVEL2 .....	377 -
SECTION EX-601 GENERAL.....	377 -
SECTION EX-602 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY .....	378 -
SECTION EX-603 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS .....	378 -
SECTION EX-604 FIRE PROTECTION .....	383 -
SECTION EX-605 MEANS OF EGRESS.....	387 -
SECTION EX-606 ACCESSIBILITY .....	397 -
SECTION EX-607 STRUCTURAL .....	397 -
SECTION EX-608 ELECTRICAL .....	398 -
SECTION EX-609 MECHANICAL .....	399 -
SECTION 610 PLUMBING.....	399 -
SECTION 611 FUEL GAS.....	399 -
CHAPTER 7 ALTERATIONS LEVEL 3 .....	400 -
SECTION EX -701 GENERAL.....	400 -
SECTION EX-702 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY .....	400 -
SECTION EX-703 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS .....	401 -



<b>SECTION EX-704 FIRE PROTECTION .....</b>	<b>- 401 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-705 MEANS OF EGRESS.....</b>	<b>- 403 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-706 ACCESSIBILITY .....</b>	<b>- 403 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-707 STRUCTURAL .....</b>	<b>- 403 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-708 MECHANICAL .....</b>	<b>- 405 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-709 PLUMBING.....</b>	<b>- 405 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-710 FUEL GAS.....</b>	<b>- 405 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY .....</b>	<b>- 407 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-801 GENERAL.....</b>	<b>- 407 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-802 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY .....</b>	<b>- 407 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-803 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS .....</b>	<b>- 408 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX - EX-804 FIRE PROTECTION .....</b>	<b>- 408 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX - EX-805 EGRESS .....</b>	<b>- 408 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-806 ACCESSIBILITY .....</b>	<b>- 408 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-807 STRUCTURAL .....</b>	<b>- 408 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-808 ELECTRICAL .....</b>	<b>- 410 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-809 MECHANICAL AND FUEL GAS.....</b>	<b>- 411 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-810 PLUMBING.....</b>	<b>- 411 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-811 OTHER REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>- 412 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-812 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION .....</b>	<b>- 412 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9 ADDITIONS .....</b>	<b>- 421 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-901 GENERAL.....</b>	<b>- 421 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-902 HEIGHTS AND AREAS .....</b>	<b>- 421 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-903 STRUCTURAL .....</b>	<b>- 422 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-904 SMOKE ALARMS IN USE GROUPS R-3 AND R-4 .....</b>	<b>- 423 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-905 ACCESSIBILITY .....</b>	<b>- 424 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-906 ENERGY CONSERVATION.....</b>	<b>- 424 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-907 MEANS OF EGRESS.....</b>	<b>- 424 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10 HISTORIC BUILDINGS .....</b>	<b>- 425 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1001 GENERAL.....</b>	<b>- 425 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1002 REPAIRS .....</b>	<b>- 426 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1003 FIRE SAFETY .....</b>	<b>- 426 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1004 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY.....</b>	<b>- 428 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1005 ALTERATIONS.....</b>	<b>- 429 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1006 STRUCTURAL .....</b>	<b>- 430 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11 RELOCATED OR MOVED BUILDINGS.....</b>	<b>- 431 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1101 GENERAL.....</b>	<b>- 431 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1102 REQUIREMENTS.....</b>	<b>- 431 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12 COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES.....</b>	<b>- 433 -</b>
<b>SECTION EX-1201 GENERAL.....</b>	<b>- 433 -</b>
<b>CHAPTER EX-13 CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARD.....</b>	<b>-458-</b>
<b>CHAPTER EX-14 REFERENCED STANDARDS.....</b>	<b>-459-</b>

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
CONSTRUCTION CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003**

**to the**

**International Building Code/ 2000  
International Plumbing Code/ 2000  
International Mechanical Code/2000  
International Fire Code/2000  
International Property Maintenance Code/2000  
International Residential Code/2000  
International Fuel Code/2000  
International Energy Conservation Code/2000  
NFPA National Electrical Code/1996**

# **DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003 DCMR 12A BUILDING CODE**

## **CHAPTER 1A ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT**

*Delete Chapter 1 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

### **SECTION 101A GENERAL**

**101.1 Title.** These regulations shall be known as the *Building Code* of the District of Columbia, hereinafter referred to as “this code.”

**101.1.1 The Construction Codes Scope and Intent.** The District of Columbia Construction Codes, hereinafter referred to as the "Construction Codes" are comprised of this Title and the codes listed in Sections 101.2 through 101.4.8. Chapter 1 of this Title of the D.C. Construction Codes Supplement/2003 shall serve as the administrative and enforcement provisions of each code supplement referred hereafter, DCMR 12A, 12B, 12C, 12D, 12E, 12F, 12I and 12J, other than the D.C. Property Maintenance Code Supplement/2003 and the D.C. Fire Prevention Code Supplement/2003. The D.C. Property Maintenance Code Supplement/2003 (12G) and the D.C. Fire Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12H) include their own Chapter 1, Administration and Enforcement.

**101.2 D.C. Building Code.** The ICC International Building Code/2000 as amended by D.C. Building Code Supplement/2002 (DCMR 12A) shall constitute the D.C. Building Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Building Code".

**101.2.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the ICC International Building Code/2000 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.2.2 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Building Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.2.3 Scope.** These regulations shall control matters concerning the construction, alteration, addition, repair, removal, demolition, use, location, movement, enlargement, occupancy and maintenance of all buildings and structures, appurtenances attached to buildings or structures, signs, advertising devices and premises in the District of Columbia and apply to existing or proposed buildings and structures; except as such matters are otherwise provided for in other ordinances or statutes, or in the rules and regulations authorized for promulgation under the provisions of this code. These regulations establish minimum maintenance standards for all structures and premises for basic equipment and facilities for light, ventilation, space heating and sanitation; for safety from fire; for space and location; for safe and sanitary maintenance of all structures

and premises now in existence; for minimum requirements for all existing buildings and structures for means of egress, fire protection systems and other equipment and devices necessary for life safety from fire; for rehabilitation and reuse of existing structures, and construction and those for alterations and repairs.

**Exception.** Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories high with separate means of egress and their accessory structures shall comply with the D.C. Residential Code listed in Section 101.3.

**101.2.4 Intent.** This code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is to insure public safety, health and welfare insofar as they are affected by building construction, through structural strength, adequate means of egress facilities, sanitary equipment, light and ventilation, and fire safety, and, in general, to secure safety to life and property from all hazards incident to the design, erection, repair, removal, demolition or use and occupancy of buildings, structures or premises.

**101.3 D.C. Residential Code.** The ICC International Residential Code/ 2000 as amended by the D.C. Residential Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12B) shall constitute the D.C. Residential Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Residential Code".

**101.3.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the ICC International Residential Code/2000 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.3.2 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Residential Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.3.3 Scope.** These regulations shall control the construction, prefabrication, alteration, repair, use, occupancy, and maintenance of detached one- or two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories in height with separate means of egress, and their accessory structures.

**101.3.4 Intent.** This code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is to provide minimum standards for the protection of life, limb, health, property, affordability, environment and for the safety and welfare of the consumer, general public and the owners and occupants of residential buildings regulated by this code.

**101.4 Referenced Codes.** The codes listed in Sections 101.4.1 through 101.4.8 and referenced elsewhere in this Code shall be considered part of the requirements of the District of Columbia Construction Codes to the prescribed extent of each such reference.

**101.4.1 D.C. Electrical Code.** The National Fire Protection Association National Electrical Code/1996 as amended by the D.C. Electrical Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12C) shall constitute the D.C. Electrical Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Electrical Code".

**101.4.1.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the NFPA National Electrical Code/1996 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.4.1.2 Repeal.** Article 90 of the National Electrical Code/1996 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.4.1.2.1 Mandatory Rules and Explanatory Material.** Mandatory rules of the National Electrical Code are characterized by the use of the word "shall." Explanatory material in the form of Fine Print Notes (FPN) is not mandatory.

**101.4.1.3 Scope.** These regulations shall control the design, installation, maintenance, alteration, conversion, changing, repairing, removal, and inspection of electrical conductors, equipment, and systems in buildings or structures and on private or public space within the District of Columbia, for the transmission, distribution, and use of electrical energy for power, heat, light, radio, television, signaling, and for other purposes.

**Exceptions:**

1. Installations of communications equipment under the exclusive control of communications utilities located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations are not subject to this code.
2. Electrical installations, including associated lighting, under the exclusive control of electrical utilities for the purpose of communications, metering, generation, control, transformation, transmission, or distribution of electric, when such installations are located in buildings used exclusively by utilities for such purposes, or outdoors on property owned or leased by the utility, or on or along public highways, streets, roads, and other public right-of-ways, or outdoors on private property by established rights such as easements, such installations are not subject to this code.

**101.4.1.4 Intent.** The Electrical Code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is the practical safeguarding of persons and property from hazards arising from the use of electricity, and is not intended as a design specification nor as an instruction manual for untrained persons.

**101.4.2 D.C. Fuel Gas Code.** The ICC International Fuel Gas Code/2000 as amended by the D.C. Fuel Gas Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12D) shall constitute the D.C. Fuel Gas Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Fuel Gas Code".

**101.4.2.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the ICC International Fuel Gas Code/2000 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.4.2.2 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Fuel Gas Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.4.2.3 Scope.** These regulations shall apply to the installation of fuel gas piping systems, fuel gas utilization equipment and related accessories, as follows:

1. Requirements covering piping systems with an operating pressure of 125 psig (862 kPa gauge) or less and shall extend from the point of delivery to the connections with gas utilization equipment.
2. Piping systems requirements shall include design, materials components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance.
3. Requirements for gas utilization equipment and related accessories shall include installation, combustion and ventilation air and venting.

**101.4.2.3.1 Exempted Installations and Equipment.** This code shall not apply to the following:

1. Portable LP-Gas equipment of all types that is not connected to a fixed fuel system.
2. Installation of farm equipment such as brooders, dehydrators, dryers and irrigation equipment.
3. Raw material (feedstock) applications except for piping to special atmosphere generators.
4. Oxygen-fuel gas cutting and welding systems.
5. Industrial gas applications using gases such as acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen and nitrogen.
6. Petroleum refineries, pipeline compressor or pumping stations, loading terminals, compounding plants, refinery tank farms and natural gas processing plants.
7. Integrated chemical plants or portions of such plants where flammable or combustible liquids or gases are produced by chemical reactions or used in chemical reactions.
8. LP-Gas installations at utility gas plants.
9. Liquefied natural gas (LNG) installations.
10. Fuel gas piping in power and atomic energy plants.
11. Proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, or instruments such as gas generating sets, compressors and calorimeters.

12. LP-Gas equipment for vaporization, gas mixing and gas manufacturing.
13. Temporary LP-Gas piping for buildings under construction or renovation that is not to become part of the permanent piping system.
14. Installation of LP-Gas systems for railroad switch heating.
15. Installation of LP-Gas and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles.
16. Except as provided in Section FG-401.1.1 of the *D.C. Fuel Gas Code*, gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in the distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-Gas.
17. Building design and construction, except as specified herein.

**101.4.2.4 Intent.** The fuel gas code shall be construed to secure the proper installation of systems within the scope of the Fuel Gas Code, and to ensure public safety, health and welfare insofar as they are affected by the installation, operation and maintenance of fuel gas systems.

**101.4.3 D.C. Mechanical Code.** The ICC International Mechanical Code/2000 as amended by the D.C. Mechanical Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12E) shall constitute the District of Columbia Mechanical Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Mechanical Code".

**101.4.3.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the ICC International Mechanical Code/2000 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.4.3.2 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Mechanical Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.4.3.3 Scope.** These regulations shall control the design, installation, maintenance, alteration, and inspection of non-gas-fired mechanical systems, including heating systems, ventilation systems, cooling systems, steam and hot water heating systems, water heaters, process piping, boilers and pressure vessels, appliances using liquid or solid fuel, chimneys and vents, mechanical refrigeration systems, fireplaces, barbecues, incinerator, crematories, and air pollution systems.

**101.4.3.4 Intent.** The mechanical code shall be construed to secure the proper installation of systems within the scope of the mechanical code, and to insure

public health, safety and welfare insofar as they are affected by the installation and maintenance of mechanical systems.

**101.4.4 D.C. Plumbing Code.** The ICC International Plumbing Code/2000 as amended by the D.C. Plumbing Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12F) shall constitute the D.C. Plumbing Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Plumbing Code".

**101.4.4.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the ICC International Plumbing Code/2000 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.4.4.2 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Plumbing Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.4.4.3 Scope.** These regulations shall control the design and installation of plumbing systems, including sanitary and storm drainage, sanitary facilities, water supplies, storm water and sewage disposal in buildings. The design and installation of gas piping shall conform to the requirements of the fuel gas code. The design and installation of chilled water piping in connection with refrigeration process and comfort cooling, and hot water piping in connection with building heating shall conform to the requirements of the mechanical code. The design and installation of piping for fire sprinklers and standpipes shall conform to the requirements of the building code. Water and drainage connections to such installations shall be made in accordance with the requirement of the plumbing code.

**101.4.4.4 Intent.** The plumbing code shall be construed to secure the proper installation of systems for furnishing potable water, for sanitary sewage disposal and storm drainage, and to insure public safety, health and welfare insofar as they are affected by the installation and maintenance of plumbing systems.

**101.4.5 D.C. Property Maintenance Code.** The ICC International Property Maintenance Code/2000 as amended by the D.C. Property Maintenance Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12G) shall constitute the D.C. Property Maintenance Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Property Maintenance Code".

**101.4.5.1 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Property Maintenance Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.4.5.2 Scope.** These regulations shall apply to every premises or part of any premises occupied, used, or held out for use as a place of abode for human beings.

**101.4.5.3 Intent.** This code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is to preserve and promote the public health, safety, and welfare through the abatement of certain conditions affecting existing residential buildings and areas, including dilapidation, inadequate maintenance, overcrowding, inadequate toilet facilities, inadequate bathing or washing facilities, inadequate heating,



insufficient protection against hazards, inadequate lighting and ventilation and other unsanitary or unsafe conditions.

**101.4.6 D.C. Fire Prevention Code.** The ICC International Fire Code/ 2000 as amended by the D.C. Fire Prevention Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12H) shall constitute the D.C. Fire Prevention Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Fire Prevention Code".

**101.4.6.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices of the ICC International Fire Code/2000 shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**101.4.6.2 Repeal.** Chapter 1 of the ICC International Fire Code/2000 is deleted in its entirety.

**101.4.6.3 Scope.** These regulations shall prescribe minimum requirements and controls to safeguard life, property or public welfare from the hazards of fire and explosion arising from the storage, handling or use of substances, materials or devices and from conditions hazardous to life, property or public welfare in the use or occupancy of buildings, structures, sheds, tents, lots or premises.

**101.4.6.4 Intent.** The fire prevention code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is to insure public safety, health and welfare insofar as they are affected by conditions which cause fire or explosions and panic resulting there from, and in general, to secure safety to life and property from fire hazards incident to the use, occupancy and maintenance of building, structures or premises. All matters within the intent of this code and not covered by this code shall comply with the referenced standards listed in Chapter 44, of ICC International Fire Code/ 2000.

**101.4.7 D.C. Energy Conservation Code.** The ICC International Energy Conservation Code/2000 as amended by the D.C. Energy Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12I) shall constitute the D.C. Energy Conservation Code/2003, hereinafter referred to as the "Energy Code".

**101.4.7.1 Appendix.** Provisions in the appendix of the ICC International Energy Conservation Code/2000 shall apply to this code.

**101.4.7.2 Repeal.** Sections 101.1, 101.2, 101.4, 101.4.1, 101.4.1.1, 101.4.1.2, 101.4.2, 101.4.2.3, 103, 104, 105, 106 and 107 of Chapter 1 of the ICC International Energy Conservation Code/2000 are deleted without substitution.

**101.4.7.3 Scope.** These regulations shall establish minimum prescriptive and performance-related provisions for the design of energy-efficient building and structures or portions thereof, which provide facilities or shelter for public assembly, educational, business, mercantile, institutional, storage and residential occupancies, as well as those portions of factory and industrial occupancies designed primarily for human occupancy. This code shall regulate the design of

energy-efficient building envelopes and the selection and installation of energy-efficient mechanical, service-water heating, electrical distribution and illumination systems and equipment, for the effective use of energy in these buildings and structures. Commercial buildings provided with service water heating and/or electric lighting shall meet the applicable provisions of Chapter 7 or 8 of the International Energy Conservation Code/2000, regardless of whether they would be otherwise exempt.

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings and structures, or portions thereof, which are neither heated nor cooled.
2. Buildings and structures, or portions thereof, separated by building envelope assemblies from the remainder of the building, that have a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h per square foot ( $10.7 \text{ W/m}^2$ ) or 1.0 watt per square foot ( $10.7 \text{ W/m}^2$ ) of floor area for all purposes.

**101.4.7.4 Intent.** This code shall be construed to serve its expressed intent, which is to regulate the design of building envelopes for adequate thermal resistance and low air leakage and the design and selection of mechanical, electrical, service water-heating and illumination systems and equipment which will enable effective use of energy in new building construction. It is intended that these provisions provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve effective utilization of energy. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements under other applicable codes or ordinances.

**101.4.8 D.C. Existing Buildings Code.** The provisions contained in the D.C. Existing Buildings Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12J) shall constitute the D.C. Existing Buildings Code/2003 hereinafter referred to as the "Existing Buildings Code".

**101.4.8.1 Administrative Provisions.** The D.C. Existing Buildings Code/2003 shall be administered and enforced following the provisions of Chapter 1 of DCMR 12.

**101.4.8.2 Scope.** The Existing Buildings Code shall control the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition, and relocation of existing buildings. A building or portion of a building which has not been previously occupied or used for its intended purpose shall comply with the provisions of the Building Code for new construction. Repairs, alterations, change of occupancy, existing buildings to which additions are made, historic buildings and relocated buildings complying with the provisions of the Building Code, Plumbing Code, Mechanical Code, Electrical Code, Fuel Gas Code, and Residential Code, as applicable, shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of the Existing Buildings Code.

**101.4.8.3 Intent.** The Existing Buildings Code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is to ensure public health, safety and welfare insofar as

they are affected by the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition, and relocation of existing buildings.

**101.5 Jurisdiction.** The Construction Codes shall apply to premises within the limits of the District of Columbia, including buildings, structures and premises owned, occupied or controlled by the government of the District of Columbia or any of its independent agencies.

**101.5.1 Exemption from Jurisdiction.** Except for permit requirements for land disturbing activities the Construction Codes shall not apply to public buildings or premises owned by the United States government, including appurtenant structures and portions of buildings, premises, or structures that are under the exclusive control of an officer of the United States government in his or her official capacity. If a lessor is responsible for maintenance and repairs to property leased to the United States government, the property shall not be deemed to be under the exclusive control of an officer of the United States government.

**101.5.2 Foreign Missions.** The Construction Codes shall apply to those buildings occupied by or for any foreign government as an embassy or chancery to the extent provided for in section 206 of the Foreign Missions Act, approved August 24, 1982 (96 Stat. 286, Pub. L. 97-241; D.C. Code, sec.6-1306(g)), that is, foreign missions shall substantially comply with the Construction Codes are required by the U.S. Secretary of State in a manner determined by the Secretary to be not inconsistent with the international obligations of the United States. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a permit shall be required for all land disturbing activities.

**101.5.3 President or Vice President's Residence.** No permit required under the Construction Codes shall be issued if it is determined by the Code Official that:

1. The permit affects an area in close proximity to the official residence of the President or Vice President of the United States; and
2. The United States Secret Service has established that the issuance of the permit would adversely impact the safety and security of the President or the Vice President of the United States.

## **SECTION 102A APPLICABILITY**

**102.1 General.** The provisions of these regulations shall cover all matters affecting or relating to buildings, structures, and systems as set forth in Section 101. A building or structure shall not be constructed, extended, repaired, removed or altered in violation of these provisions. When the provisions herein are more restrictive than those of other regulations, this code shall control. When different sections of this code specify different requirements for the same specific case, the most restrictive shall govern. When there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable.

**Exception:** The raising, lowering or moving of a building or structure as a unit, necessitated by a change in legal grade or widening of a street, shall be permitted, provided the building or structure is not otherwise altered or its use or occupancy is not changed.

**102.2 Other Laws, Codes and Regulations.** This code shall not be construed to prevent the enforcement of other applicable regulations.

**102.2.1 Public Works Standards.** Work performed in public space, not specifically addressed in this code, shall conform to the pertinent standards of the Department of Public Works (DPW), the Department of Transportation (DDOT) and of the District of Columbia Water and Sewer Authority (WASA). Fire hydrants located in private property shall comply with the pertinent City standard.

**102.2.2 Matters Not Provided For.** Any requirement essential for structural, fire or sanitary safety, or safe operation of electrical or mechanical systems and appliances, of an existing or proposed building or structure, or essential for the safety of the occupant thereof, and which is not specifically covered by this code, shall be determined by the code official.

**102.3 Application of References.** Unless otherwise specifically provided in the Construction Codes, all references to article or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such article, section or provision of the Construction Codes.

**102.4 Referenced Standards.** The standards referenced in this code and listed in Chapter 35 of the ICC International Building Code/2000, in Chapter 34 of the ICC International Residential Code/2000, in Appendix A of the NFPA National Electrical Code/1996, in Chapter 7 of the ICC International Fuel Gas Code/2000, in Chapter 15 of the ICC International Mechanical Code/2000, in Chapter 13 of the ICC International Plumbing Code/2000, in Chapter 8 of the ICC International Property Maintenance Code/2000, in Chapter 45 of the ICC International Fire Code/2000, in Chapter 9 of the ICC International Energy Conservation Code/2000 and in Chapter 14 of the D.C. Existing Buildings Code/2002, shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where differences occur between provisions of this code and referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**102.4.1 Conflicts.** If conflict arises between the provisions of D.C. Law 6-216, Construction Codes Approval and Amendments Act of 1986 and the D.C. Supplement, the ICC International Codes, or their referenced standards, the provisions of D.C. Law 6-216 shall take precedence. If conflict arises between the D.C. Supplement, the ICC International Codes, and their referenced standards:

1. The provisions of the D.C. Supplement shall take precedence over the ICC International Codes and their referenced standards.

2. The provisions of the ICC International Codes other than their referenced standards shall take precedence over their referenced standards.

**102.5 Partial Invalidity.** If any part or provision of the Construction Codes is held illegal or void, this shall not make void or illegal any other parts or provisions of the Construction Codes which shall be determined to be legal. It shall be presumed that the Construction Codes would have been enacted and adopted without such illegal or void parts or provisions.

**102.5.1 Segregation of Invalid Provisions.** Any illegal or void part of the Construction Codes shall be segregated from the remainder of the Construction Codes by the court holding such part illegal or void, and the remainder of the Construction codes shall remain effective.

**102.5.2 Decisions Involving Existing Structures.** The invalidity of any provision in any section of the Construction Codes as applied to existing buildings and structures shall not be held to affect the validity of such section in its application to buildings and structures erected after the effective date of the Construction Codes.

**102.6 Existing Structures.** The legal use and occupancy of any structure existing on the effective date of the Construction Codes, or for which a permit has been heretofore approved, shall be permitted to continue without change, except for provisions of the building code, the property maintenance code or the fire prevention code listed in Chapter 35, that are specifically required to be applied retroactively, or as deemed necessary by the code official for the general safety, health and welfare of the occupants and the public.

**102.6.1 Continuation of Unlawful Use.** The continuation of occupancy or use of a building or structure, or of a part thereof, contrary to the provisions of this code, shall be deemed a violation or infraction under Section 113. A notice of violation and order requiring discontinuance of the use or occupancy may be issued pursuant to Section 113 and the owner or other violator shall be subject to the penalties or fines prescribed in Section 113.

**102.6.2 Moved Structures.** Buildings and structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new buildings and structures or shall comply with Chapter 11 of the Existing Buildings Code. Such buildings and structures shall not be used or occupied in whole or in part until a certificate of use and occupancy, as required by Section 110.0, shall have been issued by the code official. Before any building or structure which has been moved into or within the District of Columbia is occupied, its equipment and devices shall be inspected and tested for safe operation and for compliance with the requirements of this code.

**102.6.3 Change in Existing Use.** It shall be unlawful to make any change in the use or occupancy of any structure or portion thereof which would subject it to any special provisions of the Construction Codes without first complying with those provisions for the new use by obtaining approval for the new use through issuance of a building permit

and a certificate of occupancy. Work required for compliance with this section shall be performed under a duly issued building permit and shall comply with Section 102.6.4.

**102.6.4 Alterations or Repairs.** Alterations or repairs to any structure shall conform to that required of a new structure without requiring the existing structure to comply with all of the requirements of the Construction Codes. Compliance with the provisions of the Existing Buildings Code for alterations or repairs shall be deemed compliance with this section. Repairs shall be allowed to be made in kind, provided that such repairs shall not cause an existing structure to become unsafe or adversely affect the performance or accessibility of the building.

**Exceptions:**

1. Historic structures meeting the requirements of Chapter 10 of the Existing Buildings Code.
2. The provisions of Chapter 11 shall be applicable to the extent required by Section 506 of the Existing Buildings Code, unless the code official grants modification pursuant to Sections 104.10 and 104.10.1.

**102.6.4.1 Structural Elements.** Alterations or repairs to an existing structure which are structural or which adversely affect either any structural member or any part of the structure having a required fire- resistance rating shall be made with materials required for a new structure.

**102.6.4.2 Non-Structural Elements.** Alterations or repairs to an existing structure which are not structural and which do not adversely affect any structural member nor any part of the structure having a required fire- resistance rating, may be made with the same materials of which the structure is constructed.

**102.6.4.3 Existing Systems.** This section shall apply to existing mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems, or to any building systems that are relevant to the safety, health or welfare of the occupants or of the public. Alterations or repairs to a system shall conform to that required for a new system for altered or repaired portion of the system, without requiring the remainder of the system to comply with all the requirements of the Construction Codes. Alteration or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become unsafe or adversely affect the performance of the system.

**102.6.4.3.1 Additional Loads.** Where additions or alterations subject parts of existing systems to loads exceeding those permitted herein, such parts shall be made to comply with the Construction Codes.

**102.6.4.3.2 Mechanical Systems.** The Mechanical Code shall apply to existing mechanical systems in a building occupied for occupancies or uses other than those for which it was occupied on the effective date of the

Construction Codes, as if such mechanical systems were hereinafter installed.

**102.6.5 Additions.** Additions to an existing building or structure shall conform to the Construction Codes requirements for a new structure or building, unless they conform with the provisions of the Existing Buildings Code for additions, without requiring the existing structure to comply with all the requirements of the Construction Codes. Any building plus new additions shall not exceed the height, number of stories, and area specified for new buildings. Additions shall not cause an existing structure to become unsafe or adversely affect the performance or accessibility of the building.

**Exceptions:**

1. Historic structures meeting the requirements of Chapter 10 of the Existing Buildings Code.
2. The provisions of Chapter 11 shall be applicable to the extent required by Section EX-905 of the Existing Buildings Code, unless the code official grants modification pursuant to Sections 104.10 and 104.10.1.
3. Existing one and two story buildings shall be permitted to be expanded beyond what is permitted by up to 25 percent of the existing floor area, not to exceed an area of 125 percent of that permitted by the Building Code, without providing fire separation.
4. Infilling of floor openings, non-occupiable appendages such as elevator and exit stair shafts, and the addition of mezzanines and equipment penthouses shall be permitted beyond that permitted by the Building Code.

**SECTION 103A DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND REGULATORY AFFAIRS**

**103.1 Code Official.** The Director of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs shall enforce the provisions of the D.C. Construction Codes, except those of the Fire Prevention Code as provided in section 103.2, and shall be hereinafter referred to as the code official or as the Director.

**103.1.1 Delegation of Authority.** The code official may delegate his or her duties and powers under the Construction Codes, but he or she shall remain responsible for the proper performance of those duties and powers.

**103.1.2 Department.** Where used herein the word “Department” shall refer to the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, except that references to “Department” in the Fire Prevention Code shall refer to the D.C. Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department.

**103.2 Code Official for the Fire Prevention Code.** The Fire Chief shall be the code official for the enforcement of the Fire Prevention Code, except that the Director of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs shall be the code official for the enforcement of all Fire

Prevention Code provisions pertaining to the approval, installation, design, modification, maintenance, testing, and inspection of all new and existing fire protection systems.

**103.3 Organization.** The code official shall appoint such number of officers, technical assistants, inspectors and other employees as shall be necessary for the administration of the Construction Codes.

**103.3.1 Deputy.** The code official is authorized to designate an employee or employees as deputy who shall exercise powers of the code official during the temporary absence or disability of the code official, as delegated.

**103.4 Conflicts of Interest.** No official or employee of the Department shall directly or indirectly engage in any private business transaction or activity which tends in any way to interfere with the performance of his or her duties, including:

1.     Furnishing of Services. Being engaged in or directly or indirectly connected with the furnishing of labor, materials or appliances for the construction, alteration or maintenance of a building under the jurisdiction of this code, or the preparation of plans or specifications of a building under the jurisdiction of this code, unless the official or employee is the principal owner of the building.
2.     Conflict with Official Duties. Engaging in any work which conflicts with official duties or with the interest of the Department.
3.     Private Work. Directly or indirectly engaging with or accepting remuneration from any private person, firm, or corporation for the performance of any work as a designer, architect, engineer, consultant or inspector, which work is to be submitted to, passed upon, reviewed, or inspected by any officer of the District of Columbia charged with the administration of any portion of the Construction Codes.

**103.5 Public Access to Records.** Records of the Department shall be available for public inspection at all appropriate times pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act and regulations issued pursuant to the Act. If a person requests inspection of a permit file while the application for a permit is pending, a Freedom of Information Act Request shall be required. Since the status of the permit application and accompanying plans changes from day-to-day, the code official will provide information in DCRA's response that is current as of the date stated on the response. If further or more current information is desired, a new FOIA request must be submitted.

## **SECTION 104A DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL**



**104.1 General.** The code official shall enforce the provisions of this code and shall act on any question relative to the mode or manner of construction and the materials to be used in the erection, addition to, alteration, repair, removal, demolition, installation of service equipment and the location, use, occupancy and maintenance of buildings and structures, except as otherwise specifically provided for by statutory requirements or as provided for in Section 103.2 and Sections 104.2 through 104.7.

**104.1.1 Legal Authority.** The code official shall have power, in the interest of public safety, health and welfare, to promulgate administrative rules to interpret and implement the provisions of the Construction Codes to secure the intent thereof, and to designate requirements applicable because of local climatic or other conditions. Such rules shall not have the effect of waiving structural, architectural, plumbing, mechanical, electrical or fire performance requirements specifically provided for in the Construction Codes or of violating accepted engineering practice involving public safety.

**104.2 Applications and Permits.** The code official shall receive applications and shall approve all permits and certificates issued for the erection, razing, demolition, alteration, and use of buildings and structures, to enforce compliance with the provisions of the Construction Codes.

**104.3 Building Notices and Orders.** The code official shall issue the necessary notices or orders to remove illegal or unsafe conditions, to require the necessary safeguards during construction, to require adequate means of egress facilities in existing buildings and structures, to ensure compliance with the applicable code requirements for the safety, health and welfare of the public, and shall institute administrative and legal actions to correct violations or infractions.

**104.4 Inspections.** The code official shall make or cause to be made the required inspections for which a permit has been issued, except third-party and special inspections done under Sections 109.4 or 1704.0 of the *Building Code*. The code official is authorized to accept reports of inspection by approved agencies or individuals or to inspect work subject to special inspection done under Sections 109.4 or 1704.0 of the *Building Code*. All reports of such inspections shall be in writing and certified by a responsible officer of the approved agency or by the responsible individual. The Code official is authorized to engage such expert opinion as deemed necessary to report upon unusual technical issues that may arise.

**104.5 Credentials.** Authorized representatives of the code official shall carry proper credentials of their respective office for inspecting any buildings or premises while performing duties under the Construction Codes.

**104.6 Right of Entry.** The code official, in the performance of his or her duties, shall have the right to enter any unoccupied building; any building under construction, alteration, or repair; any building being razed or moved; any building or premises which he or she has reason to believe to be unsafe or a menace to life or limb; or any building, the use of which may require the issuance of a license or a certificate of occupancy. With respect to the inspection of any occupied habitable portion of any building, the consent to such inspection shall first be obtained from any person of suitable age and discretion therein, except that if an acute emergency occurs and immediate steps must be taken to protect the public, such consent need not be obtained. When

attempting to gain entrance for inspection, the code official shall show an official identification issued by the Department. If entry is refused, the code official is authorized to apply to the Superior Court for an administrative search warrant.

**104.7 Department Records.** The code official shall keep official records of applications received, permits and certificates issued, fees collected, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued. Such records shall be retained in the official records so long as the building or structure to which they relate remains in existence, unless otherwise provided for by statute, rule or regulation.

**104.8 Relief from Personal Liability.** Unless otherwise provided by Federal or District of Columbia law, the code official and any officials and employees of the Department charged with enforcement of the Construction Codes, while acting in their official capacity, shall not be liable personally, and are relieved from all personal liability for any damage that may accrue to persons or property as a result of any act required or permitted in the discharge of official duties.

**104.8.1 Defense of Suits.** Any suit instituted against any officer or employee of the Department because of an act performed in the discharge of official duties and under the provisions of the Construction Codes, or by reason of any act or omission while performing official duties in connection with the Construction Codes, shall be defended by the Corporation Counsel until the final termination of legal proceedings.

**104.8.2 Liability for Costs.** The code official and any official or employee of the Department, shall not be personally liable for costs in any action, suit or proceeding that may be instituted under the provisions of the Construction Codes.

**104.8.3 Liability for Acts or Omissions.** Any official or employee of the Department, acting in good faith and without malice, shall be free from liability for acts performed under the provisions of the Construction Codes or by reason of any act or omission while performing official duties in connection with the Construction Codes.

**104.9 Approved Materials, Equipment and Devices.** All materials, equipment and devices approved for use by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

**104.9.1 Used Materials, Equipment and Devices.** The use of used materials which meet the requirements of this code for new materials is permitted. Used equipment and devices shall not be reused unless approved by the code official.

**104.9.2 Unlabeled Products.** Where materials, assemblies or products are required by this code to be labeled, materials, assemblies or products which are not labeled, listed or classified by an approved testing agency and which are proposed to be installed in the District of Columbia, shall be tested and labeled by an approved testing laboratory or shall be approved in accordance with Sections 1701 and 1703 of the *Building Code* at the expense of the applicant, before a permit can be granted for this installation.

**104.9.3 Assembled Components.** Any mechanical or electrical appliance which is not labeled, listed or classified by an approved testing agency, which is an assembly of individually labeled or listed subassemblies or components and which is proposed to be installed in the District of Columbia, shall be tested and approved in accordance with Section 104.9.2, before a permit can be granted for its installation.

**104.9.4 Manufactured Homes.** Before erecting or installing in the District of Columbia any prefabricated structure, manufactured at a remote site and transported in one or more sections, to be used as a one or two-family dwelling, a certificate of approval by an agency approved by the code official shall be furnished with every prefabricated assembly, except where all elements of the assembly are readily accessible to inspection at the site. Placement of prefabricated assemblies at the building site shall be inspected by the code official to determine compliance with the residential code and a final inspection shall be provided. Provisions for foundation systems and building service equipment connections necessary to provide for the installation of new manufactured homes to which additions, alterations or repairs are made are contained in Appendix E of the residential code.

**104.9.5 Prefabricated Construction.** Before erecting or installing in the District of Columbia any prefabricated structure, manufactured at a remote site and transported in one or more sections, to be used as other than a one or two-family dwelling, a certificate of approval, by an agency approved by the code official, shall be furnished with every prefabricated assembly, except where all elements of the assembly are readily accessible to inspection at the site. Placement of prefabricated assemblies at the building site shall be inspected by the code official to determine compliance with the Construction Codes and a final inspection shall be provided. Provisions shall be made for foundation systems and building service equipment connections necessary to provide for the installation of prefabricated construction, in accordance with the requirements of the Construction Codes for new construction.

**104.10 Modifications.** Wherever there are practical difficulties or undue economic hardship involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the owner or owner's representative, provided the code official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical and the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, accessibility, life and fire safety, or structural requirements. The details of action granting modification shall be recorded and entered in the appropriate files of the Department. The code official may seek the opinion of the Corporation Counsel when deemed necessary for the requested modification.

**104.10.1 Procedure for Modifications.** The application for modification shall be submitted on a form provided by the Department. The final decision of the code official shall be in writing and shall be officially recorded with the application for permit, in the permanent records of the Department. All modifications shall be approved or disapproved by the Director or his or her designated representative for the specific purpose of approval of modifications.

**104.10.2 Improper Procedure.** Any verbal waiver or verbal permission to deviate from or violate any provision of the Construction Codes is null and void.

**104.11 Alternative Materials, Equipment, Methods of Construction and Design.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the use of any material, equipment or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided any such alternative has been approved. Alternative materials, equipment or methods of construction shall be approved when the code official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, equipment or method offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire-resistance, durability and safety. Approvals shall conform to Sections 1701 and 1703 of the *Building Code*.

## **SECTION 105A PERMITS**

**105.1 Required Permits.** A permit shall be obtained from the code official before any of the construction activities or regulated actions specified in Sections 105.1.1 through 105.1.13 shall begin. Depending on the scope of work, as specified in Sections 105.1.1 through 105.1.13, a construction project shall require one or more of the following types of permit:

1. Building permit.
2. Interior demolition permit.
3. Partial demolition permit.
4. Raze permit.
5. Sign permit.
6. Projection permit.
7. Public space permit.
8. Specialty permit.
9. Miscellaneous permit.
10. Supplemental permit.

Certain types and scopes of work, as specified in Section 105.2, are exempted from the permit requirement of this section. The use of postcard permits as specified in Subsections 105.5.4 through 105.5.4.3 shall be deemed compliance with the permit requirement of this section.

**105.1.1 Quarterly Installation Permit.** In place of an individual permit for each alteration to an already approved equipment installation, upon application the code official may issue a quarterly permit to any person, firm, or corporation regularly employing one or more licensed trade persons in the building or on the premises owned or operated by the permit applicant, for work that would otherwise require a licensed master to obtain an installation permit.

**105.1.2 Quarterly Permit Records.** The person to whom a quarterly permit is issued shall keep a detailed written record of all alterations to an approved equipment installation made under such quarterly permit. Such records shall be open to the code official at all reasonable times or shall be filed with the code official when requested.

**105.1.3 Owner's Responsibility.** The owner, builder, or authorized representative shall be responsible for securing all the required permits, or for obtaining a declaration by the code official stating that a permit is not required. Work started without a permit where a permit is determined to be required shall be a violation of the Construction Codes.

**105.1.4 Building Permits.** A building permit is required for the following activities:

1. New construction, including constructing, adding to or moving a building or structure;
2. Altering or repairing an existing building or structure;
3. Build-out the interior layout of a tenant space within a new building shell;
4. Repair fire damage to a building or structure;
5. Erect or replace a retaining wall;
6. Erect or replace a fence;
7. Erect or replace an awning, canopy, tent or other membrane structure, or similar structures;
8. Install or remove an underground storage tank;
9. Erect a radio, television or other telecommunications tower;
10. Construct, alter or repair a swimming pool;
11. Construct supporting structures for heavy equipment.
12. Underpinning;

13. Change the occupancy of the building or structure to a different Use Group, as defined in Chapter 3 of the Building Code.

**105.1.5 Interior Demolition Permits.** An interior demolition permit is required to demolish interior non-bearing walls, interior finishes and other interior non-bearing elements. The code official shall issue such a permit upon request, whether in connection with a future reconstruction project or not, and whether it affects egress, fire and life safety of occupied areas or not, subject to the provisions of Chapter 33 of the Building Code and Chapter 14 of the fire code listed in Chapter 35.

**105.1.6 Partial Demolition Permits.** A partial demolition permit is required for the following activities:

1. Removal or demolition of a part of a building or structure that is of greater scope than that allowed under an interior demolition permit pursuant to Section 105.1.5, but of a lesser scope than the raze of the entire building or structure down to the ground, as provided for in Section 105.1.7.
2. Interior demolition within a building or structure, that would otherwise be allowed under an interior demolition permit issued pursuant to section 105.1.5, where any interior space of that building or structure has been specifically designated as a historic landmark.

**105.1.7 Raze Permits.** A raze permit is required to secure the right to remove a building or structure down to the ground.

**105.1.7.1 Razing Operations.** Before a structure can be demolished or removed, the owner or agent shall apply for and obtain a razing operations permit pursuant to section 105.1.13(5), to be authorized to proceed with the necessary operations to raze or remove the structure.

**105.1.7.1.1 Service Connections to Mechanical Equipment.** Fuel-fired or electrically-supplied heating appliances or equipment shall not be removed from any building or structure to be demolished or removed, until a raze permit to demolish or remove the building or structure has been issued in accordance with this Section 105.1.7.

**105.1.7.2 Lot Regulation.** Whenever a structure is demolished or removed, the premises shall be maintained free from unsafe or hazardous conditions by the proper regulation of the lot, restoration of established grades and the erection of the necessary retaining walls and fences in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 33 of the *Building Code*.

**105.1.8 Sign Permits.** A sign permit is required to install or alter a sign or other advertising device subject to the provisions of Section 3107 of the *Building Code*, unless exempted therein.

**105.1.9 Projection Permits.** A projection permit is required to construct, enlarge, alter or remove a projection beyond the building line. This includes projections above ground and vaults in public space.

**105.1.10 Public Space Permits.** A public space permit is required for the following actions entailing the temporary occupation of public space:

1. To install, alter or remove enclosed or unenclosed sidewalk cafés;
2. To store building materials;
3. To install temporary fences, sidewalk protection or construction trailers in public space;
4. To install cranes or similar hoisting devices;
5. To place a dumpster for construction debris.
6. To otherwise occupy public space, to the extent deemed necessary by the Director of Public Works or the Director of the Department of Transportation in the public interest.

**105.1.11 Specialty Permits.** A specialty permit, as indicated hereafter, is required for the following activities:

1. Underpinning Permit, to underpin existing walls, footings, foundations or other structural loadbearing elements.
2. Excavation Permit, to excavate and other earth disturbing actions affecting an area larger than 50 square feet.
3. Sheet piling and Shoring Permit, to install excavation and slope stabilization systems.
4. Grading Permit, for grading, regrading or landfilling operations.
5. Capacity Placard Permit, to obtain approval of the posted maximum occupant load for the placards required by Section 1003.2.2.5.
6. Capacity Increase Permit, to secure approval of an increase in allowable occupant load for a building or premises.
7. After-Hours Permit, to engage in construction, installation, maintenance, alteration, repair, demolition, or razing activities outside normal working hours. For the purposes of this permit, normal working hours shall be from seven (7) a.m. to seven (7) p.m., Monday through Saturday.

8. Tower Crane Permit, to install cranes or other similar hoisting devices, in public space or private property.

The code official is authorized to waive the specialty permits required under items 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6 of this section if a building permit is issued for a wider scope of work that includes the scope of work covered by those specialty permits.

**105.1.11.1 Limitations on After-Hours Work in Residential Areas.** No after-hours permit shall be issued for work in an area zoned "residential" under the Zoning Regulations then in effect, or in an area within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of such residential zone, or within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of a building with sleeping quarters, unless the code official determines that not issuing such permit would pose a threat to public safety, health and welfare.

**105.1.12 Miscellaneous Permits.** A miscellaneous building permit is required for the following activities:

1. Installing stationary scaffolding;
2. Cleaning exteriors of buildings or structures, in private or public space, using steam, chemical cleaning or sandblasting;
3. Blasting operations;
4. Waterproofing and dampproofing;
5. Erecting observation stands;
6. Renewal Permit, to obtain an extension of a valid unused building permit, as authorized by Section 105.5.1.
7. Revision Permit, to revise or amend a valid current permit, as authorized by Section 105.3.3.
8. Installation of dish antenna on the façade of any building in a historic district or on a historically designated building or structure.

The code official is authorized to waive the miscellaneous permit required under item 4 of this section if a building permit is issued for a wider scope of work that includes the scope of work covered by that miscellaneous permit.

**105.1.13 Supplemental Permits.** A supplemental permit, as indicated hereafter, is required in addition to the applicable permits described in Sections 105.1.4, 105.1.5, 105.1.6 and 105.1.7.



1. Supplemental plumbing installation permit, for installation of plumbing systems and fixtures, as specified in Section 105.1.16.
2. Supplemental gasfitting installation permit, for installation of gas-fueled appliances and equipment, as specified in Section 105.1.17.
3. Supplemental mechanical installation permit, for installation of refrigerating and cooling systems and mechanical equipment, as specified in Section 105.1.15.
4. Supplemental electrical installation permit, for installation of electrical systems and fixtures, as specified in Section 105.1.14.
5. Supplemental razing or demolition operations permit, for license to proceed with demolition operations in connection with a raze permit or a partial demolition permit, as specified in Section
6. Supplemental air quality permit, to obtain license to install and/or operate stationary air pollution source equipment or an air pollution control device on a stationary source, as specified in Sections 200.1 and 200.2 of DCMR Title 20, except as exempted in the same Title.

**105.1.7.1 and to use specially regulated demolishing equipment.** Once the razing operations permit application is filed with the Department, the code official shall notify all utilities having service connections within the structure such as water, electric, gas, sewer, telephone and other connections. A permit to demolish or remove a structure shall not be issued until a release is obtained from the utilities, stating that their respective service connections and appurtenant equipment such as meters and regulators, have been removed or sealed and plugged in an approved manner.

**105.1.14 Permits Required for Electrical Work.** Installation, replacement or repair of electrical appliances and equipment, electrical wiring for power and lighting, other than equipment exempt under Section 105.2.2.1, shall require an electrical installation permit. Electrical installation permits are required, namely, for the following:

1. Power Limited Wiring. Electrical permit is required for the installation of fire protective signaling systems and other power limited wiring installed by other than public utility companies.
2. Electrical Signs. Electrical permit shall be required for the erection of a sign on or in which lights of any description are to be used, or which will be illuminated by artificial means.

3. Preventive Maintenance. Electrical permits are required to perform preventive maintenance in switchboards, as required in Article E-384-37 of the *Electrical Code*.
4. Temporary Wiring. Electrical permit shall be required for the installation of electric wiring of a temporary nature for light, heat, or power purposes, and is issued contingent upon the removal of said wiring and apparatus upon expiration of the permit.
5. Barricade Lamps. Electrical permit shall be required for temporary obstruction barricade lamps on or over an authorized temporary enclosing fence or barricade on public property and for other temporary lighting in public space back of the inner edge of a public sidewalk; such temporary permits shall be approved by the Department of Public Works.
6. Construction Hoists. Electrical permit shall be required for the installation of building material hoists used in building construction.
7. Electrical Current Use During Building Construction. Electrical permit shall be required for the temporary use of electric current for light, heat, or power purposes on any permanent system of wiring, pending completion and final approval thereof.
8. Electrical Work in Connection with the Installation of Mechanical Equipment. Electrical permit shall be required for electrical work in connection with the installation of mechanical equipment.

**105.1.14.1 Limited scope permits.** When new electrical work, addition to or alteration of existing electrical systems is not included in a building permit, and the project entails only electrical work, only the electrical installation permit shall be required, provided plans showing the proposed work are submitted with the application and approved by the code official. Where the scope of work thus permitted exceeds the scope of two (2) postcard permits, as defined in Section 105.5.4.2.5, an alteration permit fee shall be assessed, based on the valuation of the project, in addition to the installation permit fee.

**105.1.14.2 Temporary Permits.** Permits required under items 4 and 5 of Section 105.1.14 shall be valid for 90 days, and shall be renewable before expiration, for 90-day periods. Permits required under item 7 of Section 105.1.14 shall be valid for one year or until completion of the purpose for which they were issued, whichever comes first, and shall be renewable before expiration, for one-year periods.

**105.1.14.3 Quarterly Permits.** The code official is authorized to issue quarterly permits for the installation of lighting and appliance branch circuits and replacement of motor branch circuits, motor, and controls, for three-month

periods, to owners or occupants of a building regularly employing one or more licensed master electricians on the premises.

**105.1.14.4 Permits for Conduits, Poles and Wires.** Permits shall be obtained to install manholes, underground conduits, for the erection of poles and stringing of overhead wires, or increasing the height of a pole in accordance with the following sections.

**105.1.14.4.1 Public Works or Utility Company Work in Public Space.**

The code official shall issue permits, upon approval by the Director of the Department of Public Works, of an application to install manholes, underground conduits, erect poles or string overhead wires for telegraph, telephone, signal, railway, light, heat or power purposes. Overhead wires shall also include service drops to buildings, private wires strung along curb or public sidewalk for decorative or other lighting, and the installation of all wiring incidental to the Department of Public Works, such as motors for drawbridges and for underpass ventilation. Said permits shall be issued to electrical contractors, public utilities, and any person, firm, company, or corporation authorized by law to use the public space, roads, avenues, alleys and highways, for these purposes.

**105.1.14.4.2 Private wiring in public space.** The code official shall issue electrical permits upon approval by the Director of Public Works, for private lamp posts, yard lights, step or similar lighting pertaining to residential type occupancies, behind the public sidewalk line. Applications for electrical permits for private wiring in public space for the erection of private lamp posts, yard lights, step or similar lighting shall be accompanied by an outside light agreement, a sketch showing the distance from the public sidewalk or street to the lighting and at least one lateral distance from the property line to the said lighting.

**105.1.14.4.3 Private Wiring in Sidewalk Cafes, Entrance Awnings, and Similar Structures in Public Space.** The code official is authorized to issue electrical permits for private wiring in connection with awnings, entrance awnings, sidewalk café enclosures, and similar facilities in public space, when accompanied by the special permit specified hereafter. No private lamp post or lamp shall be erected or placed in public space or in any public street, avenue, alley, or road of the District of Columbia, nor beyond the inner edge of a sidewalk, unless authorized by a special permit to erect the lamp post or lamp. The permit is subject to the right of the Director of Public Works to require such lamppost or lamp to be removed whenever he or she deems such removal necessary in the public interest. The application for the permit shall be accompanied by a written agreement signed by the owner or occupant, or both, of the premises in front of which it is desired to erect such lamp post or lamp, agreeing to

remove the same when called upon by the Director of Public Works to do so.

**105.1.15 Permits Required for Mechanical Work.** Installation, replacement or repair of refrigerating or cooling equipment, pressure vessels or boilers, other than equipment exempt under Section 105.2.2.2, shall require a supplemental mechanical installation permit.

**105.1.15.1 Limited scope permits.** When new mechanical work, addition to or alteration of existing mechanical systems is not included in a building permit, and the project entails only mechanical work, only the mechanical installation permit shall be required, provided plans showing the proposed work are submitted with the application and approved by the code official. Where the scope of work thus permitted exceeds the scope of two (2) postcard permits, as defined in Section 105.5.4.2.4, an alteration permit fee shall be assessed, based on the valuation of the project, in addition to the installation permit fee.

**105.1.16 Permits Required for Plumbing Work.** Installation, replacement or repair of plumbing systems, plumbing fixtures, or their appurtenances, other than work exempt under Section 105.2.2.3, shall require a supplemental plumbing installation permit. A plumbing installation permit is required, namely, for water pressure booster pumps or recirculation pumps.

**105.1.16.1 Limited scope permits.** When new plumbing work, addition to or alteration of existing plumbing systems is not included in a building permit, and the project entails only plumbing work, only the plumbing installation permit shall be required, provided plans showing the proposed work are submitted with the application and approved by the code official. Where the scope of work thus permitted exceeds twenty (20) fixture units, an alteration permit fee shall be assessed, based on the valuation of the project, in addition to the installation permit fee.

**105.1.17 Permits Required for Gasfitting Work.** Installation or replacement of fuel gas fired mechanical equipment, or any replacement of or repair to the gas line serving such appliances shall require a supplemental gasfitting installation permit. Gasfitting installation permits shall be obtained, namely, for the following:

1. Gas fired water or space heating appliances other than boilers.
2. Gas fired boilers in single-family dwellings.
3. Gas fired hot water boilers with a gas input rating of less than 525,000 Btu/h (154 kW).

**105.1.17.1 Limited scope permits.** When new gasfitting work, addition to or alteration of existing gas distribution systems is not included in a building permit,

and the project entails only gasfitting work, only the gasfitting installation permit shall be required, provided plans showing the proposed work are submitted with the application and approved by the code official. Where the scope of work thus permitted exceeds service to five (5) appliances, an alteration permit fee shall be assessed, based on the valuation of the project, in addition to the installation permit fee.

**105.2 Work Exempted from Permit.** The types of work listed in this section, in the amounts indicated hereafter, shall not require a permit, except as provided for in Section 105.2.5. Work exempted from permit shall not include work in any piping system involving brazed, soldered or welded joints. The code official is authorized to determine whether a limited scope of work, other than those listed hereafter, is exempted from permit requirement.

1. Brick pointing.
2. Caulking, patching and plaster repair.
3. Papering, tiling, carpeting and installation of cabinets, counter tops and architectural millwork.
4. Installation of window screens and storm windows.
5. Repair in kind of existing fences.
6. Retaining walls, 4 feet (1219 mm) or less in height, measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, unless supporting a surcharge or impounding Class I, II or IIIA liquids.
7. Detached garden storage sheds complying with Section 105.2.6.
8. Painting, other than application of fire-retardant paint.
9. Replacement *in kind* of one of the items listed hereafter. For the purpose of this section, "replacement in kind," when applied to architectural features, means replacement with a feature of like material that replicates the existing feature in proportion, appearance, texture, design, detail and dimensions.
  - a. Non-rated windows and non-rated doors.
  - b. Roofing and coping.
  - c. Siding.
  - d. Gutters and downspouts.
  - e. Private sidewalks and driveways.

- f. Patios.
  - g. Non-rated suspended ceiling tile.
  - h. Floor coverings.
  - I. Not more than 160 square feet (14.9m<sup>2</sup>) of gypsum board.
  - j. Not more than 50 linear feet (15.24m) of piping of storm drainage system.
  - k. Not more than 10 linear feet (3.05m) of piping of sanitary drainage system.
  - l. Not more than 20 linear feet (6.10m) of piping of sanitary venting piping system.
  - m. Not more than 50 linear feet (15.24m) of piping of a hydronic system.
  - n. Not more than 10 linear feet (3.05m) of ductwork, in other than hazardous exhaust and commercial kitchen exhaust systems.
- 10. Fences not over 42 inches (1067 mm) high and of open design at least 50% open.
  - 11. Pedestrian walkways and driveways not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade and not over any basement or story below and which are not part of a required accessible route.
  - 12. Temporary motion picture, television and theater stage sets and scenery.
  - 13. Prefabricated swimming pools accessory to a Use Group R-3 occupancy which are less than 24 inches (610 mm) deep, do not exceed 5,000 gallons (19 000 L) and are installed entirely above ground. A swimming pool enclosure complying with Section 3109 shall be required.
  - 14. Swings and other playground equipment accessory to one- and two-family dwellings.
  - 15. Window awnings supported by an exterior wall of Use Group R-3 buildings, and awnings exempted per Section 3105.
  - 16. Movable cases and counters not over 5 feet 9 inches (1753 mm) in height, in spaces of Use Group M.

**105.2.1 Emergency Work.** When necessary to make emergency repairs or replacements to buildings, structures or systems, an application for a permit to cover all emergency work shall be submitted on the first business day following the performance of such emergency work.

**105.2.2 Ordinary Repairs.** Supplemental permits are not required for certain ordinary repairs, as specified in sections 105.2.2.1 through 105.2.2.4. Such repairs shall not include the cutting away of any wall, partition or portion thereof, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load bearing support, or the removal or change of any required means of egress, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements; nor shall ordinary repairs include addition to, alteration of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.

**105.2.2.1 Electrical Permits Not Required.** An electrical installation permit shall not be required for the following:

1. Repair portable electrical equipment.
2. Repair lighting fixtures.
3. Repair or replace ballasts, sockets, receptacles, or snap switches.
4. Make other minor repairs at existing outlets.

**105.2.2.2 Mechanical Permits Not Required.** A mechanical installation permit shall not be required for the following:

1. Any portable heating appliance.
2. Any portable ventilation equipment.
3. Any portable cooling unit.
4. Replacement of any minor part which does not alter approval of equipment or make it unsafe.
5. Any portable evaporative cooler.
6. Any self-contained refrigerating system with a refrigerating effect of 24,000 Btu/h (7,034 W) or less.
7. Any water or space heating appliance other than boilers.
8. Boilers in single-family dwellings.
9. Gas fired hot water boilers with a gas input rating of less than 525,000 Btu/h (154 kW).

10. Distribution, exhaust, and make-up air systems ductwork and appurtenant devices, such as dampers, connectors, louvers, diffusers, grilles, or insulation.
11. Air circulation, supply, or exhaust fans.
12. Air compressors or suction pumps.
13. Unfired pressure vessels with a capacity of less than 15 gallons (0.057 m<sup>3</sup>), or operating at a working pressure of 60 psig (414 kPa) or less.
14. Work exempted by item 9.n of Section 105.2.

**105.2.2.3 Plumbing Permits Not Required.** A plumbing installation permit shall not be required for the following:

1. Repairs which involve only the working parts of a faucet or valve.
2. Clearance of stoppages.
3. Repairing of defective faucets or valves, provided alterations are not made to the existing piping and fixtures.
4. Work exempted by items 9.j through 9.m of Section 105.2.
5. Minor repairs not involving the removal or setting of any plumbing fixtures.

**105.2.2.4 Gasfitting Permits Not Required.** A gasfitting installation permit shall not be required for minor repairs to fuel gas systems, not involving any cutting into, plugging, extension, relocation or removal of any gas pipe.

**105.2.3 Public Service Agencies.** A permit shall not be required under this code for the installation, alteration or repair of generation, transmission, distribution, metering or treatment or other related equipment that is under the ownership or control of public service agencies subject to the jurisdiction of the Public Service Commission, or of the District of Columbia Water and Sewer Authority.

**105.2.4 Compliance with Code Provisions.** Despite being exempted from permit, the work performed pursuant to Section 105.2 shall conform to the relevant provisions of the Construction Codes.

**105.2.5 Permit Exemptions not applicable in Historic Districts or to Historically Designated Structures.** When the proposed scope of work would qualify to be exempted from permit pursuant to items 1, 5, 6, 7, 9.a, 9.b, 9.c, 9.e, 9.f, 10, 11 and 15 of Section 105.2, and the work is to occur on the land of or the exterior of buildings or structures



located in historic districts, or of historically designated buildings or structures, an application for a building permit, pursuant to Section 105.1.4, shall be required.

**105.2.6 Limitations on Exempted Garden Storage Sheds.** The permit exemption of Section 105.2(7) is limited to a single garden storage shed that does not exceed 50 square feet (4.65 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in overall height, is an accessory structure to a building of Use Group R-3 or to a building under the jurisdiction of the residential code, and is erected in a lot with no other exempted storage shed.

**105.3 Application for Permit.** The application for permit shall be submitted in the form prescribed and provided by the code official, and shall be accompanied by any filing fee deposit required pursuant to Section 108.2.1.1 and any other fees required by the code official to be paid at the time of filing. All other fees shall be paid prior to issuance of the permit pursuant to Section 108. The code official may reject an application at the time of filing if the application and required supporting documents are not substantially complete.” Submittal requirements shall be in accordance with Section 106. The application form shall contain the statement “Making of a false statement in this form is punishable by criminal penalties pursuant to D.C. Code § 22-2405” in the applicant’s signature box.

**105.3.1 Action on Application.** The code official shall examine or cause to be examined all applications for permit and amendments to applications within a reasonable time after filing. If deficiencies in the application, plans or other supporting documents are discovered during processing, the code official may, in his discretion, give the applicant an opportunity to correct the deficiencies prior to taking action to approve or reject the application. If the application or the plans do not conform to the requirements of all pertinent laws, the code official is authorized to reject such application. The code official shall state the reasons for the rejection in writing, citing specific Code sections, and stating the applicant's right of appeal under Section 112. If the code official is satisfied that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of the Construction Codes and all applicable laws, rules, and regulations, the code official shall issue a permit as soon as practicable.

**105.3.1.1 Peer Reviewer.** Wherever the terms “third-party reviewer”, “third-party plans reviewer”, or “third-party reviewing agency” are used in this section, these terms shall refer to and be equivalent to a “peer reviewer” as that term is defined and described in the “Homestart Regulatory Improvement Amendment Act of 2002,” D.C. Law 14-162, effective 6/25/02. A “certified third-party reviewer” or “certified third party reviewing agency” shall refer to and be equivalent to a “certified peer reviewer” as that term is defined and described in D.C. Law 14-162.

**105.3.1.2 Third-party Certification.** The applicant shall have the option of providing for a third-party plans reviewer or third-party reviewing agency, at the applicant’s expense, to perform a code compliance review of the project, including review of one or more components of the construction documents set forth in this subsection, and to provide the code official with a certified report of

the findings of the review, in a format acceptable to the code official.

“Components” of construction documents as used in this section shall refer to the various disciplines requiring review. The code official shall accept such reports from approved third-party plans reviewers or plans review agencies, provided that the code official determines that such agencies and reviewers satisfy the qualification and reliability requirements established by the code official and all such reports are certified by reviewers who possess a valid license as a registered architect or professional engineer in the District of Columbia. If the code official is satisfied that the proposed construction documents or certified components of construction documents conform to the requirements of the Construction Codes and all applicable laws, rules, and regulations, the code official shall approve the construction documents or certified components of the construction documents within 15 days of submission of the documents and accompanying certified report.

**105.3.1.1.1 Minimum Qualification, Training, Experience and Reliability Requirements for Approved Third-Party Reviewers and Third-Party Review Agencies.**

Third-party plans reviewers and plans review agencies shall meet the following requirements:

1. Each third-party plans reviewer who reviews construction documents shall possess the appropriate licenses and expertise in order to review the type of documents being reviewed, and shall submit evidence annually that his or her license is valid.
2. Each plans review agency shall have adequate staff with the appropriate licenses and expertise to review the types of construction documents that they propose to review.
3. A third-party plans reviewer or plans review agency shall meet the independence and ethical requirements of Section 6c (b)(4), (5), (6), (7), and (8) of the Homestart Regulatory Improvement Amendment Act.
4. Each third-party plans review agency shall include at least one registered architect or professional engineer licensed in the District of Columbia who shall act as the professional in charge of the review and who shall certify the plans reviews performed by the agency. Any person working for the agency who is not so licensed shall work under the direct supervision of a D.C. registered architect or professional engineer.
5. Each plans reviewer who reviews construction documents under this section, either as a third-party plans reviewer or as a member of a plans review agency, shall have an acceptable level of expertise and experience in the performance of code compliance reviews in the

disciplines for which he is seeking certification, which shall include at a minimum: Demonstrable experience of at least three years of code compliance reviews in the applicable discipline in a jurisdiction using the applicable national model codes as the basis for its construction codes; or possession of a current national certification as a plans reviewer, issued by a certifying agency recognized by the International Codes Council, in the discipline or disciplines in which the reviewer is applying to perform reviews.

6. Such additional requirements as the code official may impose from time to time to ensure the accuracy and reliability of the plans reviewers and the plan reviews conducted.

**105.3.1.1.2. Approval and Certification of Third-Party Plans**

**Reviewers and Plan Review Agencies.** An individual or agency that wishes to be certified as an approved third-party plans reviewer or third-party plans review agency shall submit an application on the form provided by the Director and shall provide all necessary information and documentation to demonstrate satisfaction of the minimum qualifications, training, experience and reliability requirements set forth in section 105.3.1.1.1.

**105.3.1.1.3 Scope of Third-Party Peer Review.** When approving a third-party plans reviewer or third-party plans review agency, the code official shall specify the review disciplines of the permit construction documents that the plans reviewer or plans review agency is authorized to review. Each approved third-party plans reviewer or agency shall be assigned a number. The areas in which a third-party plans reviewer or third-party plans review agency may be certified may include any of the following:

1. Architectural/Structural;
2. Elevators;
3. Mechanical;
4. Plumbing;
5. Electrical;
6. Fire and Life Safety (Fire Protection).

**105.3.1.1.4 Expedited Construction Documents Review Procedures.** In order to participate, the property owner, agent or permit applicant shall advise the Department, in the construction permit application, that a certified third-party plans reviewer or third-party plans review agency will review one or more disciplines of the construction documents in conformity with Section 6c of the Homestart Regulatory Improvement Amendment Act of 2002. The said construction documents shall be

reviewed by the third-party plans reviewer and recommended for submission/approval in the certified report provided to the code official.

**105.3.1.1.5 Certification of Plans by Third-Party Reviewer.** The third-party plans reviewer shall include a certification on each plan reviewed including the information required by Section 6c. (e) of the Homestart Regulatory Improvement Amendment Act.

**105.3.1.1.6 Review of Work Conducted by Third-Party Plans Reviewers and Revocation of Certification.** The code official shall periodically conduct a detailed unannounced audit of documents reviewed by third-party plans reviewers and plans review agencies, and shall also maintain a tracking system to monitor the recommendations of the third-party plans reviewers. If the code official determines that plans recommended by the third-party reviewer or third-party reviewing agency for approval do not meet the requirements of the Construction Codes or that the reviewer or agency has failed to meet other requirements of this section or of Section 6b or 6c of the Homestart Regulatory Improvement Amendment Act, the code official is authorized to revoke the third-party reviewer's or third party reviewing agency's certification upon written notice, including the reason for the revocation. The certification may be reinstated if the Director determines that the third-party reviewer or third party reviewing agency has remedied the violation that formed the basis for the revocation and the reviewer, or professional in charge in the case of a reviewing agency, possesses a valid license as an architect or professional engineer.

**105.3.1.2 Payment of Delinquent Fines and Penalties.** The code official may refuse to issue a permit if the owner, applicant, or responsible officer has outstanding fines or penalties imposed under the Construction Codes.

**105.3.1.3 By Whom Application is Made.** Application for a permit shall be made by the owner or lessee of the building or structure, or by the agent of either. The licensed engineer, architect or interior designer employed in connection with the proposed work shall be allowed to submit an application for a building permit on behalf of the owner or lessee.

**105.3.1.4 Names and Addresses Required.** The full names and addresses of the owner, lessee, applicant, and of the responsible officers, if the owner or lessee is a corporate body, shall be stated in the application.

**105.3.1.5 Penalties for False Statements.** If an applicant willfully makes a false statement in the application form that is in fact material, under circumstances in which the statement could reasonably be expected to be relied upon as true, the applicant, upon conviction, is subject to the penalties of D.C. Code § 22-2405.

**105.3.1.6 Approval of Partial Plans.** The code official is authorized to issue a partial permit for the construction of foundations or any other part of a building or structure before the entire plans and specifications for the whole building or structure have been submitted, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of the Construction Codes. Issuance of a partial permit by the code official does not constitute assurance that a permit for the entire structure will be granted. The holder of such partial permit for the foundations or other part of a building or structure will proceed with the building operation at the holder's own risk and without assurance that a permit for the entire structure will be granted.

**105.3.1.6.1 Separate or Combined Permits.** Separate permits may be required for structural, electrical, plumbing, and mechanical installations, or for special construction, in the discretion of the code official. Consolidated permits may be issued incorporating two or more of the areas of design.

**105.3.1.7 Approved Plans.** The code official shall stamp "Approved" or otherwise endorse in writing all sets of corrected plans. One set of such approved plans shall be retained by the code official and one set shall be kept at the building site, open to inspection of the code official or an authorized representative at all reasonable times.

**105.3.1.8 Signature on Permit.** The code official's signature shall be attached to every permit; or the code official may authorize a subordinate to affix a facsimile of the code official's signature to permits.

**105.3.2 Time Limitation of Application.** Application and supporting documentation for any proposed work shall be deemed to have been abandoned if the applicant fails to obtain the permit within six months of the date of written notification by the code official that the permit is ready for issuance, or if the applicant fails to make the required changes in the application, plans or other supporting documents within one year of the date of written notification by the code official that the plans review is complete and that changes are required before the permit shall be issued. Refunds of the unused portion of the application file deposit shall be made pursuant to Section 108.6.

**Exception:** If the applicant shows reasonable cause, the code official is permitted to grant a maximum of two (2) extensions of time for additional periods not exceeding six (6) months each.

**105.3.3 Amendments to Permit.** The holder of a valid active building permit shall be authorized to amend it or to amend the plans, application or other records pertaining to it, by filing at any time before completion of the work for which the original permit was issued, an application for revision of a building permit, accompanied by two (2) sets of the revised plans or documents. Once such amendments are approved and the revision permit is issued, it shall be deemed part of the original permit and shall be kept therewith in the official records of the Department. A revision permit shall become invalid upon

expiration of the original building permit it amends. The extension provisions of Section 105.5.1 shall apply to the original building permit and shall only affect the respective revision permits to the extent that the original building permit is extended.

**105.4 Compliance with Code.** The permit shall be a license to proceed with the work and shall not be construed as authority to violate, cancel or set aside any of the provisions of the Construction Codes, except as specifically stipulated by modification granted in accordance with Sections 104.10 and 104.10.1.

**105.5 Expiration of Permit.** Any permit issued shall become invalid if the authorized work is not begun within one year after the permit is issued, or if the authorized work is suspended or abandoned for a period of one year, after the date work is begun.

**105.5.1 Extension of Permit.** Upon written request submitted by the applicant before a permit expires or lapses, the code official is authorized to grant extensions of time not to exceed six (6) months per extension. Not more than three extensions of time will be granted to any permit.

**105.5.2 Lapsed Permits.** Permits issued under the Construction Codes shall not be extendable if permitted to expire.

**105.5.3 Non-Transferrable Supplemental Permits.** A new supplemental installation permit should be obtained pursuant to Section 105.1.13 for any authorized work begun by one contractor and continued by another contractor.

**105.5.4 Postcard Permits.** Application for permits may be made by using a special postcard issued by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, for a scope of work within the limitations of Sections 105.5.4.2.1 through 105.5.4.2.7. Use of postcard permits shall be subject to the terms and conditions printed on the "applicant's copy" of the postcard permit form.

**105.5.4.1 Postcard Permit Types.** The code official shall make the following types of postcard permits available for purchase by qualified applicants, upon request:

1. Postcard plumbing permits.
2. Postcard gasfitting permits.
3. Postcard mechanical permits.
4. Postcard electrical permits (general).
5. Postcard electrical service permits (heavy-up).
6. Postcard building permits.

**105.5.4.1.1 Eligibility to Purchase and Use Postcard Permits.** In order to be eligible to purchase and use the types of postcard permits established in Section 105.5.4.1, the applicants shall have the following respective minimum qualifications:

1. Postcard plumbing permits: master plumbers only.
2. Postcard gasfitting permits: master plumbers and master gasfitters.
3. Postcard mechanical permits: master mechanics only.
4. Postcard electrical permits (general): master electricians and homeowners are allowed to purchase; homeowners are allowed to purchase limited quantities, consistent with the anticipated scope of work of one (1) one-family dwelling; homeowners are only allowed to submit postcard permits for work done in their own one-family home; master electricians are allowed to use the permits regardless of location.
5. Postcard electrical service permits (heavy-up): electrical contractors only.
6. Postcard building permits: any applicant is allowed to purchase; only a building owner, lessee, or authorized agent of either is allowed to submit a postcard building permit.

**105.5.4.1.2 Postcard Permit a Privilege.** The code official shall have the right to deny the privilege of purchasing or using postcard permits to any qualified applicant who fails to submit a postcard permit timely, or who misuses the postcard permits as a means to evade full compliance with the application requirements of Section 105.1. Cases of willful misuse of postcard permits by a licensed master, in violation of the pertinent permit conditions, shall result in referral of the matter to the respective licensing board for appropriate action.

**105.5.4.1.3 Postcard Permit Inspections.** The applicant shall be responsible for requesting in a timely fashion all the necessary inspections of work done under postcard permits. Work that is intended to be permanently concealed shall require a "close-in" inspection. At the "close-in" inspection, the inspector will determine if a final inspection is necessary. Failure to obtain a necessary inspection is a violation of this Code and shall subject the applicant to penalties and fines pursuant to Section 113.

**105.5.4.2 Postcard Permit Limitations.** The scope of validity of each type of postcard permit is limited by the conditions specified in Sections 105.5.4.2.1 through 105.5.4.2.7.

**105.5.4.2.1 General Limitations.** The following limitations shall apply to all types of postcard permits:

1. Postcard permits shall not be accepted to substitute for permits that would otherwise require approval by boards or agencies of the federal government or of the District of Columbia, other than the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs. In particular, postcard permits shall not be accepted for work to be done under item 1 of Section 105.5.4.2.4 or items 1, 2, 12.a and 12.b of Section 105.5.4.2.7, when such work is proposed to occur on the exterior of buildings or structures located in historic districts or in historically designated buildings or structures. The user shall be responsible for obtaining confirmation from the code official that the proposed scope of work qualifies to be done under a postcard permit.
2. Work done under a postcard permit shall not commence before the postcard permit form is filled out entirely and the "inspector's copy" is mailed. The inspector's copy shall be postmarked, at the latest, on the first business day following the start of the work. Work done in violation of this limitation shall be deemed work without a permit and shall be subject to the enforcement actions of Sections 113 and 114.
3. No more than one address, lot and square per postcard permit.

**105.5.4.2.2 Postcard Plumbing Permit Limitations.** Postcard plumbing permits shall be acceptable for a scope of work within the limits of any one of the categories listed hereafter. A separate postcard permit shall be required for each category when the scope of work includes items in more than one category.

1. Installation of not more than one (1) new plumbing fixture, on a residential, commercial or industrial project.
2. Repairs to existing plumbing systems, including the installation of not more than one (1) new fixture.
3. Minor alterations to existing plumbing systems, including the installation of not more than one (1) new fixture. For the purpose of this section, minor alterations shall not include changing the



layout of piping serving more than three (3) fixtures, including domestic water, sewer or venting systems.

4. Replacement of not more than one plumbing fixture, on a residential, commercial or industrial project.
5. Installation of one (1) backflow preventer.
6. One (1) sewer or water line cut.
7. Pressure testing of a single water system.

**105.5.4.2.3 Postcard Gasfitting Permit Limitations.** Postcard gasfitting permits shall be acceptable for a scope of work within the limits of any one of the categories listed hereafter. A separate postcard permit is required for each category when the scope of work includes items in more than one category.

1. Repairs to existing fuel gas systems, including the connection of not more than one (1) new gas appliance.
2. Minor alterations to existing fuel gas systems, including the installation of not more than one (1) new gas appliance. For the purpose of this section, minor alterations shall not include changing the layout of the fuel gas system piping serving more than two (2) appliances.
3. Replacement of not more than one (1) gas appliance, on a residential, commercial or industrial project.
4. Testing of a single gas line.

**105.5.4.2.4 Postcard Mechanical Permit Limitations.** Postcard mechanical permits shall be acceptable for a scope of work within the limits of any one of the categories listed hereafter. A separate postcard permit shall be required for each category when the scope of work includes items in more than one category.

1. Repairs to not more than one (1) existing refrigerating or cooling system, up to a maximum of 10-ton of equivalent refrigerating effect.
2. Conversion of one (1) existing refrigerating or cooling system to adapt it to use an environmentally safe refrigerant, in a residential, commercial or industrial facility, not including the installation of related detection, alarm and ventilation devices.

3. Installation, as required, of gas detection, alarm and ventilation devices, related to the use of environmentally safe refrigerants as a result of the conversion of existing refrigerating or cooling systems in a single location inside a residential, commercial or industrial facility.

**105.5.4.2.5 Postcard Electrical (General) Permit Limitations.** Postcard electrical (general) permits shall be acceptable for a scope of work within the limits of any one of the categories listed hereafter. A separate postcard permit shall be required for each category when the scope of work includes items in more than one category.

1. Installation of a total of not more than ten (10) new outlets or new lighting fixtures, on a residential, commercial or industrial project.
2. Replacement or repair of not more than ten (10) existing outlets and not more than ten (10) existing lighting fixtures, on a residential, commercial or industrial project.
3. Installation of not more than ten (10) new outlets in a power-limited system, on a residential, commercial or industrial project.
4. Replacement of not more than one (1) residential electric appliance on a residential project.

**105.5.4.2.6 Postcard Electrical (Heavy-up) Permit Limitations.**

Postcard electrical (heavy-up) permits shall be acceptable to upgrade one (1) electric service up to 200 Amps.

**105.5.4.2.7 Postcard Building Permit Limitations.** Postcard building permits shall be acceptable for a scope of work within the limits of any one of the categories listed hereafter. A separate postcard permit shall be required for each category when the scope of work includes items in more than one category.

1. Repair a fence up to a height of seven (7) feet (2.13 m) above grade, entirely located in private property and behind the building restriction line.
2. Interior demolition of non-bearing elements in a space up to 5,000 square feet.
3. Application of fire-retardant paint, up to five (5) gallons (19 L).
4. Installation of one (1) construction trailer on private property.

5. Erection of one (1) Fireworks Stand on private property.
6. Erection of one (1) Christmas Tree Stand on private property.
7. Renewal of an active building permit.
8. Revision of an active permit for change of ownership or change of address.
9. Repairs of one of the following items:
  - a. Existing fire escape.
  - b. Front porch and steps in a single-family dwelling.
  - c. Rear porch and steps in a single-family dwelling.
  - d. Up to four (4) stories of a single interior stairway.
  - e. Guardrails and/or handrails in up to four (4) stories of a single interior stairway.
  - f. Guardrails of up to five (5) balconies.
10. Replacement *in kind* of one of the items listed hereafter. For the purpose of this section, "replacement in kind," when applied to architectural features, means replacement with a feature of like material that replicates the existing feature in proportion, appearance, texture, design, detail and dimensions.
  - a. Guards and guardrails of up to five (5) balconies and/or exterior porches on the same building.
  - b. Up to five (5) fire windows.
  - c. Up to five (5) fire doors.
  - d. Up to five (5) fire or smoke dampers.
  - e. Up to ten (10) sprinklers, on an existing residential, commercial or industrial system.
  - f. Rated suspended ceiling tile in an area up to 5,000 square feet (464.5 m<sup>2</sup>).
  - g. Existing fence on private property.
  - h. Interior wall coverings.
  - I. Up to 800 square feet (74.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of gypsum board.
  - j. Ductwork of a single system, in other than hazardous exhaust and commercial kitchen exhaust systems.
  - k. Guards, guardrails and/or handrails in up to four (4) stories of a single interior stairway.

**105.5.4.3 Postcard Permit Fees.** Fees for postcard permits shall be as established in the approved permit fee schedule. Fees for postcard permits shall be revised from time to time to remain comparable to fees for regular permits for comparable work. For the types of postcard permits established in Subsection 105.5.4.1, the respective fees shall be established according to the following criteria:

1. Postcard plumbing permits, equal to the fee for an installation permit for a single plumbing fixture.
2. Postcard gasfitting permits, equal to the fee for an installation permit for a single gas appliance.
3. Postcard mechanical permits, equal to the fee for an installation permit for a 10-ton air-conditioning system.
4. Postcard electrical permits (general), equal to the fee for an electrical installation permit for up to 10 junction boxes.
5. Postcard electrical (service heavy-up) permits, equal to the fee for an electrical installation permit for a service heavy-up of up to 200 Amp.
6. Building postcard permits, equal to the fee for a miscellaneous building permit.

**105.6 Revocation of Permits.** The code official is authorized to revoke a permit or approval issued under the Construction Codes, for any of the following conditions:

1. Where there is a false statement or misrepresentation of fact, or other significant inaccuracy, in the application or on the plans on which a permit or approval was based, that substantively affected the approval;
2. When the construction does not comply with the Construction Codes, the permit, the revised permit, or the approved plans and other information filed to obtain the permit, and when the permit holder fails to correct the non-conforming situation, within the time period specified in a notice or order issued under Section 113;
3. When the permit holder has been cited under Section 115 for one or more violations of the Construction Codes which by the determination of the code official threaten the health and safety of the public in the District of Columbia and when the permit holder fails to restore safety or otherwise remedy the situation, under the terms and conditions of the order and within the time period specified; or
4. When the construction has been posted with two (2) or more stop work orders, under Section 114, and the permit holder fails to comply with conditions stated in the orders prior to resuming construction, in two (2) or more instances, so as to establish a pattern indicative of the permit holder's unwillingness to fully comply with the Construction Codes.
5. When permits are issued to a contractor whose license has expired, or is suspended or revoked by the Board having jurisdiction.

6. When the permit has been issued in error.

**105.6.1 Effect of Revocations.** Revocations based on items 1, 2, 4, 5 or 6 of Section 105.6 are proposed actions and shall become final upon occurrence of one of the following two conditions:

1. If the respondent's right to a hearing is waived by failing to request a hearing within ten (10) business days of receipt of the proposed order; or
2. If so determined by the Office of Adjudication as the result of a hearing requested by the respondent pursuant to Section 105.6.4.
3. Revocations based on item 3 of Section 105.6 shall be summary revocations and shall take effect the date ordered by the code official.

**105.6.2 Notice of Revocations.** The respondent shall be provided, pursuant to Section 105.6.3, written notice of the code official's order to revoke the permit. This notice shall include the following:

1. A copy of the written order;
2. A statement of the grounds for the action taken, citing the provisions of the D.C. Code or the Construction Codes which have been violated; and
3. A statement advising the respondent of the right to request a hearing within ten (10) days (excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays) from the day the notice is received.

**105.6.3 Service of Notice.** The code official shall effect service of a notice to revoke on a respondent by one of the following methods:

1. Personal service on the respondent or the respondent's agent;
2. Delivering the notice to the last known home or business address of the respondent or the respondent's agent and leaving it with a person over the age of sixteen (16) years old residing or employed therein; or
3. Mailing the notice, via certified mail with return receipt requested, to the last known home or business address of the respondent or respondent's agent.

**105.6.3.1 Posting of Notice.** In addition to service of notice under Section 105.6.3, a notice shall be posted at the construction site. This notice shall not be necessary to effect service.

**105.6.3.2 Proof of Service.** Proof of service shall include any of the following:

1. If notice is served personally, the notice shall be deemed to have been served at the time when delivery is made to the person concerned. The certificate of service shall state the name and address of the person on whom service is made, the date and time of service, and be signed by the issuing agent;
2. If the notice is sent by certified mail, it shall be deemed to have been served on the date on the return receipt showing delivery of the notice; or
3. A written acknowledgment by the respondent or the respondent's agent.

**105.6.3.3 Service by Return Receipt.** In the event the respondent or the respondent's agent is no longer at the last known address shown by the records of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs and no forwarding address is available, the notice shall be deemed to have been served on the date the return receipt bearing such notification is received by the code official.

**105.6.3.4 Respondent's Agent.** For the purposes of this section, respondent's agent shall mean a general agent, employee, or attorney of the respondent.

**105.6.3.5 Subsequent Notifications.** Once the initial notice has been served the following shall apply:

1. The respondent shall notify the Office of Adjudication of all changes of address or of a preferred address to receive all future notices. This notification by the respondent shall be in writing; and
2. All other notices, orders, or any other information regarding these hearings may be sent by the Department via first class mail, postage prepaid.

**105.6.4 Hearings.** A request for a hearing on a permit suspension or revocation must be made directly to the Office of Adjudication, Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, by the respondent.

**105.6.4.1 Hearing Procedures.** Upon receipt of a request for a hearing under this section, the Director shall appoint an Administrative Law Judge to hold the hearing. Hearings shall be conducted pursuant to the contested case provisions of the District of Columbia Administrative Procedures Act (D.C. Official Code §2-509) and any rules or procedures applicable to the DCRA Office of Adjudication.

**105.6.4.2 Expedited Hearings.** When a summary revocation is ordered under item 3 of Section 105.6 of this chapter, the respondent may request an expedited hearing from the Director within seventy-two (72) hours (excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays) to review the reasonableness of the revocation order. At this hearing, the code official shall have the burden of establishing a prima facie case of immediate or serious and continuing endangerment. No stay of the

code official's decision to revoke a permit under item 3 of Section 105.6 shall be permitted pending the final resolution of the hearing.

**105.6.5 Appeals.** An appeal of a hearing under this section shall be heard by the District of Columbia Board of Appeals and Review pursuant to Chapter 5, Title 1, DCMR.

**105.7 Posting of Permit.** A photocopy of the permit or the original shall be kept on the site of operations, open to public inspection during the entire time of progression of the work and until it is completed.

## **SECTION 106A CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS**

**106.1 Submittal Documents.** The application for building permit shall be accompanied by not less than four (4) copies of plans drawn to scale, with sufficient clarity and detail dimensions to show the nature and character of the work to be performed. Each set will contain complete architectural, civil, structural, mechanical, plumbing and electrical plans, as applicable. When quality of materials or equipment is essential for conformity to this code, specific information shall be given to establish such quality and the plans shall contain a schedule of such equipment. This code shall not be cited, or the term "legal" or its equivalent be used, as a substitute for specific information.

**Exception:** The code official is authorized to accept permit applications without plans when the work involved is of a sufficiently limited scope.

**106.1.1 Engineering Details.** The code official shall require adequate details of structural, mechanical, plumbing, and electrical work to be filed, including computations, stress diagrams and other technical data essential to assess compliance with this code, as further specified in Sections 106.1.2 through 106.1.17. All engineering plans and computations shall bear the signature of the professional engineer responsible for the design as required by Section 106.3.4.

**106.1.1.1 Shop Drawings.** The code official is authorized to require that three (3) sets of shop drawings be submitted, bearing the review stamp of the engineer of record, and bearing the seal and signature of the design engineer, if not the engineer of record, before construction or installation of the following elements and systems:

1. Structural steel and steel trusses, with connection details.
2. Open web steel joists.
3. Precast and prestressed concrete.
4. Post tensioning.
5. Space frames.

6. Strong backs.
7. Curtain wall.
8. Structural wood trusses, beams, girders, and columns.
9. Concrete mixes.
10. Structural, electrical, and mechanical loads related to elevators and other vertical transportation systems.
11. Pre-engineered elements.
12. Suspended plaster ceiling systems.
13. Underpinning.
14. Sheeting and shoring.
15. Formwork.
16. Automatic fire suppression systems.
17. Fire alarm systems.
18. Commercial kitchen hood suppression systems.
19. Flammable and combustible liquid storage tanks.
20. Elevators, escalators and other vertical transportation systems.

**106.1.2 Means of Egress.** The construction documents shall show in sufficient detail the location, construction, size and character of all portions of the means of egress in compliance with the provisions of this code. In other than occupancies in Use Groups R-2, R-3 and I-1, the construction documents shall summarize the number of occupants of each floor and of each room with a capacity in excess of 50 occupants.

**106.1.3 Exterior Wall Envelope.** The construction documents shall describe the exterior wall and roof envelope in sufficient detail to determine compliance with this code. The construction documents shall provide details of the exterior wall and roof envelope as required, including materials, flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive membrane, details around openings, fire-resistive construction and fire-resistive protection of wall openings, wall cavities and intersections with floor assemblies, as applicable.



**106.1.4 Structural Plans.** Before a permit is issued and before work can begin, structural plans shall be submitted showing the complete design, with sizes, sections, and relative locations of various structural members, floor elevations, column, or bearing wall centers, and beam or joint sizes and spacings. Plans shall be drawn to scale large enough to convey the information adequately. The code official shall have the right to require that the structural computations for the structure be submitted for review.

**106.1.4.1 Certification of Structural Design.** When the structural portions of such plans have been prepared by a professional engineer licensed and registered in the District of Columbia, practicing in the field of structural engineering, the owner shall have the option to submit with such plans a certificate, duly executed by such structural engineer on a form provided by the code official, that the structural portion of the plans complies with the structural requirements of the Construction Codes. The code official is authorized to accept the structural portions of the plans thus certified, at the code official's discretion, provided the certificate is duly notarized and witnessed. Each sheet of each set of plans certified under this Section shall bear the original seal and signature of the certifying engineer, under the following statement: "Structural plans certified as provided in Section 106.1.4.1 of the D.C. Construction Codes."

**106.1.4.2 Non-Structural Review.** The provisions of Section 106.1.4.1 shall not relieve the code official from determining that the design, erection or alteration of such building or structure complies with other applicable requirements of the Construction Codes and other regulations.

**106.1.5 Plumbing Plans.** The applicant shall provide legible plans, drawn to a scale of not less than 1/8 inch to the foot (10 mm/m), of each floor and of a typical floor, in quadruplicate, showing the complete plumbing system layout, all plumbing fixtures, the water supply piping layout, together with building sections showing vertical and diagrammatic elevations of the soil, waste, vent and water supply lines with traps and valves, and the location and size of the public sewer or other disposal system. The plumbing plans shall show in sufficient detail: the layout and spacing of fixtures; the size, material and location of the building and storm sewers and drains; and the soil, waste, vent and water supply piping.

**106.1.5.1 Public Sewer.** Plans for new plumbing or alterations to existing plumbing systems shall be accompanied by a diagram showing the relative elevation of the lowest fixture and the top of the public sewer referred to in the established datum of the Water and Sewer Authority (WASA). The plans shall show the size, number and location of all new sewer connections. A water and sewer availability slip, issued by the Water and Sewer Authority (WASA), shall be provided with the plumbing plans for every project entailing new water or sewer service connections.

**106.1.5.2 Public Water Main.** Where the installation of a water distribution system or the replacement or alteration of an existing water supply system is contemplated, the plumbing plans shall show the location and size of all water lines and branches involved, all fixtures or other devices to be supplied, and the minimum water pressure in the main in front of the building or structure.

**106.1.5.3 Exemptions.** Plumbing plans shall not be required for the following:

1. Any work exempted from building permit requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.
2. Repair or replacement in kind of plumbing fixtures.
3. Work involving only structures without plumbing fixtures, such as open sheds for storage purposes, detached private garages and temporary installations for exhibition purposes where not designed for sanitary use and not directly connected to a sewage system.
4. Temporary sanitary installations required for construction operations where not designed to be directly connected to the public sewer system.
5. Any work exempted from installation permit requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.2.3.
6. Any work allowed to be performed under a postcard permit in accordance with Sections 105.5.4.2 through 105.5.4.2.7.

**106.1.6 Mechanical Plans.** The applicant shall provide, in quadruplicate, diagrammatic mechanical equipment or system and mechanical plans, drawn to a scale of not less than 1/8 inch to the foot (10 mm/m), showing the location and arrangement of the mechanical equipment and distribution elements including safeties and pressure-controlling devices. The plans shall show in sufficient detail the relevant features and clearances of the appliances and systems, including: size and type of apparatus; construction of flue, stack or chimney; stack connections; type of fuel; method of operation; and the method of compliance with all the applicable regulations for the class and type of equipment installed.

**106.1.6.1 Exemptions.** Mechanical plans shall not be required for the following:

1. Any work exempted from building permit requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.
2. Repair or replacement in kind of mechanical equipment.
3. Work involving only structures without equipment regulated by the Mechanical Code, such as open sheds for storage purposes, detached

private garages and other similar spaces not required by the Construction Codes to be heated.

4. Temporary sanitary installations required for construction operations.
5. Any work exempted from installation permits requirement in accordance with Sections 105.2.2.2 and 105.2.2.4.
6. Any work allowed to be performed under a postcard permit in accordance with Sections 105.5.4.2 through 105.5.4.2.7.

**106.1.7 Energy Conservation Plans.** Construction documents and other supporting data shall be submitted in quadruplicate with each application for a permit. The construction documents and designs submitted under the provisions of Chapter 4 of the *Energy Code* shall be prepared by a registered design professional. Where special conditions exist, the code official is authorized to require additional construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

**Exceptions:**

The code official is authorized to waive the submission of construction documents and other supporting data not required to be prepared by a registered design professional if it is found that the nature of the work applied for is such that reviewing of construction documents is not necessary to obtain compliance with this code.

For residential buildings having a conditioned floor area of 5,000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) or less, designs submitted under the provisions of Chapter 4 of the *Energy Code* shall be prepared by anyone having qualifications acceptable to the code official.

**106.1.7.1 Information on Construction Documents.** Construction documents shall be drawn to scale upon suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted when approved by the code official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building and the equipment and systems as herein governed, including, but not limited to, design criteria, exterior envelope component materials, U-factors of the envelope systems, U-factors of fenestration products, R-values of insulating materials, size and type of apparatus and equipment, equipment and systems controls and other pertinent data to indicate conformance with the requirements of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the code official.

**106.1.7.2 Deemed to Comply.** Use of the appropriate REScheck and COMcheck tools is deemed an acceptable method to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of the *Energy Code*.

**106.1.8 Electrical Plans.** The applicant shall provide plans and schedules, in quadruplicate, in sufficient detail showing the location and capacity of all lighting

facilities, electrically operated equipment and electrical circuits required for all service equipment of the building or structure, drawn to a scale of not less than 1/8 inch to the foot (10 mm/m). All electrically controlled devices, including signal, communicating and lighting systems and associated wiring, wherever required under the provisions of this code, shall be shown on the electrical plans for the following purposes:

1. Places of public assembly and education and control of emergency lighting systems in accordance with Section 1003.2.11 through 1003.2.11.3 and hazardous uses requirements in Chapter 4 of the *Building Code*.
2. Stairway and exit illumination in accordance with Section 1204 and Section 1003.2.11 through 1003.2.11.3 of the *Building Code*; "Exit" sign lighting circuits in accordance with Section 1003.2.10 of the *Building Code*; elevator car illumination in accordance with Chapter 30 of the *Building Code*.
3. Electrical equipment and control of heating, refrigerating and ventilating machinery and devices in accordance with the mechanical code listed in Chapter 35.
4. Fire protective signaling systems, automatic fire detection systems, fire department communications and supervisory services in accordance with Section 901.6 through 901.6.3 and 907 of the *Building Code*.
5. Wiring of display signs in accordance with Sections 3112.1.4 and 3116.6.7.2 of the *Building Code*; and radio and television antennas in accordance with Sections 3108.0 and 3109.0 of the *Building Code*.
6. Power control electric operation and circuit wiring of elevators and escalators in accordance with Chapter 30 of the *Building Code*.
7. Illumination of spaces intended for human occupancy in accordance with Section 1204 of the *Building Code*.
8. Backup emergency and standby power systems.

**106.1.8.1 Exemptions.** Electrical plans shall not be required for the following:

1. Any work exempted from building permit requirement in accordance with Sections 105.2.
2. Repair or replacement in kind of electrical equipment.
3. Work involving only structures without equipment regulated by the Electrical Code, such as open sheds for storage purposes, detached private garages and other similar spaces not required by the Construction Codes to be provided with electric current.

4. Temporary sanitary installations required for construction operations.
5. Any work exempted from installation permits requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.2.1.
6. Any work allowed to be performed under a postcard permit in accordance with Sections 105.5.4.2 through 105.5.4.2.7.

**106.1.9 Fire Protection Information.** The applicant shall provide plans and schedules, in quadruplicate, in sufficient detail showing the features and characteristics of all fire protection systems components for any system required by this code or otherwise proposed to be installed, including but not limited to the following. The construction documents shall show the location and type of all fire alarm devices, fire alarm control equipment and panels, fire alarm primary and backup power sources. The construction documents shall show the standpipes and automatic sprinkler system infrastructure, including the location, size and type of risers, valves, flow and pressure sensors, siamese connections, fire pump, jockey pump, pump controllers, pump test pipes and other appurtenances of the system, as applicable. The type of sprinkler system and areas and openings requiring special coverage shall be so noted on the construction documents. The construction documents shall show details of other fire suppression systems, including gaseous and kitchen hood systems. The construction documents shall show capacities and loads of the means of egress, maximum travel distances at every floor, remoteness between exits, fire resistance rating of structural members, floors and walls enclosing means of egress, rating of fire doors and fire dampers, location and type of exit signs and emergency lighting. Construction documents for work in part of an existing building shall include a scoping document listing all floors of the building and the extent to which each floor is protected with an automatic fire suppression system. Construction plans containing fire protection systems data shall be drawn to a scale of not less than 1/8 inch to the foot (10 mm/m).

**106.1.10 Elevator and Other Vertical Transportation Systems Information.** The applicant shall provide plans and schedules, in quadruplicate, in sufficient detail showing the features and characteristics of all vertical transportation systems components for any system required by this code or otherwise proposed to be installed, including but not limited to the following. The construction documents shall show the location, overall dimensions and type of all vertical transportation systems. The construction documents shall show location and type of elevator lobby smoke detectors, other smoke detectors for elevator recall, as well as other fire alarm and fire suppression devices proposed to be installed in elevator machine rooms, elevator pits and top of elevator hoistways and shall include a sequence of elevator operation in emergency mode when such fire detection equipment is activated. The construction documents shall clearly show the primary and backup power sources for the elevator equipment and shall define the primary and secondary levels of elevator recall. Clearances at top and bottom of hoistway and at elevator equipment spaces, minimum interior dimensions of cabs, provisions for access to elevator pits, provisions for drainage of elevator pits, provisions for illumination and

electric power in elevator machine rooms, elevator hoistways, elevator pits and elevator equipment spaces shall be shown on the construction documents, as applicable. The construction documents shall show the location of provisions for emergency disconnect of elevator power in elevator pits, elevator machine rooms and elevator equipment spaces, and shall show the location of sprinkler valves and sprinkler flow sensors for systems serving elevator machine rooms and hoistways, as required.

**106.1.11 Zoning Compliance Review Data.** The applicant shall provide to the Zoning Division of the Department not less than four (4) copies of plans drawn to a scale indicated numerically as well as depicted graphically, showing orientation of the property as to true North, and the following:

1. The shape, dimensions and topography of the lot to be built upon, in sufficient detail to allow determination of heights above existing and proposed finished grade of all proposed structures, so as to allow determination of compliance with pertinent height limitations of Title 11 DCMR, Zoning Regulations.
2. The width of all public streets and public rights-of-way contiguous to the lot, with elevations at measuring points along them sufficient to determine compliance with the Height Act of 1910, as amended.
3. The shape and location in plan of all existing and proposed structures, fully dimensioned, including orientation and distances to lot lines so as to define without ambiguity the dimensions and location of said structures.
4. The elevations of all existing and proposed structures, fully dimensioned so as to define without ambiguity the dimensions of said structures.
5. The parking and loading plans and the basis for computation of the facilities shown on those plans.
6. A Zoning Data Summary of the project including, as applicable, at least the following data: lot width, area of the lot, percentage of lot occupancy, height of the structure and the location and elevation of the height measurement reference points, gross floor area for each floor level, area of basement, area of cellar, proposed Floor Area Ratio, areas dedicated to each use, width of any proposed side yard, rear yard or court, number of standard and compact parking spaces and dimensions of loading berths and delivery loading spaces.
7. Other information necessary to determine compliance with Title 11 DCMR, Zoning Regulations.

**106.1.11.1 Zoning Data on Building Plat.** For the purpose of zoning compliance review, the following data shall be provided on the building plat required by Section 106.1.12, as applicable, in addition to the information required by Section 106.1.12.1:

1. The number, size, shape and location of all open parking spaces, open loading berths, and approaches to all parking and loading facilities.
2. Other information necessary to determine compliance with Title 11 DCMR, Zoning Regulations.

**106.1.12 Official Building Plat.** The applicant shall provide, in duplicate, either an official building plat issued by the D.C. Office of the Surveyor, or a building plat prepared by a private Land Surveyor licensed to practice in the District of Columbia, with applications for permit involving any of the following:

1. Erection of a new building or structure.
2. Addition to an existing building.
3. Permanent construction higher than 4 feet (1.22m) above grade, outside the footprint of existing buildings.
4. Construction or alteration of projections into public space.
5. Erection of retaining walls higher than 36 inches (914 mm).
6. Establishment of a new parking lot, regardless of the amount of work involved.

**106.1.12.1 Plat Information.** The applicant shall show upon the building plat, completely dimensioned and drawn in ink to the same scale as the plat, the outline of all buildings, additions, or other structures existing and to be constructed. The accuracy of the representation of the location of the structures on the plat shall be self-certified by the owner or authorized agent for the owner of the lot of record or parcel of land, who shall sign a certificate in a form prescribed by the code official, printed on the building plat.

**106.1.13 Location of Water and Sewer Mains.** When relevant to the scope of work, the permit applicant shall secure from the Water and Sewer Authority the location and other necessary details regarding water and sewer mains to serve the premises to be permitted and shall submit this information with the permit application to the code official.

**106.2 Site Plan.** The applicant shall provide a site plan, whenever the application for permit involves any of the following:

1. Erection of a new building or structure.
2. Addition to an existing building.
3. Permanent construction outside the footprint of existing buildings.

4. Construction or alteration of projections into public space.
5. Erection of retaining walls higher than 36 inches (914 mm) above grade.
6. Excavation or grading work disturbing earth in an area in excess of the limits set forth in Section 525 of DCMR 21, Water and Sanitation, for minor projects.
7. Demolition or razing of existing structures or buildings.
8. Installation or replacement of underground utility service connections.
9. Installation or replacement of site drainage systems.

The code official shall be authorized to establish media requirements for submittal of site plans and maximum overall size of plans acceptable for review. These limits shall also apply to Zoning compliance review plans submitted pursuant to Section 106.1.11.

**106.2.1 Site Plan Information.** The applicant shall show upon the site plan, completely dimensioned and drawn to a scale indicated numerically and graphically, the site, its orientation to North, and location of all existing and new construction on the site, distances from property lines, established street grades, proposed finished grades, proposed soil erosion control measures, location of utility service lines and connections thereto, with dimensions and all appurtenant features of such connections, as applicable. For raze or demolition, the site plan shall identify the structures or portions thereof to be demolished and the location and size of all existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site.

**106.3 Action on Application.** The code official shall examine or cause to be examined the construction documents accompanying building permit applications, pursuant to Section 105.3.1.

**106.3.1 Special Inspections.** Where special inspections are required by Section 1704 of the building code, the owner shall name the individual or firms who are to perform such special inspections. The stages of construction at which special inspections are to occur shall be established by the applicant and approved by the code official. Special inspections shall be made in accordance with Section 1704 of the building code.

**106.3.2 Building Permit Requirement.** The special inspection requirement of Section 106.3.1 shall be determined prior to the issuance of the building permit and shall be a requisite for the permit issuance as described in Section 1704.1.1.

**106.3.3 Fees and Costs.** All fees and costs related to the performance of special professional services shall be borne by the owner.

**106.3.4 Design Professional in Responsible Charge.** All design for new construction work, alteration, repair, expansion, addition or modification work involving the practice



of professional architecture or engineering, as defined by the D.C. Architects Registration Act or the D.C. Professional Engineers Registration Act, shall be prepared by registered architects or professional engineers licensed to practice in the District of Columbia. All plans, computations, and specifications required for a building permit application for such work shall be prepared by or under the direct supervision of a registered architect or professional engineer and bear the architect's or engineer's signature and seal in accordance with the laws of the District of Columbia. Plans for non-structural alterations and repairs of a building, including the layout of interior spaces, which do not adversely affect any structural member or any part of the structure having a required fire resistance rating, or the public safety, health or welfare, and which do not involve the practice of engineering as defined by the D.C. Professional Engineers Registration Act, shall be deemed to comply with this section when such plans are prepared, signed and sealed by an interior designer licensed and registered in the District of Columbia in accordance with the D.C. Interior Designer Licensure Act of 1986.

**106.3.4.1 Exemptions.** The professional services of a licensed registered architect, professional engineer or an interior designer are not required for the following:

1. Work done under any of the exemptions from chapter provided for in the laws of the District of Columbia governing the professional registration of architects, engineers and interior designers.
2. Nonstructural alteration of any building of Use Group R-3 or of any building under the jurisdiction of the residential code.
3. Preparation of drawings or details for cabinetry, architectural millwork, furniture, or similar interior furnishings, for any work to provide for their installation or for any work exempt from building permit by Section 105.2.

**106.3.4.2 Substitute Design Professional.** If the circumstances require, the owner shall designate a substitute registered design professional in responsible charge who shall perform the duties required of the original registered design professional in responsible charge.

**106.4 Amended Construction Documents.** All work shall conform to the approved application and plans for which the permit has been issued and any approved amendments to them. Any changes made during construction which deviate substantively from with the approved plans shall be resubmitted for approval, in accordance with Section 105.3.3.

**106.5 Department Records.** The code official shall keep official records of applications received, permits and certificates issued, fees collected, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued. Such records, including one set of approved construction documents, shall be retained in the official records so long as the building or structure to which they relate remains in existence, unless otherwise provided for by statute, rule or regulation.

**106.6 Form of Covenants and Agreements.** All covenants and agreements required by the Construction Codes or drafted in connection therewith shall require approval as to form and legal sufficiency by the Corporation Counsel.

**106.6.1 Vault Agreement.** Before issuance of a permit for the use or construction of a vault in public space, the owner of the abutting private property shall execute an agreement, in the form prescribed by the District, acknowledging for the owner, owner's heirs and assigns, (1) that no right, title, or interest of the public is thereby acquired, waived, or abridged; (2) that the Mayor may inspect such vault during regular business hours; (3) that the Mayor may introduce or authorize the introduction into or through such vault, with right of entry for inspection, maintenance, and repair of any water pipe, gas pipe, sewer, conduit, other pipe, or other public utility underground construction, which the Mayor deems necessary in the public interest to place in or by the District, at the expense of such owner, to conform with any change made in the street, roadway, or sidewalk width or grade; and (4) that rental for such vault will be paid to the District as required by the D.C. Public Space Rental Act (D.C. Code, Title 7, Chapter 9). A copy of such agreement shall be recorded in the Office of the Recorder of Deeds by and at the expense of such owner.

**106.6.2 Covenants for Openings on Property Lines.** A covenant running with the land shall be required where openings in exterior walls closer than 5 feet (1524 mm) from interior lot lines are allowed pursuant to Sections 704.8.4 through 704.8.4.3, to ensure that compliance with the minimum requirements of those sections will be maintained for as long as the building shall exist, and to ensure that responsibility for the maintenance of those conditions will be conveyed to any future owner of the building. Two copies of such covenant, approved and accepted by the Corporation Counsel as to legal form and sufficiency, shall be recorded with the Recorder of Deeds of the District of Columbia by and at the expense of the owner, and shall be made an official part of the land records of that property before issuance of the final Certificate of Occupancy for the building.

**106.6.3 Covenants for Projections.** The owner shall, by covenant running with the land for such period as the projection shall exist, agree to such limitations and conditions as shall be imposed by the code official, which shall include but not be limited to agreement to save harmless the District of Columbia, its officers and agents, from liability by virtue of the grant of authority to construct said projection, and agreement to landscape or otherwise treat, to the satisfaction of the code official, and thereafter to maintain the area upon which the covenantor has forborne to build. Such covenant, to which the District of Columbia shall be made covenantee, shall be satisfactory to the Corporation Counsel, as to legal form and sufficiency and shall be filed with the Recorder of Deeds, by and at the expense of such owner, before a permit for said projection is issued.

**106.6.4 Covenants for Projection Modification for Foregone Construction.** The owner who applies for a projection modification pursuant to Section 3202.4 shall, by covenant running with the land for such period as the projection shall exist, agree to such limitations and conditions as shall be imposed by the code official, which shall include

but not be limited to agreement to save harmless the District of Columbia, its officers and agents, from liability by virtue of the grant of authority to construct said projection, and agreement to landscape or otherwise treat, to the satisfaction of the code official, and thereafter to maintain the area upon which the covenantor has forborne to build. Such covenant to which the District of Columbia shall be made covenantee, shall be satisfactory to the Corporation Counsel, as to legal form and sufficiency and shall be filed with the Recorder of Deeds by and at the expense of the owner, and shall be made an official part of the land records of that property, before a permit for said projection is issued.

**106.6.5 Covenants for Alternative Compliance Plan.** A covenant shall be required, before an Alternative Fire Protection Compliance Plan submitted under Section 604.2.1.2 of the Existing Buildings Code can be approved. Such covenant to which the District of Columbia shall be made covenantee, shall be satisfactory to the Corporation Counsel, as to legal form and sufficiency and shall be filed with the Recorder of Deeds by and at the expense of the owner, and shall be made an official part of the land records of that property before issuance of the final Certificate of Occupancy for the building.

## **SECTION 107 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND USES**

**107.1 General.** The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary structures and temporary uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but such temporary construction shall not be permitted to remain in place for more than one year. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

**107.2 Conformance.** Temporary structures shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

**107.3 Temporary Power.** The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply and use power in part of an electric installation before such installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the electrical code.

**107.4 Termination of Approval.** The code official is hereby authorized to terminate such special approval and to order the demolition of any such construction at his discretion, or as directed by a decision of the Board of Appeals and Review.

## **SECTION 108 FEES**

**108.1 Payment of Fees.** A permit to begin work for new construction, alteration, removal, demolition, or other building operation shall not be issued until all fees have been paid to the

Department or other authorized agency, nor shall an amendment to a permit requiring an additional fee be approved until the additional fee shall have been paid.

**108.1.2 Accounting.** The code official shall keep an accurate account of all fees collected, and such collected fees shall be deposited with the D.C. Treasurer, or otherwise deposited of as required by law.

**108.2 Schedule of Permit Fees.** The building permit fees for plans examination, permit processing and inspections, shall be as prescribed in Section 108.2.1 and the code official is authorized to establish by approved rules a schedule of unit rates for buildings and structures and for the installation of their appurtenant systems, fixtures, appliances and equipment.

**108.2.1 Fee Schedule.** A fee for each plan examination, permit and inspections shall be paid in accordance with the applicable fee schedule published in the D.C. Register, as amended from time to time.

**108.2.1.1 Application Filing Deposit for New Construction and Alterations.** All applications filed for new construction or alterations must be accompanied by a portion of the permit fee in the amount of one dollar (\$1.00) for each one thousand dollars (\$1,000) or fraction thereof, of the estimated cost of construction; provided that the required deposit shall not exceed two thousand dollars (\$2,000).

**108.3 Building Permit Valuations.** The code official is authorized to require that permit applicants for alteration and repair work produce documental proof of the cost of construction declared in the application, before issuance of the building permit. Such proof can be made in any of the following forms:

1. A fully executed construction contract.
2. A formal contractor's estimate.
3. A construction estimate, for other than structures under the jurisdiction of the residential code or for use groups other than R-3, when a contract evidencing a deferred method of determining construction cost is submitted to the code official. Issuance of the certificate of occupancy will be contingent on adjustment of the building permit fee resulting from the difference between the estimated construction cost and the actual construction cost. The actual cost shall be substantiated by submission of a certificate of payment or its equivalent.
4. A construction estimate for repairs and alterations in Use Group R-3 and structures under the jurisdiction of the residential code.

**108.4 Work Commencing Before Permit Issuance.** Any person who commences any work on a building, structure, gas, electrical, mechanical or plumbing system before obtaining the

necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established in the official fee schedule that shall be in addition to the required permit fees and any fines that may have been levied.

**108.5 Related Fees.** The payment of the building permit fee, as prescribed in Section 108.2, shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law, such as fees for water taps or sewer connections; fees for the temporary use of public space; fees for supplemental installation permits; fees for special inspections; fees for special permits issued in connection with or concurrently with a building permit, such as sign, projection, awning, demolition, razing, excavation permits; fees for plan revisions and amendment of permits; fees for certificates of use and occupancy; or fees for any other privileges, services or requirements, allowed or prescribed by the Construction Codes or other regulations, both within and without the jurisdiction of the Department.

**108.6 Refunds.** In the case of a revocation of a permit or of abandonment or discontinuance of a building project, upon written request made by the permit holder before the permit expires, the portion of the work actually completed shall be computed and any excess fee for the incomplete work shall be returned to the permit holder as soon as practicable after written request is made. All plan examination and permit processing fees, all fees for inspections actually performed, and all penalties that have been imposed on the permit holder under the requirements of this code shall first be withheld.

## **SECTION 109 INSPECTIONS**

**109.1 General.** Inspections shall be performed:

1. Upon referral of a notice of violation received from inspection agencies other than the Department;
2. Upon receipt of a complaint by a District resident, Councilmember, District government employee, or other government agency;
3. Upon change of use or occupancy;
4. On new construction, additions, alterations, and repairs.

**109.1.1 Field Enforcement.** The purpose of inspections shall be to ensure that all work is performed in strict accordance with permit conditions, approved plans and the Construction Codes.

**109.2 Preliminary Inspection.** Before issuing a permit, the code official shall, if deemed necessary, examine or cause to be examined all buildings, structures and sites for which an application has been filed for a permit to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, demolish, raze, excavate or change the use thereof. Exploratory excavation required by the code official shall not require such inspection.

**109.3 Required Inspections.** After issuing a building permit, the code official shall conduct such inspections, from time to time during and upon completion of the work, for which a permit has been issued. A record of all such examinations and inspections and of all noted violations of this code shall be maintained by the code official. Inspections to be done pursuant to Section 109 include, but are not limited to, the types indicated in Sections 109.3.1 through 109.3.8.7.

**109.3.1 Footing and Foundation Inspection.** Inspections performed after excavations have been made and before pilings are driven or footings are poured, for inspection of soil and foundation conditions.

**109.3.1.1 Footing Trenches.** Inspection of the bottom of footing trenches, after all reinforcement steel is set and before any concrete is placed.

**109.3.2 Concrete slab or under-floor inspection.** Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete is ready-mixed in accordance with ASTM C94, the concrete need not be on the job.

**109.3.3 Lowest floor elevation.** The elevation certification required in Section 1612.5 of the *Building Code* shall be submitted to the code official.

**109.3.4 Frame Inspection.** Inspection of structural framing and fastenings, performed before concealing materials, for inspection of anchorage to foundations, bracing, firestopping and/or termite protection.

**109.3.5 Lath or Gypsum Board Inspection.** Lath and gypsum board inspections shall be made after lathing and gypsum board, interior and exterior, is in place, but before any plastering is applied or before gypsum board joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

**109.3.6 Fire-resistant Penetrations.** Protection of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall not be concealed from view until inspected and approved.

**109.3.7 Energy Efficiency Inspections.** Inspection of required insulating materials, performed before covering them with any other materials. Inspections shall be made to determine compliance with Chapter 13 and shall include, but not be limited to, inspections for: envelope insulation  $R$  and  $U$  value, fenestration  $U$  value, duct system  $R$  value, and HVAC and water heating equipment efficiency.

**109.3.8 Other Inspections.** In addition to the inspections specified above, the building official is authorized to make or to require the owner of a building or structure to have an independent inspection agency perform other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code and other laws that are enforced by the department.

**109.3.8.1 Electrical, Mechanical, Masonry, and Plumbing Work.** Inspection of all electrical, mechanical, masonry and plumbing work to be concealed, performed before installation of any concealing materials, for inspection of method of installation, clearances and protection around critical areas. The electrical items to inspect shall include as many features as are installed at “close-in” including but not limited to the following:

1. Emergency lighting wiring, junction boxes and fixture mounting boxes.
2. Emergency power circuits.
3. Exit lights wiring and mounting bases.
4. Location of exit lights and emergency lighting.

**109.3.8.2 Reinforced Concrete.** Inspection of reinforced concrete beams, columns or slabs, performed after all reinforcing is set and before any concrete is placed, for inspection of forms and adequacy of steel reinforcement.

**109.3.8.3 Fire Suppression Systems.** Inspection of fixed portions of fire suppression systems, whether to be concealed or not, performed before installation of any concealing materials, for inspection of method of installation, clearances, supports and protection around critical areas. The items to inspect shall include as many features as are installed at “close-in” including but not limited to the following:

1. Automatic sprinkler system supply piping and valves.
2. Standpipes and floor control assemblies.
3. Underground fire service main and appurtenances.

**109.3.8.4 Fire Alarm Systems.** Inspection of fixed portions of fire protection systems, whether to be concealed or not, performed before installation of any concealing materials, for inspection of method of installation, clearances, supports and protection around critical areas. The items to inspect shall include as many features as are installed at “close-in” including but not limited to the following:

1. Fire alarm system wiring.
2. Location of fire alarm system devices mounting backboxes/bases.
3. Sprinkler system valve and water flow supervisory devices.
4. Standpipe valves and floor control assemblies supervisory devices.

5. Location of fire alarm system control and annunciation panels.
6. Location of central control room.

**109.3.8.5 Location of Walls.** Inspection performed before walls reach the height of one foot, to verify agreement with survey data. A certificate from the Office of the Surveyor, showing location of the walls with reference to lot and building lines shall be submitted to the code official before erection of such wall is authorized to proceed.

**109.3.8.6 Piling Foundations.** The code official is authorized to require the owner to have the installation of piling foundations supervised by a professional engineer or by such professional service as approved by the code official, at the owner's expense.

**109.3.8.7 Before Backfilling.** Inspection performed before backfilling, for inspection of footings, sheeting and shoring, waterproofing, and location of walls and columns with respect to footings.

**109.3.9 Special Inspections.** Special inspections shall be made in accordance with Section 1704 of the Building Code.

**109.3.9.1 Authority to Require Special Inspections.** The code official is authorized to require the owner to employ special inspectors, foremen, or superintendents having adequate qualifications for inspection or supervision of the types of construction indicated in Sections 109.3.9.1.1 through 109.3.9.1.8.

**109.3.9.1.1 Reinforced Concrete.** Inspection and tests for reinforced concrete when the working stresses are based on a stipulated strength of the concrete.

**109.3.9.1.2 Reinforced Masonry.** Reinforced masonry construction.

**109.3.9.1.3 Reinforced Gypsum.** Reinforced cast-in-place gypsum construction.

**109.3.9.1.4 Welding.** Structural welding.

**109.3.9.1.5 Precast Concrete.** Fabrication and installation of precast concrete panels and structural elements and their connections.

**109.3.9.1.6 Structural Steel.** Structural steel construction.

**109.3.9.1.7 Engineered Fill.** Method of fill, fill materials and compaction tests.



**109.3.9.1.8 Other Construction.** Other construction or work requiring special knowledge and experience, involving unusual hazards, or requiring constant inspection.

**109.3.9.2 Building Permit Requirement.** This special inspection requirement shall be determined prior to the issuance of the building permit and shall be a requisite for the permit issuance as described in Section 1704.

**109.3.9.3 Fees and Costs.** All fees and costs related to the performance of special professional services shall be borne by the owner.

**109.3.10 Final Inspection.** Upon completion of the building or structure and site work, and before the certificate of use and occupancy required in Section 110 is issued, a final inspection shall be made. All violations or infractions of the approved plans and permit shall be noted and the holder of the permit shall be notified of the discrepancies.

**109.3.10.1 Final Acceptance Inspection of Fire Protection Systems.**

Acceptance inspections of new or altered fire protection systems shall be performed as soon as those systems are completed and capable of providing meaningful test results. Final acceptance inspections of such systems shall be limited to the following items:

1. Location of sprinklers.
2. Continuity of sprinkler system piping.
3. Fire pump operation and supervision.
4. Fire alarm device operation.
5. Fire alarm annunciation.
6. Activation and operation of smoke management systems.
7. Operation of exit signs and emergency lighting with normal and emergency power.
8. Operation of emergency generator and transfer switch.
9. Location of manual fire extinguishing equipment.
10. Commercial kitchen automatic suppression systems.
11. Elevator recall and operation in fireman's service, phase 1 and 2.

**109.4 Third-party Inspection Agencies.** The code official shall accept reports of approved third-party inspection agencies or approved third-party inspectors on all field inspection disciplines under the Construction Codes, provided such agencies or inspectors satisfy the qualifications and reliability requirements, set forth in this subsection, as well as Sections 1703.1.1 through 1703.1.3 of the Building Code. If an inspection report is filed by a third-party inspection agency, it shall be signed by the agency professional in charge of the project. The code official shall approve the work inspected by the approved third-party inspection agency or approved third-party inspector, based on the inspection reports, provided that the code official is satisfied that the reports substantiate compliance with the requirements of the Construction Codes.

**109.4.1 Minimum Training and Experience Requirements for Third-Party Inspectors.**

Third-party inspectors shall meet the minimum training and experience requirements set forth herein.

**109.4.1.1. Construction Inspector.** A construction inspector shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the D.C. Building Code and other pertinent sections of the Construction Codes, and shall further possess an acceptable combination of education and experience, or NCPCCI certification, as set forth in more detail in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.1.2 Mechanical Inspector.** A mechanical inspector shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes pertinent to mechanical systems, and shall further possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as set forth in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.1.3 Electrical Inspector.** An electrical inspector shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the D.C. Building Code and other sections of the D.C. Construction Codes and NFPA standards pertinent to electrical inspections and shall further possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as set forth in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.1.4 Plumbing Inspector.** A plumbing inspector shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the D.C. Plumbing Code and other sections of the Construction Codes pertinent to plumbing systems and fixtures under inspection and shall possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as described in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.1.5 Elevator Inspector.** An elevator inspector shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Elevator Code and other sections of the D.C. Construction Codes pertinent to elevator systems and equipment under inspection and shall possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as described in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.1.6 Fire Inspector.** A fire protection inspector shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the D.C. Building Code and other sections of the D.C. Construction Codes and NFPA Standards pertinent to the systems and devices under inspection and shall possess a current license as a professional engineer or registered architect and shall possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as described in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.2 Minimum Qualifications and Reliability Requirements for Approved Third-Party Inspection Agencies.** In order to become approved as a third-party inspection agency, the agency shall meet the requirements of this section, as well as any additional requirements set forth in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to the date of application).

1. **Submission of Information.** An approved third-party inspection agency shall provide all information necessary for the code official to determine that the agency meets applicable requirements, as set forth more fully in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to the date of application).
2. **Independence.** An approved agency shall be objective and competent. The agency shall also disclose possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed.
3. **Equipment.** An approved agency shall have adequate equipment to perform required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and best practices.
4. **Personnel.** An approved agency shall have a Professional-in-Charge, who is qualified in each discipline in which the agency proposes to perform inspections, and shall employ a sufficient number of qualified inspectors experienced in the inspection discipline in which he or she is conducting inspections.

5. Insurance Coverage. An approved agency shall possess a minimum of \$1,000,000 per occurrence “errors and omissions” insurance coverage in accordance with the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.2.6 Construction Professional in Charge.** A construction professional in charge shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes related to building structures and other construction features, and shall further possess an acceptable combination of education and experience, or NCPCCI certification and experience as set forth in more detail in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.2.7 Mechanical Professional-in-Charge.** A mechanical Professional in Charge shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes pertinent to mechanical systems, and shall further possess a current license as a professional engineer or registered architect and a minimum of three years experience in mechanical engineering or mechanical systems design and layout, and shall meet any other requirements set forth in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.2.8 Electrical Professional in Charge.** An electrical Professional-in-Charge shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes pertinent to electrical systems, a current license as a registered architect, and a minimum of three years experience in electrical design or construction in a position of responsible charge and shall meet any other requirements set forth in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application.)

**109.4.2.9 Plumbing Professional in Charge.** A plumbing Professional-in-Charge shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes pertinent to plumbing systems and shall possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as described in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.2.10 Elevator Professional in Charge.** An elevator Professional-in-Charge shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes pertinent to elevator systems and shall possess an acceptable combination of education and experience as described in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.2.10 Fire Protection Professional in Charge.** A fire protection Professional-in-Charge shall possess demonstrated knowledge of the Construction Codes pertinent to fire protection systems and shall possess a current license as a professional engineer or registered architect and a minimum of three years experience in fire protection engineering in a position of responsible charge, and shall meet any other requirements set forth in the “Third-Party Inspection Procedures” published by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (October 2002 edition or more current edition published prior to date of application).

**109.4.3. Plant Inspection.** When required by the provisions of this code or by the approved rules, materials or assemblies shall be inspected at the point of manufacture or fabrication in accordance with Section 1703.7 of the Building Code.

**109.5 Inspection Requests.** It is the responsibility of the permit holder or his agent to notify the code official when the stages of construction are reached that require any inspection under Sections 109.3 through 109.3.9.1.8 and 109.3.10 through 109.3.10.1, and for other critical items as directed by the code official.

**109.6 Approval Required.** Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the building official. The code official shall respond to inspection requests without unreasonable delay. The code official shall approve the work or shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed, or shall notify the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder wherein the same fails to comply with this code. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portions shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the building official.

**109.7 Right of Entry.** The code official, in the performance of his or her duties, shall have the right to enter any unoccupied building; any building under construction, alteration, or repair; any building being razed or moved; any building or premises which he or she has reason to believe to be unsafe or a menace to life or limb; or any building, the use of which may require the issuance of a license or a certificate of occupancy. With respect to the inspection of any occupied habitable portion of any building, the consent to such inspection shall first be obtained from any person of suitable age and discretion therein, except that if an acute emergency occurs and immediate steps must be taken to protect the public, such consent need not be obtained. When attempting to gain entrance for inspection, the code official shall show an official identification issued by the Department.

**109.7.1 Refusal of entry.** Any person who prevents or refuses to allow an inspector to enter a building for inspection in the performance of his duties, is in violation of these regulations and the code official shall have the authority to issue a notice of violation, order or notice of infractions pursuant to Sec. 113.

**109.7.2 Administrative Search Warrant and Injunctive Relief.** If the code official or his designee is denied entry for an inspection in the performance of this duties, the code

official is authorized to apply to the D.C. Superior Court for an administrative search warrant and/or injunctive relief.

**109.8 Coordination of Inspections.** Whenever in the enforcement of this code or another code or ordinance, the responsibility of more than one official of the jurisdiction is involved, it shall be the duty of the code officials involved to coordinate their inspections and administrative orders as fully as practicable so that the owners and occupants of the structure shall not be subjected to visits by numerous inspectors nor multiple or conflicting orders. Whenever an inspector from any agency or department observes an apparent or actual violation of some provision of some law, ordinance or code not within the inspector's authority to enforce, the inspector shall report the findings to the code official having jurisdiction.

**109.9 Inspection of Existing Buildings.** Where existing buildings are allegedly occupied without the proper occupancy permit or contain an occupancy alleged to be illegal or unsafe, the code official is authorized to make inspections of the existing buildings before the issuance of occupancy permits.

**109.10 Referral From Other Agencies.** Upon receipt of notices of violation from other inspection agencies, the code official shall investigate or inspect the alleged violations and obtain such compliance as may be required.

**109.11 Plant Inspection.** When required by the provisions of this code, materials or assemblies shall be inspected at the point of manufacture or fabrication in accordance with Section 1703.7 of the Building Code.

## **SECTION 110A CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY**

**110.1 General Requirement for Certificate of Occupancy.** Except as provided in the District of Columbia Zoning Regulations, 11 DCMR Subsection 3202, no person shall use any structure, land, or part thereof for any purpose other than a one-family dwelling until a Certificate of Occupancy has been issued to that person stating that the use complies with the Zoning Regulations and related building, electrical, plumbing, mechanical and fire prevention requirements.

**110.1.1 New Buildings.** A building or structure hereafter erected shall not be used or occupied in whole or in part until the certificate of occupancy has been issued by the code official, in accordance with this Section and Title 11 DCMR, the District of Columbia Zoning Regulations.

**Exception:** Existing one-family dwellings. For the purpose of this exception, a dwelling shall be deemed existing if it was built, under construction or a permit for its erection had been issued, on or before November 19, 1999, the date of adoption of the 1996 BOCA Codes.

**110.1.2 Change in Ownership.** For changes in ownership of structures, land, or parts with an existing valid Certificate of Occupancy, a new Certificate of Occupancy shall be

issued in the name of the new owner, (without reinspection), provided there is no proposed change in use or increase in occupancy load.

**110.1.3 Exemption from Certificate.** A Certificate of Occupancy shall not be required for each separate apartment or bachelor apartment in an apartment building, or in tenements or apartments in a tenement house, if a certificate of occupancy is issued for the entire structure. For the purpose of this section, the term apartment, bachelor apartment, apartment house, tenement and tenement house shall have the meanings ascribed to them in 11 DCMR §199.1.

**110.1.4 Posting of Certificate.** All Certificates of Occupancy shall be conspicuously posted in or upon the premises to which they apply so that they are readily visible to anyone entering the premises.

**Exceptions:**

1. Sanctuary and nave areas of places of worship in Use Group A-4.
2. One-family dwellings.
3. Community Based Residential Facility with six (6) or fewer beds.

**110.2 Application for Certificate.** Application for a Certificate of Occupancy shall be made in accordance with Sections 110.2 through 110.2.3.4.

**110.2.1 Application Procedure.** All applications for Certificate of Occupancy shall be filed with the Director or his or her designee on the prescribed forms provided by the code official. The applicant shall pay the prescribed filing fee at the time of the application. The code official shall collect the prescribed filing fee and refer the application to appropriate inspectors within five (5) working days from the date of filing. Where field inspections are deemed necessary, the inspection process shall be in accordance with Sections 110.2.2 through 110.2.3.4.

**110.2.2 Inspections.** Following the filing of an application, inspections shall be made within fifteen (15) working days from the date of referral and the applicant shall be provided with a written composite notice of all existing violations of the applicable Codes and Regulations within ten (10) working days thereafter. If any required inspection has not been performed within fifteen (15) working days, the respective inspection branch shall report all relevant facts to the official issuing the Certificate of Occupancy and the inspecting unit shall contact the applicant and reschedule the inspection within ten (10) working days.

**110.2.2.1 Service of Notice.** The notice of violations shall be hand delivered to the applicant or sent by certified mail, return receipt requested. The code official shall maintain records of all inspection reports and the returned receipt, until the Certificate of Occupancy is issued or canceled.

**110.2.2.2 Reinspection.** If a second visit is required to complete the initial inspection, the reinspection shall be made within ten (10) working days from the date of notification by the applicant that all required corrections have been made.

**110.2.2.3 Expiration of Application.** Except as provided in Sections 110.2.3 through 110.2.3.4, the failure to comply with all applicable District of Columbia laws and regulations pertaining to the issuance of a Certificate of Occupancy, within the prescribed time-frame in a deficiency notice, or within ninety (90) calendar days whichever occurs last, shall cause the application to be canceled without further notice to the applicant, and the applicant shall be required to file a new Certificate of Occupancy application and pay the required fees.

**110.2.2.4 Access to the Premises.** Refusal to permit entry for inspection of the premises shall result in the cancellation of the Certificate of Occupancy application without further notice to the applicant.

**110.2.3 Extensions.** The code official is authorized to grant an extension to comply with the deficiency notice for any of the following reasons:

1. The District Government has performed all the required services but due to extenuating circumstances the applicant is unable, through no fault of his or her own, to bring the property into compliance; or
2. Other special or unusual circumstances as determined by the Director.

**110.2.3.1 Filing for Extension.** All requests for extensions shall be made in writing and addressed to the Director, Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs. All requests for extensions shall be filed at least fifteen (15) working days prior to the expiration of the prescribed time period. The request shall specify the following:

1. The basis for the request including the details of all efforts on the part of the applicant to bring the property for which an extension is requested into compliance;
2. The facts which support the request in sufficient detail to enable the Director to make an informed judgment; and
3. Any other information as the Director may deem necessary.

**110.2.3.2 Disposition of Request for Extension.** The extension requested shall be either granted or denied by the Director as soon as practicable after receipt of all required information. The decision to grant or deny the extension shall be delivered to the applicant in writing by certified mail or personal service, and the



provisions of Section 110.2.2.1 shall apply to the pertinent extension request records.

**110.2.3.3 Period of Extension.** A decision to grant an extension shall set forth the extended period of time by which compliance shall be achieved.

**110.2.3.4 Extensions for Reinspection.** If a reinspection is required, the applicant shall receive an extension of time equal to the additional time required for the reinspection.

**110.3 Occupancy Dependent on Construction.** Subsections 110.3.1 through 110.3.5 regulate the issuance of a certificate of occupancy for the use of a structure, or part thereof, if the establishment of the use is dependent upon the erection, construction, conversion, or alteration of the structure, or part thereof.

**110.3.1 Proposed use.** The intended use shall be designated as a proposed use at the time of application for the building permit on which the use depends.

**110.3.2 Provisional Occupancy.** At the time of approval of the building permit application by the Zoning Division of the Department, the proposed use shall become the provisional occupancy approved by the code official.

**110.3.3 Expiration of Provisional Approval.** A building permit shall be obtained within six (6) months of approval of the provisional occupancy, otherwise the zoning approval granted pursuant to Section 110.3.2 shall expire.

**110.3.4 Final Occupancy Approval.** The use designated as the approved provisional occupancy shall become final upon issuance of a Certificate of Occupancy pursuant to the provisions of Section 110.

**110.3.5 Construction Completion Required.** If the erection or alteration of a structure, or part thereof, is contemplated, a certificate of occupancy for that structure, or part thereof, shall not be issued until the erection or alteration is completed to the point that the structure, or part thereof, is deemed by the code official to be available for occupancy and in compliance with the requirements of the applicable laws and regulations.

**110.4 Temporary Occupancy.** The building official is authorized to issue a conditional certificate of occupancy before the completion of the entire work covered by the permit, provided that such portion or portions shall be occupied safely. The building official is authorized to set a time period during which the conditional certificate of occupancy is valid, and to impose conditions on any certificate of occupancy issued pursuant to this section, as deemed necessary for safety reasons.

**110.5 Revocation of a Certificate of Occupancy.** The Director is authorized to revoke a certificate of occupancy pursuant to any of the Sections 110.5.1 through 110.5.5.

**110.5.1 Different Occupancy.** Any certificate of occupancy previously issued or issued pursuant to Section 110 shall be revoked by the Director, after notice, if the actual occupancy does not conform with that permitted.

**110.5.2 Misleading Declaration by Applicant.** Any certificate of occupancy previously issued or issued pursuant to Section 110 shall be revoked by the Director, after notice, if the Director determines that it was obtained based on an application that contained any misrepresentation having a substantial bearing on the safety of the occupancy.

**110.5.3 Certificate Issued in Error.** Any certificate of occupancy previously issued or issued pursuant to Section 110 shall be revoked by the Director, after notice, if it is found to have been issued in error.

**110.5.4 Incomplete Alteration, Repair or Addition.** Any certificate of occupancy previously issued or issued pursuant to Section 110 shall be revoked by the Director, after notice, if all of the following conditions are verified:

1. The building or space under such certificate of occupancy is undergoing alteration or repair, or an addition thereto is being constructed, under a duly issued building permit, and the original use is being continued during the construction period.
2. The code official deems that construction is not progressing at a reasonable pace and the unfinished portion of the project, as shown on the approved permit drawings, or the missing systems or portions thereof, are such that the code official deems that the safety, health or welfare of the public or of the occupants is seriously threatened thereby.

**110.5.5 Completion of Construction Work.** Any certificate of occupancy previously issued or issued pursuant to Section 110 shall be revoked by the Director, after notice, if upon completion of work done under a duly issued building permit the applicant does not apply for a new certificate of occupancy within thirty (30) days. Application for a new certificate of occupancy is required upon completion of construction, even if there has not been a change in the use or occupancy.

**110.5.6 Notice of Revocation.** Notice of the proposed revocation of the Certificate of Occupancy shall be given in writing, setting forth specifically the grounds for the action. The notice shall be sent by certified mail, at least ten (10) days prior to the date of the proposed action.

**110.6 Appeal from Action.** Any person aggrieved by the action of the Director granting, withholding, or revoking a Certificate of Occupancy may appeal the action to the Board of Zoning Adjustment, pursuant to D.C. Official Code Sec. 6-641.09 (2001), and the District of Columbia Zoning Regulations.

**110.7 Certificate of Occupancy Fees.** A fee for the processing and issuance of a certificate of occupancy shall be paid to the D.C. Treasurer in accordance with the applicable fee schedule.

**110.7.1 Fee Schedule.** The Director is authorized to establish, from time to time, by approved rules, a schedule of unit rates and other fees for certificates of occupancy, partial certificates of occupancy and other related miscellaneous services.

**110.7.2 Filing Fee.** The fee for filing an application for certificate of occupancy shall be in accordance with the current user fee schedule.

**110.8 Records.** The Director or his or her designee shall be the custodian of Certificate of Occupancy records. The records shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Pending Certificate of Occupancy applications;
2. Extensions granted pursuant to Sections 110.2.3 through 110.2.3.4; and
3. All approved applications for Certificates of Occupancy, issued Certificates of Occupancy and copies of all cancellation notices and related correspondence.

## **SECTION 111A SERVICE UTILITIES**

**111.1 Connection of Service Utilities.** No person shall make connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel or power to any building or system that is regulated by this code for which a permit is required, until the permit is released by the code official.

**111.2 Temporary Connection.** The code official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility source of energy, fuel or power.

**111.3 Authority to Disconnect Service Utilities.** The code official shall have the authority to authorize disconnection of utility service to the building, structure or system regulated by the Construction Codes, in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property. The code official shall notify the serving utility, and where possible the owner and occupant of the building, structure or service system of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner or occupant of the building, structure or service system shall be notified in writing, as soon as practical thereafter.

## **SECTION 112A APPEALS**

**112.1 Appeals within the Department.** The owner of a building or structure or any person suffering a legal wrong, or adversely affected or aggrieved, may initiate an appeal, within the Department from a stop work order, official interpretation, refusal to grant an approval or modification pursuant to §104.10, or from the issuance or denial of a building permit, including such appeals related to the D.C. Fire Prevention Code. Claimants shall appeal using a form provided by the code official, on which they shall state the grounds for the appeal, which shall be based on a claim that the Construction Codes or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted or applied, the provisions of the Construction Codes do not fully apply, or

that an equally good or better form of construction can be used. The appeal shall be filed within 15 days from the date of the wrong, order, interpretation, denial of approval or modification, or permit being appealed.

**112.1.1 Official Notice of Action.** The official inspector, or other person whose action or decision is being appealed shall provide the claimant written notice of the action or decision, which shall state as a minimum the name of the claimant, address of the property in question, nature of violation or non-compliance, section of the construction codes providing the basis for the action or decision taken, and the reviewing official within the Department to whom the appeal should be taken.

**112.1.2 Action on Appeal.** Within three (3) working days of receipt of the appeals form, the reviewing official shall affirm, modify, or reverse the previous action or decision. If the reviewing official affirms or modifies the previous action or decision, the claimant may request a review of the matter by the Director. Further, if the reviewing official does not act upon the appeal within the three working day period, the decision will be deemed affirmed and the claimant may proceed to request review by the Director. The Director will act on the request within an additional three (3) working days. The decision of the Director shall be the final decision of the Department. If the Director does not act within the three working day period, or denies the appeal, the claimant may appeal the matter directly to the Board of Appeals and Review.

**112.2 Appeal to Board of Appeals and Review.** The owner of a building or structure any person suffering a legal wrong or adversely affected or aggrieved by a final decision of the code official, as set forth above in §112.1 may appeal to the D.C. Board of Appeals and Review. The appeal shall specify that the Construction Codes or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted or applied, the provisions of the Construction Codes do not fully apply, or an equally good or better form of construction can be used. The board shall have no authority to waive requirements of the Construction Codes.

**112.3 Hearings.** All hearings before the Board of Appeals and Review shall be held in accordance with the rules of procedure of that Board.

**112.4 Enforcement of decision.** The code official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the Board of Appeals and Review.

## **SECTION 113A VIOLATIONS AND INFRACTIONS**

**113.1 Unlawful Acts.** It shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation to erect, construct, alter, extend, repair, raze, demolish, use, or occupy any building or structure or equipment regulated by the Construction Codes, or cause same to be done, in conflict with or in violation of any of the provisions of the Construction Codes.

**113.2 Notice of Violation, Infraction, or Order.** The code official is authorized to serve a notice of violation, notice of infraction, or order on the person responsible, for the erection, construction, alteration, extension, repair, razing, demolition, use, or occupancy of a building or

structure in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes, or in violation of a plan approved thereunder, or in violation of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of the Construction Codes. A notice of violation or order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and/or the abatement of the violation.

**113.2.1 Service of Notice of Violation, Infraction, or Order.** A notice of violation, notice of infraction or order shall be served on the owner, operator, occupant or other person responsible for the condition or violation either by personal service, mail or by delivering the same to and leaving it with some person of responsibility on the premises. Service of stop work orders may be made as set forth in Section 114.

**113.2.2 Requirement to Abate Illegal Activity or Nuisance.** A notice of violation or order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and/or abatement of the violation.

**113.2.3 Failure to Provide a Notice of Violation.** Issuance of a notice of violation pursuant to this subsection, prior to taking other enforcement action, is at the discretion of the code official. Failure to give a notice of violation shall not be a bar to any criminal prosecution, civil action, or civil infraction proceeding under this code.

**113.2.3 Notice of Infraction.** A notice of infraction shall impose a fine for the alleged violation.

**113.3 Prosecution or Adjudication of Violation.** If a notice of violation is not complied with promptly, the code official may request the Corporation Counsel to institute the appropriate proceeding at law or in equity to prosecute, restrain, correct, or abate such violation or to require the removal or termination of the unlawful use of the building or structure in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes or of the order or direction made under the Construction Codes. In the discretion of the Director, the Director may adjudicate any infraction under the terms of titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42.

**113.4 Violation Fines and Penalties.** Any person who shall violate a provision of the Construction Codes or shall fail to comply with any of the requirements thereof or who shall erect, construct, raze, demolish, alter, or repair a building or structure in violation of an order of the code official issued under the authority of the Construction Codes, or in violation of a permit or certificate including the approved plans, issued under the provisions of the Construction Codes, shall, upon conviction, be guilty of a misdemeanor, punishable by a fine of not more than \$300, or by imprisonment not exceeding 10 days, or both, for each offense. Each day a violation continues shall be deemed a separate offense.

**113.5 Abatement of Violation.** The imposition of penalties prescribed in this section shall not preclude the Corporation Counsel from instituting appropriate action to prevent unlawful construction or to restrain, correct, or abate a violation, or to prevent illegal occupancy of a building, structure, or premises or to stop an illegal act, conduct, business, or use of a building or structure on or about any premises.

**113.6 Civil Infractions.** Civil fines, penalties, and fees may be imposed as alternative sanctions to criminal prosecution or other civil action, for any infraction of the provisions of the Construction Codes, or any orders, rules, or regulations issued under the authority of the Construction Codes pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42. Adjudication of any infraction of the Construction Codes shall be pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42.

**113.7 Illegal construction.** If a building or structure or part thereof is deemed to have been erected, constructed, reconstructed, converted, or altered in violation of the Construction Codes or Zoning Regulations, the code Official is authorized to order the condition corrected within a specified time frame deemed reasonable by the code official. Should the owner fail to correct the condition as ordered and within the time frame established in the order, after being duly served, the code official is authorized to issue civil fines pursuant to Section 113.6 of this code, and each day thereafter the violation goes unabated shall be considered a separate offense. *Notwithstanding* the foregoing, should the code official deem the condition to be a fire safety hazard or otherwise constitute a hazard to the public, the code official is authorized to cause such condition to be corrected, assess the cost of correcting such condition and all expenses incident thereto, including fees or charges authorized or imposed in this code, as a tax against the property on which such condition existed or from which such condition arose, as the case may be; and carry such tax on the regular tax rolls of the District and collect such tax in the same manner as general taxes. Upon adjudication of the civil fines provided for in this Section, the code official is authorized to assess any unpaid fines, as a tax against the property on which the violation occurred and carry such tax on the regular tax rolls of the District and collect such tax in the same manner as general taxes.

## **SECTION 114A STOP WORK ORDER**

**114.1 Notice to Owner or Other Responsible Person.** Upon notice from the code official that work on any building or structure is being performed contrary to the provisions of the Construction Codes or in an unsafe and dangerous manner, the property shall be posted and such work shall be immediately stopped until the situation is corrected. The stop work order shall be in writing, in a form prescribed by the code official, containing a description of the right to appeal the order, and shall be given to the owner of the property involved, or to the owner's agent or to the person doing the work. The stop work order shall state the address of the property and the specific section or sections of the Codes violated. If no responsible person is present to receive the order, the property may be posted, and the stop work order along with an appeals form shall be sent to the owner by first class mail within three (3) working days. No stop work order may be issued nor considered valid unless it contains all the above information, the name and the telephone number of the official empowered to review the order, and the signature of the

issuing official. Unauthorized removal of a posted stop work order is a violation of the Code subject to the penalties provided.

**114.2 Home Improvement Contractor.** Any home improvement contractor who continues to work in or about a structure after having been served with a stop work order is in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes. Failure to comply with a stop work order shall constitute grounds for suspension, restriction or revocation of the contractor's license as a home improvement contractor under District regulations governing home improvement contractors (presently codified at 16 DCMR Chapter 8).

**114.3 Unlawful Continuance.** Any person who shall continue any work in or about the structure after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe conditions, shall be liable to a fine pursuant to Title I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42.

## **SECTION 115A UNSAFE STRUCTURES**

**115.1 Right to Deem Unsafe.** All buildings or structures that are or hereafter shall become unsafe, unsanitary, or deficient in adequate exit facilities, or which constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or which involve illegal or improper use, occupancy or maintenance, shall be taken down and removed or made safe and secure, as the code official may deem necessary and as provided in this section. A vacant building, unguarded or open at door or window, shall be deemed a fire hazard and unsafe within the meaning of the Construction Codes.

**115.1.1 Prohibited Entry.** When a vacant building or structure is deemed to be unsafe, pursuant to Section 115.1, the code official may cause to be posted at each entrance to such building or structure a notice that the structure is unsafe and that its use or occupancy has been prohibited. It shall be unlawful for any person to enter such building or structure except for the purpose of making the required repairs or demolishing it.

**115.2 Examination and Record of Damaged Structure.** The code official shall examine every building or structure reported as dangerous, unsafe structurally, or constituting a fire hazard, and shall cause the report to be filed in a docket of unsafe structures and premises, stating the use of the structure, and the nature and estimated amount of damages, if any, caused by collapse or failure.

**115.3 Notice of Unsafe Structure.** If any unsafe condition is found in a building or structure, the code official shall serve on the owner, agent, or person in control of the building or structure, a written notice identifying the building or structure deemed unsafe and specifying the required repairs or improvements to be made to render the building or structure safe and secure, or requiring the unsafe building or structure or portion thereof to be demolished within a stipulated time. Such notice shall require the person thus notified to immediately declare to the code official acceptance or rejection of the terms of the order.

**115.4 Posting Unsafe Notice.** If the person addressed with an unsafe notice cannot be found within the District of Columbia after diligent search, then such notice shall be sent by registered mail or certified mail to the last known address of such person; and a copy of the unsafe notice shall be posted in a conspicuous place on the premises; and such procedure shall be deemed equivalent of personal notice.

**115.5 Disregard of Unsafe Notice.** Upon refusal or neglect of the person served with an unsafe notice to comply with the requirements of the order to abate the unsafe condition, the Corporation Counsel shall be advised of all the facts and shall institute the appropriate action to compel compliance.

## **SECTION 116A EMERGENCY MEASURES**

**116.1 Vacating Structure.** When, in the opinion of the code official, there is actual and immediate danger of failure or collapse of a building or structure or any part thereof which would endanger life, or when any structure or part of a structure has fallen and life is endangered by the occupation of the building or structure, the code official is authorized and empowered to order and require the occupants to vacate immediately. The code official shall cause to be posted at each entrance to such building or structure a notice reading: "This Structure is Unsafe and its Use or Occupancy has been Prohibited by the Mayor." It shall be unlawful for any person to enter such building or structure except for the purpose of making the required repairs or of demolishing it.

**116.2 Temporary Safeguards.** When, in the opinion of the code official, there is actual and immediate danger of collapse or failure of a building or structure or any part thereof which would endanger life, the code official shall cause the necessary work to be done to render such building or structure or part thereof temporarily safe, whether or not the legal procedure described in this section has been instituted.

**116.3 Closing Streets.** When necessary for the public safety, the code official may temporarily close sidewalks, streets, buildings, structures, and places adjacent to such unsafe structure, and prohibit them from being used.

**116.4 Emergency Repairs.** For the purposes of this section, the code official shall employ the necessary labor and materials to perform the required work as expeditiously as possible.

**116.5 Costs of Emergency Repairs.** Where the code official causes emergency work to be done pursuant to §116.2 or §116.4, the costs incurred in the performance of emergency work shall be paid from appropriations of the District of Columbia on certification of the code official. The Corporation Counsel shall institute appropriate action against the owner of the premises where the unsafe building or structure is or was located for the recovery of such costs. Every charge in connection with emergency work authorized by this section, which the owner shall have been assessed and which remains unpaid, shall constitute a lien against such property.

## **SECTION 117A POSTING STRUCTURES**



**117.1 Posted Occupant Load.** Every room or space constituting a place of assembly or education shall have the approved occupant load of the room or space posted in a conspicuous place, near the main exit from the room or space. The approved occupant load signs shall be installed and maintained in a legible manner by the owner or an authorized agent. The signs shall be durable and shall indicate the number of occupants permitted for each room or space use. Place of assembly rooms or spaces which have multiple use capability shall be posted for the occupant loads of all such uses.

**117.1.1 Occupant Load Calculations.** The occupant load calculations shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1003.2.2 through 1003.2.2.10 of the building code. The Fire Chief of the District of Columbia shall be informed of the approved occupant loads calculated pursuant to Section 117.1.

**117.2 Replacement of Posted Signs.** All posted signs shall be furnished by the owner and shall be of permanent design. They shall not be removed, or defaced and, if lost, removed or defaced, they shall be replaced immediately.

**117.3 Periodic Inspection.** The code official is authorized to periodically inspect all existing buildings and structures for compliance with the law in respect to posting, or the code official may accept the report of such inspection from an approved licensed professional engineer or architect. Such inspection and report shall specify any violation of the requirements of the Construction Codes in respect to the posting of floor load, occupant load, and use group of the building.

**Exception:** Existing buildings and structures of Use Groups R-3, or buildings under the jurisdiction of the residential code, and dwelling units in buildings of Use Group R-2.

## **SECTION 118A STREET NUMBERING AND ADDRESSES OF STRUCTURES, BUILDINGS, AND PREMISES**

**118.1 Scope.** The provisions of Section 118 and the Act of the Board of Aldermen and the Board of Common Council, approved November 29, 1869, listed in Appendix A of this title, shall govern the minimum requirements for providing street numbers on buildings, structures, and premises. Premises shall comply with the applicable provisions of this section.

**118.2 General.** The code official shall designate the street number of all structures and is authorized to order changes in the numbering of any structure previously numbered if it is determined that the street numbers being used may endanger the public health and safety. Structures fronting more than one (1) street or avenue shall be assigned a number based on the location of the face of the structures containing the principal entrance. Street numbers are required on all structures new and existing and shall be approved by the code official.

**118.3 Responsibility.** The owner of the structures shall provide and maintain the number in compliance with these requirements. A person shall not occupy as owner-occupant or lease to

another for occupancy or use any structure or portions thereof or premises which do not comply with the requirements of this section.

**118.4 Street Numbers.** Each structure to which a street number has been assigned shall have the number displayed in conformance with the requirements provided in this section.

**118.4.1 Location.** The number shall be located directly over or near the main entrance in a position easily observed and readable from the opposite side of the street or public right-of-way. Multi-tenant structures (buildings) having separate exterior entrances with separate numbers, shall post the street numbers near each entrance in accordance with this section. The owner of a structure located on a lot where the main entrance does not front the public right-of-way, in addition to posting the street number of the building in a position easily observed and readable from the opposite side of the street or public right-of-way serving that entrance, shall post the number directly above or near the main entrance.

**118.4.2 Rear Entrance.** If the rear entrance of a numbered structure faces a street or public right-of-way accessible to the public, the owner shall also place numbers near the rear entrance in a position easily observed and readable from the street or public right-of-way serving the rear entrance of that structure.

**118.5 Construction Sites.** Street numbers shall be posted at construction sites in a position easily observed and readable from any public right-of-way serving the construction site.

**118.6 Size of Numbers.** The minimum size of a street number shall be 3 inches (76mm) high and ½ inch (13mm) wide and shall be in arabic figures on a contrasting background.

## **SECTION 119A ADMINISTRATIVE PLUMBING PROVISIONS**

**119.1 Licensure and Registration Requirements.** Except as otherwise provided in Sections 119.1.1 through 119.1.2, applications for plumbing permit shall comply with this section. Each application for plumbing permit shall be filed by the plumbing contractor responsible for the work to be done. Each application shall show the name and signature of the master plumber employed to actually supervise the work. Said plumbing contractor and master plumber shall be registered and bonded in accordance with the applicable District of Columbia licensing and bonding regulations.

**119.1.1 Work in Firm's Premises.** A firm or corporation that regularly employs a licensed master plumber shall be authorized to apply to obtain a permit for the performance of plumbing work in existing buildings or premises under its ownership or occupancy. Each application shall show the name and signature of the master plumber employed to actually supervise the work. Said master plumber shall be registered and bonded in accordance with the applicable District of Columbia licensing and bonding regulations.

**119.1.2 Work on D.C. Owned Properties Located Outside of the District of Columbia.** Plumbing contractors licensed by the District of Columbia, or by other Government agencies having jurisdiction over the area adjoining any reservation under the control of the District of Columbia, located outside the District of Columbia, shall be allowed to apply for and obtain plumbing permits for work on or within such reservation.

**119.2 Covenants for Water or Sewer Utility Service.** Before a permit shall be issued to install water or sewer utility services to a lot from an adjacent lot, or to extend such services to a lot or premises from a building, as approved pursuant to Section P-301.3.1 of the Plumbing Code, a covenant shall be approved in accordance with Section 119.2.1.

**119.2.1 Documents Filed in Office of Recorder of Deeds.** Two copies of the instrument shall be filed in the Office of the Recorder of Deeds. One copy, duly noted, shall be filed with the code official. If there are other parties in interest, they shall be made parties to the covenant in a manner satisfactory to the Corporation Counsel.

**119.3 Plumbing Board.** The Director is authorized to appoint a plumbing board composed of two master plumbers and one employee of the District of Columbia having a knowledge of plumbing, gasfitting, and sanitary work. One of the three shall be the chief, or acting chief, plumbing inspector who shall be the ex-officio chairman of the plumbing board. Compensation for these persons shall be determined by the Council of the District of Columbia.

**119.3.1 Duties of the Plumbing Board.** In addition to duties assigned to them by the Director, the plumbing board shall examine all applicants for license as master plumbers or gasfitters and be satisfied that such applicant is a fit person to engage in the business of plumbing or gasfitting, or both, and recommend that a license shall be issued to this person to engage in such business of plumbing or gasfitting, or both, provided he or she shall meet and abide by all other requirements of such license.

**119.3.2 Licensing Regulations.** The administration and enforcement of the licensing function shall be governed by DCMR 17 Chapter 1.

**119.4 Licensing Requirements.** Licensing of master plumbers shall be governed by Sections 119.4.1 through 119.4.6.

**119.4.1 Applications.** Applications for licenses as master plumber shall be made by the applicant on a form supplied by the board. The applicant shall state the number of years worked as journeyman (a minimum of 4 years is required). The application shall be accompanied by one or more letters from former employers certifying to the applicant's character, qualifications, length of employment, and fitness to receive such license.

**119.4.2 Examination.** The examination shall be in writing unless the board shall direct otherwise. The examination shall be designed to test the applicant's knowledge of the proper construction of practical plumbing, ventilation and drainage, hydraulics, sizing of pipes, fixtures and appliances generally used in plumbing, ventilating, and drainage work, and the proper and safe methods of supplying water to buildings and removing water and

sewage therefrom. The applicant shall demonstrate his or her ability to comprehend and interpret plans and drawings relating to the plumbing trade.

**119.4.3 Re-Examination of Rejected Applicants.** Any applicant whose application for a master plumber's license has been denied shall not make a new application until after six months from the date of such denial.

**119.4.4 Responsibilities of Licensed Master Plumbers.** It shall be unlawful for any person to engage in plumbing or gasfitting work in the District of Columbia unless licensed and bonded as prescribed in this code.

**119.4.4.1 Bond.** Any person granted a license to practice as a master plumber or gasfitter in the District of Columbia shall post a bond in an amount as the Mayor may establish from time to time, but not less than five thousand dollars (\$5,000), before engaging in this trade. The bond shall identify and save harmless the District of Columbia Government and any person who may be aggrieved against all damages, injuries, loss, expenses and costs which may be sustained from any wrongdoing, misconduct, want of care or skill, negligence, or default on the part of the master plumber or gasfitter, their employees or agents. The bond shall be posted and approved before the license shall be issued.

**119.4.4.2 Annual Fee.** Before issuance of the license, the master plumber shall pay the annual fee set by the Department and present a Certificate of Public Liability and Property Damage Insurance for an amount as the Mayor may establish from time to time, but not less than forty thousand dollars (\$40,000) for each accident. Such a certificate of insurance shall accompany the license application every year.

**119.4.4.3 Display of Registration.** Before engaging in the plumbing or gasfitting business in the District of Columbia, the licensee shall display a sign on his or her place of business bearing his or her name or business name, with the words "Registered Plumber D.C. Number [License No.]" in letters not less than 3 inches high, unless a smaller sign is required by zoning regulations. The form and location of the sign shall be plainly visible and readable from a public thoroughfare or entrance. Any truck or vehicle used for plumbing business in the District of Columbia shall display in letters not less than 2 inches high the words "Registered Plumber D.C. Number ". All master plumbers shall show their registration numbers on all public advertising such as stationery, bill heads, business cards, telephone book yellow pages.

**119.4.4.4 Use By Others.** No master plumber shall allow his or her name or registration to be used by any other person for obtaining permits, doing work, or for any other purpose whatsoever. Any licensed plumber may apply for and receive a license for and on behalf of any firm, co-partnership, or corporation of which he is a bona fide member or substantial stockholder; however, all plumbing

or gasfitting work under such license shall be supervised or done by the licensed plumber.

**119.4.5 Unlicensed Plumbing Prohibited.** It shall be unlawful for the owner or lessee of any building in the District of Columbia, or their agents, to employ or contract for an unlicensed person to do plumbing or gasfitting in or about such building.

**119.4.6 Suspension or Revocation of License.** The code official is authorized to suspend or revoke any plumber's or gasfitter's license after public hearing for violation of this code.

**119.5 Inspections.** The code official shall inspect or cause to be inspected all houses when in the course of construction, alteration, or repair in the District to assure compliance with the plumbing, drainage, and ventilation requirements of this code. On application of the owner or occupant, or on the complaint under oath of any reputable citizen, the code official shall inspect or cause to be inspected any house in the District to examine the plumbing, drainage, and ventilation of the plumbing system thereof.

**119.5.1 Notices and Certificates of Inspection.** The code official shall sign and issue all notices and certificates of inspection and approval required by this Chapter, except such permits and notices as shall be issued by other District agencies or officials.

**119.5.2 Periodic Inspections.** The code official may periodically inspect the plumbing in every building or premises in the District to ensure that such plumbing has been installed in such a manner as to prevent the reasonable likelihood of pollution of the water supply of the District by such plumbing. The code official shall notify the owner or owner's authorized agent to correct any plumbing installed or existing contrary to or in violation of this code. Consent to inspect any single family dwelling shall first be obtained from a person of suitable age and discretion therein or in control thereof.

## **SECTION 120A ADMINISTRATIVE MECHANICAL PROVISIONS**

**120.1 Licensure and Registration Requirements.** Except as otherwise provided in Sections 120.1.1 through 120.1.3, applications for mechanical permit shall comply with this section. Each application for mechanical permit shall be filed by the contractor responsible for the work to be done. Each application shall show the name and signature of the master mechanic employed to actually supervise the work. Said mechanical contractor and master mechanic shall be registered and bonded in accordance with the applicable District of Columbia licensing and bonding regulations.

**120.1.1 Work in Firm's Premises.** A firm or corporation that regularly employs a licensed master mechanic shall be authorized to apply for and obtain a permit for the performance of mechanical work in existing buildings or premises under its ownership or occupancy. Each application shall show the name and signature of the master mechanic employed to actually supervise the work. Said master mechanic shall be registered and

bonded in accordance with the applicable District of Columbia licensing and bonding regulations.

**120.1.2 Work on D.C. Owned Properties Located Outside of D.C..** Mechanical contractors licensed by the District of Columbia, or by other Government agencies having jurisdiction over the area adjoining any reservation under the control of the District of Columbia, located outside the District of Columbia, shall be allowed to apply for and obtain mechanical permits for work on or within such reservation.

**120.1.3 Owner's Permits.** The owner, or the owner's agent, of premises where mechanical equipment listed in items 1 through 3 below is to be installed, shall be authorized to apply for and obtain a permit for the installation of such equipment in said premises:

1. Fuel burning equipment, excluding gas fired hot water boilers with a gas input rating of less than 525,000 Btu/h (154 kW) and gas fired appliances in single-family dwellings.
2. Fired pressure vessels less than 16 inches (401 mm) in diameter, working at a pressure of less than 100 psia (690 kPa) and with a heating surface of less than 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>), also classified as miniature boilers.
3. Unfired pressure vessels with a capacity of less than 15 gallons (0.057 m<sup>3</sup>), or operating at a working pressure of 60 psig (414 kPa) or less.

**120.2 Location of Refrigeration Systems.** No part of any refrigeration system shall extend from one lot to another except as provided for in Section 120.2.6. Location of any part of a refrigeration system beyond the building line shall comply with Sections 120.2.1 through 120.2.5.

**120.2.1 Use of Public Space.** Use of public space or of the space beyond the building line for the installation of refrigeration systems as provided in Sections 120.2.2 through 120.2.5 shall be limited to that portion abutting the applicant's premises, and as the Mayor may determine is not needed for use of the general public.

**120.2.2 Public Space Permits.** Special public space permits for installations as provided in Sections 120.2.1 through 120.2.5 shall be obtained from the Department of Public Works. The permit shall be issued only to the owner of the premises involved.

**120.2.2.1 Authority to Issue Special Permits.** Permits to locate or extend any part of a refrigeration system beyond the building line or onto or across public space shall be issued only as provided under authority of Subsections 1-337 (c) and (d), D.C. Code (1981 Edition), or as approved by the Mayor on recommendation of the Public Space Committee.

**120.2.3 Installation on Public Space.** Each installation of a refrigeration system in or on public space shall comply with the applicable provisions of the Construction Codes, with the following additional requirements:

1. The use shall be considered temporary, and the user shall acquire no right, title, or interest in the space he or she is permitted to use;
2. The United States and the District, and the officers and employees of each of these governments, shall be held harmless for any loss or damage arising out of the use, whether the loss or damage is suffered by the permittee, the United States, the District, or by some third person;
3. The refrigeration system placed in or on public space by a permittee shall be maintained in good repair and in clean condition, and shall not be allowed to deteriorate or become unsightly, noisy, or dangerous to passers-by; and
4. The space shall not be used in a manner or for a purpose that the Mayor finds is deleterious to the general character of the neighborhood, or that is not in the best interest of the general public.

**120.2.4 Insurance for Installation in Public Space.** The applicant for a permit to install a refrigeration system on or across public space shall, as a condition precedent to the issuance of the permit, and as a condition to the continuance of the permit, furnish the code official with a copy of a policy of public liability and property damage insurance, with employees as parties insured, subject to the conditions of Sections 120.2.4.1 and 120.2.4.2.

**120.2.4.1 Limits of Liability Insurance.** The limits of insurance liability of the insurance policy required in Section 120.2.4 shall be as the Mayor may establish from time to time, but not less than the following amounts: \$100,000 for one person in any one accident; \$500,000 for the aggregate of all persons in any one accident; and \$10,000 for property damage in any one accident.

**120.2.4.2 Cancellation of Insurance.** The policy of insurance shall be cancelable only by giving written notice to the Mayor. Notice shall be addressed to the Secretary of the District of Columbia, 441 4th Street, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20001, stating the date on which the proposed cancellation of the policy is to be become effective. The date of cancellation shall not be less than 30 days after the date on which the Mayor receives the notice.

**120.2.5 Permit Revocation.** A permit for the use of public space shall be subject to revocation for the failure of the permittee to comply with the Construction Codes. Upon receiving notice of revocation, the permittee shall remove the refrigeration system and restore the public space to a condition satisfactory to the Department of Public Works, at the permittee's expense.

**120.2.6 Systems Extending Over Two or More Lots.** Applications for permits to install refrigeration systems extending from one lot to another shall be accompanied by notarized written permissions from the owners of each lot on which any part of the system is to be installed.

## **SECTION 121A ADMINISTRATIVE ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS**

**121.1 Licensure and Registration Requirements.** Except as otherwise provided in Sections 122.1.1 through 122.1.4, applications for electrical permit shall comply with this section. Each application for electrical permit shall be filed by the electrical contractor responsible for the work to be done. Each application shall show the name and signature of the master electrician employed to actually supervise the work. Said electrical contractor and master electrician shall be registered and bonded in accordance with the District of Columbia Electrical Licensing and Bonding Regulations in DCMR 17, Chapter 2.

**121.1.1 Work in Firm's Premises.** A firm or corporation that regularly employs a licensed master electrician, or master electrician limited, shall be authorized to apply for and obtain a permit for the performance of electrical work in existing buildings or premises under its ownership or occupancy. Each application shall show the name and signature of the master electrician employed to actually supervise the work. Said master electrician shall be registered and bonded in accordance with the District of Columbia Electrical Licensing and Bonding Regulations.

**121.1.2 Work on D.C. Owned Properties Located Outside of the District of Columbia.** Electrical contractors licensed by the District of Columbia, or by other Government agencies having jurisdiction over the area adjoining any reservation under the control of the District of Columbia, located outside the District of Columbia, shall be allowed to apply for and obtain electrical permits for work on or within such reservation.

**121.1.3 Homeowner's Permit.** A person shall be authorized to apply for and obtain an electrical permit to perform branch circuit extensions from existing over-current devices in a single family dwelling if owned and occupied by the applicant. The code official shall perform an oral interrogation of the applicant to assess whether the person is qualified to perform the intended work in conformity with the Electrical Code, at the time of issuance of the permit.

**121.1.4 Electrical Work Incidental to Plumbing or Gas-Fitting Work.** A licensed contractor performing plumbing or gasfitting work in accordance with the Construction Codes shall be allowed to apply for and obtain electrical permits for electric fixtures or other apparatus that are attached to or form any part of the plumbing or gas-fitting system in any building, provided that such contractor obtains a limited scope license from the professional licensing office of the Department.

**121.1.5 Other Licensing Requirements.** Except for work done under Sections 121.1.3 and 121.1.4, the actual performance of electrical work shall be done only by duly



registered licensed electricians under the actual supervision of duly registered licensed master electricians.

**121.2 Master Service or Master Meter Covenants for Master Service or Master Metering.**

No covenant in connection with Sections E-230-2 and E-230-3 of the Electrical Code shall be approved in order to provide master service to more than one building on a single lot, or to buildings on different lots in the same square, unless in accordance with Sections 121.2.1 and 121.2.2.

**121.2.1 Form of Covenant.** The form of covenant shall be satisfactory to the Corporation Counsel, for legal sufficiency.

**121.2.2 Documents Filed in Office of Recorder of Deeds.** Two copies of the instrument shall be filed in the Office of the Recorder of Deeds. One copy, duly noted, shall be filed with the code official. If there are other parties in interest, they shall be made parties to the covenant in a manner satisfactory to the Corporation Counsel.

**121.3 Notification for Electrical Inspection.** When approval is desired for any electrical work for which a permit has been issued, the person, firm, or corporation to whom the permit was issued shall submit to the code official a written request for inspection of such work.

**121.4 Work on Live Circuits.** It shall be unlawful to perform electrical work in circuits or systems, other than power limited wiring or equipment, without first disengaging the electrical power to such circuits or systems.

## **SECTION 122A AMENDMENTS AND COPIES**

**122.1 Amendments; Supplements; Editions.** All future amendments, supplements, and editions of the Construction Codes shall be adopted only upon authority of the government of the District of Columbia. The Mayor may issue proposed rules to amend the Construction Codes and to adopt new supplements and editions of the ICC International Codes in whole or in part pursuant to Title I of the D.C. Administrative Procedure Act, approved October 21, 1968 (82 Stat. 1204; D.C. Code, section 1-15.1 et seq.). The proposed rules shall be submitted to the Council for a 45-day period of review, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, legal holidays, and days of Council recess. If the Council does not approve or disapprove the proposed rules, in whole or in part by resolution within this 45-day review period, the proposed rules shall be deemed approved. The rules shall not take effect until approved or deemed approved by the Council.

**122.2 Amendment Procedure.** Within 3 months of publication of any future revision, supplement, or edition of the ICC International Codes, the Director shall publish notice in the D.C. Register that changes are proposed pursuant to the Construction Codes Approval and Amendments Act of 1986 and the D.C. Administrative Procedures Act. The Director shall:

1. Prepare an evaluation and recommendation of proposed changes for review by the D.C. Building Code Advisory Committee. The D.C. Building Code Advisory Committee shall study the proposed changes and the Director's recommendation, and shall make its recommendations to the Director within 90 days of receipt of the proposed changes.
2. The proposed changes, approved by the Director, shall be published in the D.C. Register as proposed rules for public review and comments.
3. The Director shall publish final rules after the proposed rules are approved or deemed approved by the Council.

**122.2.1 Initiation and Review of Changes.** Changes in the Construction Codes may be proposed and initiated by and through the D.C. Building Code Advisory Committee and the Director. The notice, review, evaluation, and rulemaking procedures of Section 122.2 shall be applied to any proposed changes in the Construction Codes, from whatever source.

**122.3 Official Copies.** Official copies of the Construction Codes are on file in the D.C. Office of Documents.

## **SECTION 123A TRANSITORY PROVISIONS**

**123.1 Applicable Codes.** The laws and regulations in force on the date that a new edition of the ICC International Code and the respective new D.C. Supplement are adopted pursuant to Section 123, shall remain in effect for the purposes specified in Sections 123.1.1 through 123.1.3.

**123.1.1 Existing Valid Permit.** Work authorized by a permit issued before the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes shall be allowed to be carried to completion, subject to the conditions of Sections 105.6, 105.6.1 and 105.5.2.

**123.1.2 Existing Filed Application.** Applications for permits for which the application filing deposit has been paid before the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes, pursuant to Section 108.2.1.1, shall be allowed to be processed to issuance of the permit, and any work authorized thereby shall be allowed to be carried to completion, under the edition of the Construction Codes in effect on the date said applications were filed, subject to the following conditions:

1. Each such application shall have been filed accompanied by plans and other information conforming to Sections 106.1 and 106.1.1, sufficiently complete to allow processing of the permit without substantial change or deviation.
2. Each such permit shall be paid in full and taken out by the applicant within one (1) year after the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes.
3. All work authorized by such permit shall be carried to completion under the terms of the permit.
4. Permits granted under Section 123.1.2 shall not be extended if permitted to expire, pursuant to Section 105.5, or if revoked pursuant to Sections 105.6 and 105.6.1.

**123.1.3 Existing Design Contracts.** Buildings and structures under contract for design on the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes, for which no permit applications have been filed, shall be allowed to be filed, processed to issuance of permit, and any work authorized thereby shall be allowed to be carried to completion, under the previous edition of the Construction Codes, subject to the following conditions:

1. The applicant shall file the permit application, accompanied by plans and other information conforming to Sections 106.1 and 106.1.1, sufficiently complete to allow processing of the permit without substantial change or deviation, within one (1) year after the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes.
2. The applicant shall submit a copy of the design contract, with a notarized affidavit stating that the submitted copy is a true and accurate copy of the contract for the design of the building or structure, that the contract was in effect on or before the effective date of the Construction Codes, and that the design submitted with the permit application was made under such contract.
3. The permit shall be obtained and the permit fee paid in full by the applicant within one (1) year after the filing date.
4. All work authorized by such permit shall be carried to completion under the terms of the permit.
5. Permits granted under Section 123.1.3 shall not be extended if permitted to expire pursuant to Section 105.5, or if revoked pursuant to Sections 105.6 and 105.6.1.

**123.2 Tenant Layout Permits.** The work necessary to finish the interior layout of every tenant space of a building permitted under previous editions of the Construction Codes, for first occupancy of each such tenant space, shall be considered part of the completion of said building, and the permits for such tenant work shall be allowed to be processed under the same edition of the Construction Codes as the base building permit, regardless of when the tenant layout project began.

**123.3 Violations or Infractions.** The laws and regulations in force on the date that a new edition of the ICC International Codes and the respective new D.C. Supplement are adopted pursuant to Section 123, shall apply with respect to violations or infractions committed prior to said date, whether the prosecutions or adjudications of those violations or infractions are begun before or after said date.

## **CHAPTER 2A DEFINITIONS**

### **SECTION 202A DEFINITIONS**

*Add the following definitions:*

**Community-Based Residential Facility:** A residential facility for persons who have a common need for treatment, rehabilitation, assistance, or supervision in their daily living. This definition includes, but is not limited to, facilities covered by D.C. Law 2-35, the Community Residence Facilities Licensure Act of 1977, and facilities formerly known as convalescent or nursing homes, residential halfway houses or social service centers, philanthropic or eleemosynary institutions, and personal care homes. If an establishment is a community-based residential facility as defined in this Section, it shall not be deemed to constitute any other use permitted under the authority of these regulations. A community-based residential facility may include separate living quarters for resident supervisors and their families. All community-based residential facilities shall be included in one (1) or more of the following subcategories:

(a) **Adult Rehabilitation Home:** A facility providing residential care for one (1) or more individuals sixteen (16) years of age or older who are charged by the United States Attorney with a felony offense, or any other individual twenty-one (21) years of age or older, under pre-trial detention or sentenced pursuant to court order;

(b) **Community Residence Facility:** A facility that meets the definition for and is licensed as a community residence facility under Chapter 34 of Title 22, DCMR, "Public Health and Medicine," as that definition may be amended from time to time;

(c) **Emergency Shelter:** A facility providing temporary housing for one (1) or more individuals who are otherwise homeless and who are not in need of a long-term sheltered living arrangement, as that arrangement is defined in Title 22 DCMR, "Public Health and Medicine"; and

(d) **Health Care Facility:** A facility that meets the definition for and is licensed as a skilled care facility or intermediate nursing care facility under the provisions of Title 22 DCMR, "Public Health and Medicine," as those definitions may be amended from time to time.

(e) **Substance Abusers Home:** A community residence facility that offers a sheltered living arrangement, as that arrangement is defined in the Health Care Facilities Regulations of the District of Columbia, for one (1) or more individuals diagnosed by a medical doctor as abusers of alcohol, drugs, or other controlled substances.

(f) **Youth Rehabilitation Home:** A facility providing residential care for one (1) or more individuals less than twenty-one (21) years of age who have been detained or committed by a court pursuant to their involvement in the commission of an act designated as an offense under the law of the District of Columbia, or of a state if the act occurred in a state, or under federal

law. The facility shall not house persons sixteen (16) years of age or older who are charged by the United States Attorney with a felony offense.

(g) Youth Residential Care Home: A facility providing safe, hygienic, sheltered living arrangement for one (1) or more individuals less than eighteen (18) years of age, not related by blood, adoption, or marriage to the operator of the facility, who are ambulatory and able to perform the activities of daily living with minimal assistance.

(h) Assisted Living Facility: A community residence facility housing unrelated residents that provides and/or coordinates, in return for payment, housing and supportive services, supervision services, personal assistance services, health related services, or a combination thereof, said services provides to meet the needs of residents who are unable to perform, or who need assistance in performing the activities of daily living and/or instrumental activities of daily living a way that promotes optimum dignity and independence for the residents. "Assisted Living Facility" does not include a nursing home.

Group Homes for Mentally Retarded Persons: A community residence facility that admits at least four (4) but no more than eight (8) related and non-related mentally retarded persons, maintains the necessary facilities for their care or habilitation, and provides a home-like environment to persons who, because of mental retardation, require specialized living arrangements.

Means of Escape: A way out of a building or structure that does not conform to the strict definition of means of egress but does provide an alternate way out.

Resident: A person who is receiving personal care and residents in a group home for the mentally retarded or resides in a community-based residential facility.

## **CHAPTER 3A USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION**

### **SECTION 310A RESIDENTIAL GROUP R**

*Add new Section 310.1.1 to read as follows:*

#### **310.1.1 Special residential occupancies.**

**310.1.1.1 Group Homes for the Mentally Retarded** complying with section 419 shall be classified as Use Group R-3.

**310.1.1.2 Community Based Residential Facilities** complying with section 420 shall be classified as Use Group R-3.

**310.1.1.3 Assisted Living Facilities** with fifteen (15) or less residents and complying with Section 421 shall be classified as Use Group R-3. Facilities with sixteen (16) or more shall be classified as either Use R-2 or I-1.

## **CHAPTER 4A SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY**

*Add new Section 419 to read as follows:*

### **SECTION 419A GROUP HOMES FOR THE MENTALLY RETARDED**

**419.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements that will provide a reasonable degree of safety from the hazards of fire in converted one-and two-family dwellings, housing not more than eight residents who are mentally retarded and often incapable of evacuation without assistance.

**419.2 Scope.** The special provisions of this section shall supplement and modify the general provisions of the code when applicable to buildings of Use Group R-3, Group Homes for the Mentally Retarded, as defined in Chapter 2.

**419.3 Number and Means of Escape.** Every sleeping room shall have access to at least two means of escape that do not involve windows. The primary means of escape, a door or stairway providing a means of unobstructed travel to the outside of the dwelling at street or ground level, shall be so located as to provide a safe path of travel to the outside of the building without traversing any corridor or space exposed to an unprotected vertical opening or common living spaces such as living rooms and kitchens. Where the sleeping room is above or below the level of exit discharge, the means of escape shall be an enclosed interior stair, an exterior stair, a horizontal exit, or an existing fire escape stair. No bedroom or living area shall be accessible by only a ladder or folding stairs or through a trap door.

**419.3.1 Second Means of Escape.** The second means of escape shall be one of the following:

- a. A door, stairway, passage or hall providing a way, independent of and remote from the primary means of escape, of unobstructed travel to the outside of the dwelling at street or ground level.
- b. A passage through adjacent non-lockable spaces independent of and remote from the primary means of escape to any approved means of escape.

**419.4 Separation of Sleeping Rooms.** All sleeping rooms shall be separated from escape route corridors by walls and doors that are smoke resistant. Smoke resistant shall mean a wall or door constructed in a manner that will restrict the movement of smoke and which may or may not have a fire resistance rating. There shall be no louvers or operable transoms or other air passages penetrating the wall except properly installed heating and utility installations. Transfer grilles are prohibited. Doors shall be provided with latches or there shall be mechanisms suitable for keeping the door closed. No doors shall be arranged so as to prevent the occupant from closing the door.



**419.5 Protection of Vertical openings.** Vertical openings shall be protected so that no primary means of escape is exposed to an unprotected vertical opening. The vertical opening is considered protected if the opening is cut off and enclosed in a manner that provides a smoke and fire resisting capability of not less than 20 minutes. Any doors or openings shall have equivalent fire and smoke resisting capability of the enclosure and be automatic-closing on detection of smoke or be self-closing.

**Exception:** In buildings three stories or less in height, unprotected vertical openings are permitted. However, in such case, there shall still remain a primary means of escape for each sleeping area that does not require occupants to pass through a portion of another floor, unless that route is separated from all spaces on that floor by smoke resistant construction.

**419.6 Interior Stair Enclosure.** Interior stairways shall be enclosed with 20-minute fire-resistance rated barriers with all openings protected with smoke actuated automatic or self-closing doors having a fire resistance comparable to that required for the enclosure. A door 1 <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inch (44 mm) solid bonded wood core construction shall be considered as satisfying this requirement.

**419.7 Interior Finish.** Interior finish on walls and ceilings of occupied spaces shall be Class I, II or III. There are no requirements for interior floor finish.

**419.8 Sprinkler System.** All facilities shall be protected throughout by an approved supervised automatic sprinkler system in accordance with the provisions of Section 903.0 regardless of the number or arrangements of floors or number of occupants.

**419.9 Portable Fire Extinguishers.** Approved portable fire extinguishers shall be provided with a minimum rating of 2A10BC, one extinguisher shall be located on each floor level adjacent to the smoke detector activation switch.

**419.10 Smoke Detector System.** Approved smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.10. Detectors shall be installed on all levels, including the basement, living rooms and day rooms, but excluding crawl spaces and unfinished attics.

**419.10.1 Smoke Detector System Activation Switch.** At least one switch to manually activate the smoke detector system shall be located on each level adjacent to a doorway leading to a means of escape. This component of the smoke detection system shall be an approved manual fire alarm pull station.

**419.11 Fire Evacuation Plan.** Every facility shall have in effect and available written copies of an approved plan for the protection of all persons in the event of a fire and for their evacuation if necessary in accordance with the provisions of Section 408.10 of the *DC Fire Prevention Code* regardless of the occupancy group.

*Add new Section 420 to read as follows:*

## **SECTION 420A COMMUNITY BASED RESIDENTIAL FACILITY**

**420.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements that will provide a reasonable degree of safety from the hazards of fire in converted one and two-family dwellings, housing not more than fifteen (15) residents who are often unable to meet the demand of independent living, but are capable of evacuation without assistance.

**420.2 Scope.** The special provisions of this section shall supplement and modify the general provisions of the code when applicable to buildings of Use Group R-3, Community-based Residential Facility, as defined in Chapter 2.

**420.3 Number and Means of Escape.** At least two means of escape shall be provided from every sleeping room when more than six (6) residents are housed above or below the street floor level. Means of escape shall be in accordance with Section 419.0, except that it is permissible to use windows as a means of escape.

**420.4 Sprinkler System.** All facilities shall be protected throughout by an approved supervised automatic sprinkler system in accordance with the provisions of Section 903.0 regardless of the number or arrangements of floors or number of occupants.

**420.5 Portable Fire Extinguishers.** Approved portable fire extinguishers shall be provided with a minimum rating of 2A10BC. One extinguisher shall be located on each level.

**420.6 Smoke Detector System.** An approved smoke detector system shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.10.

**420.7 Fire Evacuation Plan.** Every facility shall have in effect and available written copies of an approved plan for the protection of all persons in the event of a fire and for their evacuation if necessary in accordance with the provisions of Section 408.10 of the DC Fire Prevention Code regardless of the occupancy group.

*Add new Section 421 to read as follows:*

## **SECTION 421A ASSISTED LIVING FACILITY**

**421.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements that will provide a reasonable degree of safety from the hazards of fire in existing buildings converted to house residents who have elected to reside in Assisted Living Facilities. For the purposes of this Code, the conversion of existing buildings to Assisted Living Facilities in compliance with section 421.0 shall not require the existing structure to comply with other requirements for change of use.

**421.2 Scope.** The special provisions of the section shall supplement and modify the general provisions of the Code and regulate existing buildings converted to Assisted Living Facility, as follows:

- a. Facilities housing sixteen (16) or fewer residents shall be classified as Use Group R-4.

- b. Facilities housing more than sixteen (16) residents shall be classified as Use Group R-2, as defined in Section 310.0.

**421.3 Additional Requirements.** Buildings converted to Assisted Living Facilities shall also be in compliance with NFPA 101, The Life Safety Code listed in Chapter 35 of the National Fire Protection Association, 1997 edition, as follows:

- a. Existing Community Residence Facilities building classified as Use Group I or R, when converted to Assisted Living Facilities, shall be in compliance with Chapter 23 of NFPA 101, Existing Residential Board and Care Occupancies.
- b. All other conversions to Assisted Living Facilities shall be in compliance with Chapter 22, of NFPA 101 New Residential Board and Care Occupancies.

## **CHAPTER 5A GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS**

### **SECTION 503A GENERAL HEIGHT AND AREA LIMITATIONS**

*Revise Section 503.1.2 to read as follows:*

**503.1.2 Special industrial occupancies:** Buildings and structures designed to house low-hazard industrial processes that require large areas and unusual heights to accommodate craneways or special machinery and equipment, including among others, rolling mills; structural metal fabrication shops and foundries; or collection and treatment of sewage and storm water, or the production and distribution of electric, gas, water or steam power, shall be exempt from the height and area limitations of Table 503. Ordinary repairs of such buildings or structures shall include specifically engineered structural and mechanical components designed for removal and replacement in kind.

## **CHAPTER 7A FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION**

### **SECTION 704A EXTERIOR WALLS**

*Add exception to Section 704.8 as follows:*

**Exception:** Buildings as permitted by Sections 704.8.3 and 704.8.4

*Add exception to Section 704.8.2 as follows:*

**Exception:** Private Garage Openings: In detached or attached private garages, unlimited unprotected openings are permitted in the first story of exterior walls facing the public way, regardless of their fire separation distance. The remaining elements of the envelope of the garage shall comply with the general and specific requirements of this code for fire resistance ratings and protection of openings.

*Add new Sections 704.8.3 and 704.8.4 to read as follows:*

**704.8.3 Abutted Buildings:** When approved, a limited number of door openings between two abutted buildings, protected in accordance with Section 705.8 shall be permitted.

**704.8.4 Openings on or Near Adjacent Construction or Property Lines:** Exterior walls of buildings equipped throughout with sprinklers in accordance with Section 903 containing occupancies other than Use Group H, when those walls have a fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less, shall be permitted to have openings, subject to the restrictions of Sections 704.8.4.1 through 704.8.4.6. Openings allowed pursuant to this section shall not be counted towards natural light, natural ventilation, or smoke control requirements.

**704.8.4.1 Horizontal Exposure:** Those stories that directly face another building or structure located either on the same lot or on an adjacent lot, having a fire separation distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or less, shall have no openings on the portion of the exterior wall that faces, horizontally, the building or structure.

**704.8.4.2 Vertical Exposure:** The portions of exterior walls with a fire separation distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or less, that are less than 12 feet (348 mm) vertically above the roof of an adjoining building or adjacent structure when such roof has any portion within a horizontal fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) of the exterior walls shall have no openings. The portions of exterior walls with a fire separation distance of greater than 3 feet (914 mm), above the roof of an adjoining building or structure shall comply with section 704.10, except that the provisions shall apply to a building on an adjacent lot.

**Exceptions:**

1. When a registered architect or engineer has certified that the adjacent roof assembly provides a fire rating no less than that required for the exterior wall of the proposed building or a 1 hour rating, whichever is greater, and that the roof is not used for storage, the 12 foot vertical separation required above is permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm). Where there are skylights or other openings in the adjacent roof having a horizontal fire separation of less than 10 feet (3048 mm), the percentage of openings allowed in 704.8 shall be as follows:

a.	0 to 3 feet fire separation	0%
b.	3 to 5 feet fire separation	15 %
c.	5 to 10 feet separation	25 %
2. When a registered professional engineer has submitted a written report of inspection certifying that the adjacent building is protected throughout with a fire sprinkler system conforming with Section 903, the 12 foot (3658 MM) vertical separation required above is permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm).

## **CHAPTER 9A FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS**

### **SECTION 907A FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS**

*Revise Section 907.2.10.1.2 to read as follows:*

**907.2.10.1.2 Groups R-2, R-3, R-4 and I-5 Smoke Detector Exception for Bedrooms:** Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained in Groups R-2, R-3, R-4, and I-5. Regardless of occupant load at all of the following locations:

1. On the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.
2. In each room used for sleeping purposes.
3. In each story within a dwelling unit, including basements and cellars but not including crawl spaces and in uninhabitable attics.

**Exceptions:**

In dwellings or units with split-levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

In buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, 903.3.1.2 or 903.3.1.3, smoke detectors are not required in bedrooms where the bedrooms are equipped with residential *sprinklers*.

### **SECTION 908A EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS**

*Add new Section 908 to read as follows:*

**908.0 General.** The system described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with design, construction, installation, or use, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

*Revise Section 908.6 to read as follows:*

**908.6 Refrigerant detector.** Machinery rooms shall contain a refrigerant detector with an audible and visual alarm. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector shall be located in an area where refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The alarm shall be actuated at a value not greater than the corresponding TLV-TWA values for the refrigerant classification

indicated in the DC Mechanical Code. Detectors and alarms shall be placed in approved locations.

Exception: Detectors are not required in ammonia system machinery rooms equipped with a vapor detector in accordance with the DC Mechanical Code.

## **SECTION 911A FIRE COMMAND CENTER**

*Revise Section 911.1 to read as follows:*

**911.1 Features.** Where required by other sections of this code, a fire command center for fire department operations shall be provided. The fire command center shall have an exterior entrance on the street of the building address or at a location approved by the Code Official. The fire command center shall comply with NFPA 72 and shall contain the following features.

*Add Sections 911.2 through 911.7 to read to as follows:*

**911.2 Construction:** The fire command center shall be separated by not less than a 1-hour fire resistance enclosure. There shall be no door opening into the room except for the exterior entrance door.

**911.3 Prohibited Use:** Electrical, mechanical or plumbing equipment other than those associated with the life safety systems, shall not be located within the fire command center fire area. The fire command center shall not be used for other than its intended use.

**Exception: Security system approved by code official.**

**911.4 Lighting, Heating, Cooling and Ventilation:** Lighting and power to the heating, cooling and ventilation system shall be provided from the emergency electrical power source of the structure. The heating, cooling, and ventilation system shall be suitable to remove heat generated by equipment and to maintain indoor space conditions at all times between 65 deg F (18 deg C) and 80 deg F (27 deg C) with 20 CFM (0.00838 m<sup>3</sup>/s) of outside air for ventilation.

**911.5 Aisles:** A minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) of aisle space shall be provided in front of all panels.

**911.6 Locking Arrangements:** The fire command center shall be secured from unauthorized entry and made accessible to the Fire Department at all times.

**911.7 Identification:** The entrance door to the fire command center shall be illuminated and clearly marked "Fire Command Center" with letters a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) in height on a contrasting background. If the fire command station is not located near the main entrance of the building, a sign showing the location shall be conspicuously posted

*Add Section 912 to read as follows:*



## **SECTION 912A FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS**

**912.1 Installation.** Fire department connections shall be installed in accordance with the NFPA standard applicable to the system design.

**912.2 Location.** With respect to hydrants, driveways, buildings and landscaping, fire department connections shall be so located that fire apparatus and hoses connected to supply the system will not obstruct access to the buildings for other fire apparatus. The location of fire department connections shall be approved.

**912.2.1 Visible location.** Fire department connections shall be located on the street side of buildings, fully visible and recognizable from the street or nearest point of fire department vehicle access or as otherwise approved by the code official.

*Add Section 913 to read as follows:*

## **SECTION 913A FIRE PUMP**

**913.1 General.** Where provided, fire pumps shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 20.

**913.2 Protection Against Interruption Of Service.** The fire pump, driver, and controller shall be protected in accordance with NFPA 20 against possible interruption of service through damage caused by explosion, fire, flood, earthquake, rodents, insects, windstorm, freezing, vandalism and other adverse conditions.

**913.3 Temperature Of Pump Room.** Suitable means shall be provided for maintaining the temperature of a pump room or pump house, where required, above 40 deg F (5 deg C).

913.3.1 Engine manufacturer's recommendation. Temperature of the pump room, pump house or area where engines are installed shall never be less than the minimum recommended by the engine manufacturer. The engine manufacturer's recommendations for oil heaters shall be followed.

**913.4 Valve supervision.** Where provided, the fire-pump suction, discharge and bypass valves, and the isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised open by one of the following methods.

1. Central-station, proprietary, or remote-station signaling
2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a constantly attended location.
3. Locking valves open.
4. Sealing of valves and approved weekly-recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

**913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision.** Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in the closed position.

**913.5.1 Acceptance test.** Acceptance testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 20.

**913.5.2 Generator sets.** Engine generator sets supplying emergency or standby power to fire pump assemblies shall be periodically tested in accordance with NFPA 110.

**913.5.3 Transfer switches.** Automatic transfer switches shall be periodically tested in accordance with NFPA 110.

**913.5.4 Pump room environmental conditions.** Tests of pump room environmental conditions, including heating, ventilation and illumination shall be made to ensure proper manual or automatic operation of the associated equipment.

*Add Section 914 to read as follows:*

#### **SECTION 914A EXPLOSION CONTROL**

**914.1 General** Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 911 of the IFC.

*Add Section 915 to read as follows:*

#### **SECTION 915A FIRE DEPARTMENT ACCESS TO EQUIPMENT**

**915.1 General.** Fire department access to equipment shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 510 of the IFC.

*Add Section 916 to read as follows:*

#### **SECTION 916A PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

**916.1 General.** Portable fire extinguishers shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 906 of the IFC.

*Add Section 917 to read as follows:*

#### **SECTION 917A KEY BOXES**

**917.1 General.** Key boxes shall be provided and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 506 of the IFC.

*Add Section 918 to read as follows:*

**SECTION 918A PREMISES IDENTIFICATION**

**918.1 General.** Premises shall be identified in accordance with the requirements of Section 505 of the IFC.

*Add Section 919 to read as follows:*

**SECTION 919A FIRE APPARATUS ACCESS ROADS**

**919.1 General.** Fire apparatus access roads shall be provided and maintained in accordance with Sections 503 of the IFC.

## **CHAPTER 10A MEANS OF EGRESS**

### **SECTION 1003A GENERAL MEANS OF EGRESS**

*Revise exception 5 under Section 1003.3.3.3 to read as follows:*

5. In occupancies in Group R-3, within dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, and in occupancies in Group U which are accessory to an occupancy in Group R-3 the maximum riser height shall be 8.25 inches (210 mm) and the minimum tread depth shall be 9 inches (229 mm). A nosing not less than 0.75 inches (19.1 mm) but not more than 1.25 inches (32 mm) shall be provided on stairways with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 10 inches (254mm).

*Add exception to Section 1003.3.3.11.3 to read as follows:*

**Exception:** For occupancies in Group R-3 and within dwelling units in occupancies Group R-2, the grip portion of handrails shall have a circular cross section dimension of 1.25 inches (32 mm) minimum to 2.625 inches (66.7 mm) maximum. Other shapes that provide an equivalent grasping surface are permissible. Edges shall have a minimum radius of .125 inches (32 mm).

### **SECTION 1004A EXIT ACCESS**

*Revise exception 2 under Section 1004.2.2.1 to read as follows:*

**Exceptions:**

2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance of the exit doors or exit access doorways shall not be less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the area served.

### **SECTION 1005A EXITS**

*Delete Section 1005.3.2.4 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

**1005.3.2.4 Stairway floor number signs.** Signs shall be provided at each floor landing in interior vertical exit enclosures connecting more than three stories.

**1005.3.2.4.1 Signs inside stairway.** A sign shall be provided inside each stairway identifying the stairway and the floor level, indicating the direction and number of floors to the exit discharge, the availability of roof access from the stairway and other pertinent information, in accordance with Sections 1005.3.2.4.1.1 through 1005.3.2.4.1.6.

**1005.3.2.4.1.1 Location.** The sign shall be located entirely within the area between 5 feet (1524 mm) and 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor landing, in a position which is readily visible when the doors are in the open and closed positions, and located so that occupants egressing from floors that are more remote from the exit discharge will face the sign frontally at some point in their path of egress.

**1005.3.2.4.1.2 Material, Design and Colors.** The sign shall be durable and of a material that complies with other sections of the code. Unless painted on the wall, the sign shall be securely fastened to the structure. The sign shall be of an approved design and the characters and background shall be of approved contrasting colors.

**1005.3.2.4.1.3 Floor Identification.** The sign shall identify the floor by one or more characters, using a designation that is consistent with the floor designations used throughout the building in all stairways and fire protection annunciating devices. Floor identification characters shall be numerals or capital letters, a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) high, with a stroke width between one twelfth (1/12) and one fourth (1/4) of height of the floor identification character.

**1005.3.2.4.1.4 Stairway Identification.** The sign shall identify the stairway using a designation that is consistent with the stairway designations used in all fire protection annunciating devices within the building. The word "Stair" and the stairway designation (e.g., STAIR B or STAIR 3, or SOUTH STAIR) shall be displayed immediately after the floor identification, using capital letters and/or numerals a minimum 1 ½ inches (38 mm) high but not higher than one fourth (1/4) the height of the floor identification characters.

**1005.3.2.4.1.5 Distance to Exit Discharge.** The sign shall contain information specifying the number of floors and the direction to the levels of exit discharge, in the form of an arrow followed by the words "EXIT n FLOORS DOWN" or "EXIT n FLOORS UP," as applicable, where n indicates the number of floors to travel to the exit discharge. The size of the characters shall be the same used for the stair identification. The arrow shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) long and shall point in the direction of egress.

**1005.3.2.4.1.6 Other Stairway Information.** If the stairway provides access to the roof, the words "ROOF ACCESS" shall be displayed immediately after the stairway identification, using

capital letters a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) high but not higher than the stairway identification characters.

**1005.3.2.4.2 Signs outside stairway.** A sign shall be provided on the doorway or adjacent to every stairway identifying the stairway and the floor level, indicating the same name as described in 1005.3.2.4.1, the lettering shall be of a contrasting color or material and shall be a minimum of 1 1/2 inches (38mm) high.

## **CHAPTER 11A ACCESSIBILITY**

*Delete Chapter 11 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

### **SECTION 1101A GENERAL**

**1101.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of facilities for accessibility to persons with disabilities.

**1101.2 Design.** Buildings and facilities shall be designed and constructed to be accessible in accordance with this code, as amended herein, and ICC/ANSI A117.1, as amended in Section 1114.

### **SECTION 1102A DEFINITIONS**

**1102.1 General.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein:

**ACCESSIBLE.** A site, building, facility or portion thereof that complies with this chapter.

**ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.** A continuous, unobstructed path that complies with this chapter.

**ACCESSIBLE UNIT.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit that complies with this code and Chapters 1-9 of ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**ASSEMBLY AREA.** For purposes of this chapter, a building or facility or portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include a classroom, lecture hall, courtroom, public meeting room, public hearing room, legislative chamber, motion picture house, auditorium, theater playhouse, dinner theater, concert hall, center for the performing arts, amphitheater, arena, stadium, grandstand, or convention center.

**ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM (ALS).** An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers, and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared, or direct-wired equipment.

**CHILDREN'S USE.** Describes spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people between the ages of 2 ½ and 12 years old.

**CIRCULATION PATH.** An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians.

**CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE.** A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.

**DETECTABLE WARNING.** A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired persons of hazards on a circulation path.

**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, TYPE A.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, TYPE B.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1, consistent with the design and construction requirements of the federal Fair Housing Act.

**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, MULTISTORY.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit with habitable space located on more than one story.

**EMPLOYEE WORK AREA.** All portions or any portion of a space used only by employees and used only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes, and breakrooms are not employee work areas.

**FACILITY.** The entire building or any portion of a building, structure or area, including the site on which such building, structure or area is located, wherein specific services are provided or activities are performed.

**INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE.** This refers to a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that can or will be used all or part of the time as the occupant's place of abode.

**PUBLIC ENTRANCE.** An entrance that is not a service entrance.

**PUBLIC-USE AREAS.** Interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public.

**SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY.** Real property designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

**SERVICE ENTRANCE.** An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.

**SITE.** A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

**SLEEPING UNIT.** A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of the dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

**TRANSIENT LODGING.** A building, facility, or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities and long-term care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping units. Examples of transient lodging include, but are not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels, dormitories, homeless shelters, halfway houses and social service lodging.



TTY. An abbreviation for teletypewriters. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYS may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYS are also called text telephones.

WHEELCHAIR SPACE. Space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

## **SECTION 1103A SCOPING REQUIREMENTS**

**1103.1 Where required.** Buildings and structures, temporary or permanent, including their associated sites and facilities, shall be accessible to persons with physical disabilities.

**1103.2 General exceptions.** Sites, buildings, facilities and elements shall be exempt from this chapter to the extent specified in this section.

**1103.2.1 Specific requirements.** Accessibility is not required in buildings and facilities, or portions thereof, to the extent permitted by Sections 1104 through 1109.

**1103.2.2 Existing buildings.** Existing buildings shall comply with the Existing Buildings Code.

**1103.2.3 Employee work areas.** Spaces and elements within employee work areas shall comply with Sections 1003.2.13 and 1104.6 and shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the employee work areas. In addition, visual alarm coverage shall be provided where audible alarm coverage is provided in employee work areas.

**Exception:** Work areas, or portions of work areas, that are less than 150 square feet (14 m<sup>2</sup>) in area and elevated 7 inches (178 mm) or more above the ground or finish floor where the elevation is essential to the function of the space shall be exempt from all requirements.

**1103.2.4 Detached dwellings.** Detached one- and two-family dwellings and accessory structures, and their associated sites and facilities as applicable in Section 101.2, are not required to be accessible.

**1103.2.5 Utility buildings.** Occupancies in Group U are exempt from the requirements of this chapter other than the following:

1. In agricultural buildings, access is required to paved work areas and areas open to the general public.
2. Private garages or carports that contain required accessible parking.

**1103.2.6 Construction sites.** Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual processes of construction including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage, or construction trailers are not required to be accessible.

**1103.2.7 Raised areas.** Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety, or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers, or life guard stands are not required to be accessible or to be served by an accessible route.

**1103.2.8 Limited access spaces.** Non-occupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators, very narrow passageways, or tunnels are not required to be accessible.

**1103.2.9 Equipment spaces.** Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair, or monitoring of equipment are not required to be accessible. Such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, mechanical, electrical, or communications equipment rooms, piping or equipment catwalks, water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations, electric substations and transformer vaults, and highway and tunnel utility facilities.

**1103.2.10 Single occupant structures.** Single occupant structures accessed only by passageways below grade or elevated above grade including, but not limited to, toll booths that are accessed only by underground tunnels, are not required to be accessible.

**1103.2.11 Residential Group R-1.** Buildings of Group R-1 containing not more than five sleeping units for rent or hire that are also occupied as the residence of the proprietor, are not required to be accessible.

**1103.2.12 Day care facilities.** Where a day care facility (Groups A-3, I-4 and R-3) is part of a dwelling unit, only the portion of the structure utilized for the day care facility is required to be accessible.

## **SECTION 1104A ACCESSIBLE ROUTE**

**1104.1 Site arrival points.** Accessible routes within the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance served.

**1104.2 Within a site.** At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces that are on the same site.

**Exception:** An accessible route is not required between accessible facilities that have, as the only means of access between them, a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.

**1104.3 Connected spaces.** When a building, or portion of a building, is required to be accessible, an accessible route shall be provided to each portion of the building, to accessible building entrances, connecting accessible pedestrian walkways and the public way. Where only one accessible route is provided, the accessible route shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or similar spaces.

**Exception:** A single accessible route is permitted to pass through a kitchen or storage room in an accessible dwelling unit.

**1104.4 Multilevel buildings and facilities.** At least one accessible route shall connect each accessible level, including mezzanines, in multi-level buildings and facilities.

**Exceptions:**

1. An accessible route is not required to floors above and below accessible levels that have an aggregate area of not more than 3,000 square feet (278.7 m<sup>2</sup>). This exception shall not apply to:
  - 1.1 Multiple tenant facilities of Group M occupancies containing five or more tenant spaces;
  - 1.2 Levels containing offices of health care providers (Group B or Group I); or
  - 1.3 Passenger transportation facilities and airports (Group A-3 or Group B).
2. In Groups A, I, R and S occupancies and care facilities, levels that do not contain accessible elements or other spaces required by Sections 1107 or 1108 are not required to be served by an accessible route from an accessible level.

**1104.5 Location.** Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general circulation path. Where the circulation path is interior, the accessible route shall also be interior.

**Exception:** Accessible routes from parking garages contained within and serving Type B dwelling units are not required to be interior.

**1104.6 Employee work areas.** Common use circulation paths within employee work areas shall be accessible routes.

**Exceptions:**

1. Common use circulation paths, located within employee work areas that are less than 300 square feet in size and defined by permanently installed partitions, counters, casework, or furnishings, shall not be required to be accessible routes.
2. Common use circulation paths, located within employee work areas, that are an integral component of equipment, shall not be required to be accessible routes.

3. Common use circulation paths, located within exterior employee work areas that are fully exposed to the weather, shall not be required to be accessible routes.

**1104.7 Raised platforms.** In banquet rooms or spaces where a head table or speaker's lectern is located on a raised platform, an accessible route shall be provided to the platform.

## **SECTION 1105A ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES**

**1105.1 Required.** At least 50 percent but not less than one entrance to each building and structure, and each separate tenant space within the building or structure, shall comply with the accessible route provisions of this chapter.

Exceptions:

1. Entrances to spaces not required to be accessible as provided for in Section 1107.
2. Loading and service entrances that are not the only entrance to a building or to a tenant space.

*1105.2 Multiple accessible entrances.* Where a building or facility has entrances that normally serve accessible parking facilities, transportation facilities, passenger loading zones, taxi stands, public streets and sidewalks, tunnels or elevated walkways, or accessible interior vertical access, then at least one of the entrances serving each such function shall comply with the accessible route provisions of this chapter.

## **SECTION 1106A PARKING AND PASSENGER LOADING FACILITIES**

**1106.1 Required.** Where parking is provided, accessible parking spaces shall be provided in compliance with Table 1106.1 except as required by Sections 1106.2, 1106.3 and 1106.4.

**TABLE 1106.1  
ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES**

TOTAL PARKING SPACES PROVIDED	REQUIRED MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE SPACES
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8

401 to 500	9
501 to 1,000	2% of total
More than 1,000	20 plus one for each 100 over 1,000

**1106.2 Groups R-2 and R-3.** Parking spaces provided for occupancies in Groups R-2 and R-3 shall comply with Section 1106.2.

**1106.2.1 Accessible parking spaces.** Two percent of parking spaces provided for occupancies in Groups R-2 and R-3 that are required to have accessible dwelling units or sleeping units shall be accessible. Where parking is provided within or beneath a building, accessible parking spaces shall also be provided within or beneath the building.

**1106.2.2 Garages.** Where there are several individual garages grouped together, either in a separate area of a structure or in a detached structure, for assignment or rental to residents, at least 2% of parking garages provided for Type A and Type B dwelling units and Type A and Type B sleeping units must be at least 14' 2" wide and have a vehicular door at least 10' wide.

**1106.2.3 Dispersion.** Where accessible parking spaces are provided, at least one of each type (surface parking, carports, or garage) shall be provided.

**1106.3 Rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities.** Twenty percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided at rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall be accessible.

**1106.4 Hospital outpatient facilities.** Ten percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall be accessible.

**1106.5 Van spaces.** For every six or fraction of six accessible parking spaces, at least one shall be a van-accessible parking space.

**1106.6 Location.** Accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel from adjacent parking to an accessible building entrance. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest route to an accessible pedestrian entrance to the parking facility. Where buildings have multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located near the accessible entrances.

**Exception:** In multilevel parking structures, van-accessible parking spaces are permitted on one level.

**1106.7 Passenger loading zones.** Passenger loading zones shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1106.7.1 Medical facilities.** A passenger loading zone shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical and long-term care facilities where people receive physical or medical treatment or care and where the period of stay exceeds 24 hours.

**1106.7.2 Valet parking.** A passenger loading zone shall be provided at valet parking services.

## **SECTION 1107A DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS**

**1107.1 General.** In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, occupancies having dwelling units or sleeping units shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.2 through 1107.7.5.

**1107.2 Design.** Dwelling units and sleeping units which are required to be accessible units shall comply with this code and the applicable portions of Chapters 1-9 of ICC/ANSI A117.1. Type A and Type B units shall comply with the applicable portions of Chapter 10 of ICC/ANSI A117.1. Units required to be Type A units are permitted to be designed and constructed as accessible units. Units required to be Type B units are permitted to be designed and constructed as accessible units or as Type A units.

**1107.3 Accessible spaces.** Rooms and spaces available to the general public or available for use by residents and serving accessible units, Type A units or Type B units shall be accessible. Accessible spaces shall include toilet and bathing rooms, kitchen, living and dining areas and any other exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies.

**Exception:** Recreational facilities in accordance with Section 1109.16.

**1107.4 Accessible route.** At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with the primary entrance of each accessible unit, Type A unit and Type B unit within the building or facility and with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the units.

### **Exceptions:**

1. If the slope of the finished ground level between accessible facilities and buildings exceeds one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1:12), or where physical barriers prevent the installation of an accessible route, a vehicular route with parking that complies with Section 1106 at each public or common use facility or building is permitted in place of the accessible route.
2. Exterior decks, patios, or balconies that are part of Type B units and have impervious surfaces, and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the dwelling unit.

**1107.5 Group I.** Occupancies in Group I shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1 through 1107.5.5.

**1107.5.1 Group I-1.** Group I-1 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1.1 and 1107.5.1.2.

**1107.5.1.1 Accessible units.** At least 4 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be accessible units.

**1107.5.1.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with 1107.7.

**1107.5.2 Group I-2 Nursing homes.** Nursing homes of Group I-2 shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.2.1 and 1107.5.2.2.

**1107.5.2.1 Accessible units.** At least 50 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be accessible units.

**1107.5.2.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with 1107.7.

**1107.5.3 Group I-2 Hospitals.** General purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities, detoxification facilities and residential care/assisted living facilities of Group I-2 shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.3.1 and 1107.5.3.2.

**1107.5.3.1 Accessible Units.** At least 10 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be accessible units.

**1107.5.3.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

**1107.5.4 Group I-2 Rehabilitation Facilities.** In hospitals and rehabilitation facilities of Group I-2 that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units within either that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be accessible units.

**1107.5.5 Group I-3.** In occupancies in Group I-3, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be accessible units.

**1107.6 Group R.** Occupancies in Group R shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1 through 1107.6.4.

**1107.6.1 Group R-1.** Group R-1 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1.1 through 1107.6.1.6.

**1107.6.1.1 Accessible units.** In occupancies in Group R-1, accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1. All facilities on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of accessible units. Accessible units shall be dispersed among the various classes of units, and shall provide choices of types of guest rooms, number of beds, and other amenities comparable to the choices provided to other guests. Where the minimum number of the dwelling units and sleeping units required to be accessible is not sufficient to allow for complete dispersion, accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be dispersed in the following priority: sleeping accommodation type, number of beds, and amenities. Roll-in showers provided in accessible units shall include a permanently mounted folding shower seat.

**TABLE 1107.6.1.1  
ACCESSIBLE DWELLING AND SLEEPING UNITS**

TOTAL NUMBER OF UNITS PROVIDED	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE UNITS ASSOCIATED WITH ROLL-IN SHOWERS	TOTAL NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE UNITS
1 to 25	0	1
26 to 50	0	2
51 to 75	1	4
76 to 100	1	5
101 to 150	2	7
151 to 200	2	8
201 to 300	3	10
301 to 400	4	12
401 to 500	4	13
501 to 1,000	1% of total	3% of total
Over 1,000	10 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000	30 plus 2 for each 100 over 1,000



**1107.6.1.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

**1107.6.1.3 Accessible beds.** In rooms or spaces having four or more beds, the number of accessible beds in each room shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1. If facilities for separate sexes are provided, accessible beds must be dispersed for both sexes.

**1107.6.1.4 Sleeping areas.** A clear floor space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided on both sides of the accessible bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

**Exception:** This requirement shall not apply where a single clear floor space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds.

**1107.6.1.5 Communication features.** In transient lodging facilities, dwelling units and sleeping units with accessible communication features shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.5 and shall comply with Section 1107.6.1.5.1 and with the requirements of ICC/ANSI A117.1 for accessible audible alarms and visual alarms.

**1107.6.1.5.1 Notification devices.** Visual notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visual alarm signal appliances. Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls and an electrical outlet complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.

**TABLE 1107.6.1.5  
DWELLING UNITS OR SLEEPING UNITS  
WITH ACCESSIBLE COMMUNICATION FEATURES**

TOTAL NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS OR SLEEPING UNITS PROVIDED	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS OR SLEEPING UNITS WITH ACCESSIBLE COMMUNICATION FEATURES
1 to 200	10% of the total, but no fewer than 1
201 to 500	15% of the total
Over 500	20% of the total

**1107.6.1.6 Vanity countertop space.** If vanity countertop space is provided in non-accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms, accessible comparable vanity countertop space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms. Vanity countertop space shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Sections 308 and 309.

**1107.6.2 Group R-2.** Type A and Type B units shall be provided in occupancies in Group R-2 in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.1 through 1107.6.2.4.

**1107.6.2.1 Type A units.** In buildings containing more than 10 dwelling units or sleeping units, at least 15 percent of the units shall be a Type A unit. In buildings containing more than 10 dwelling units or sleeping units, at least 1 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units or sleeping units shall be served by a roll-in shower that includes a permanently mounted folding shower seat, and shall be a Type A unit.

**Exceptions:**

1. The number of Type A units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with 1107.7.
2. Type A units may contain the following adaptable features:
  - a. kitchen and laundry appliances that do not have accessible controls;
  - b. refrigerator/freezers that do not have the required accessible freezer space; and
  - c. kitchen sink cabinets and countertops that are not accessible, but that can be removed without cutting the countertop or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors and structural elements.

**1107.6.2.2 Type B units.** Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

**1107.6.2.3 Communication features.** At least 2 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units or sleeping units shall be pre-wired as necessary to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 1004.

**1107.6.2.4 Dispersion.** Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units, Type A units and Type B units shall be dispersed among the various classes of sleeping accommodations.

**1107.6.3 Group R-3.** In occupancies in Group R-3 where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single

structure, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with 1107.7.

**1107.6.4 Group R-4.** Group R-4 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.6.4.1 and 1107.6.4.2.

**1107.6.4.1 Accessible units.** At least one of the dwelling or sleeping units shall be an accessible unit.

**1107.6.4.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

**Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with 1107.7.

**1107.7 General exceptions.** Where specifically permitted by Sections 1107.5 or 1107.6, the required number of Type A and Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Sections 1107.7.1 through 1107.7.5.

**1107.7.1 Buildings without elevator service.** Where no elevator service is provided in a building, only the dwelling units and sleeping units that are located on stories indicated in Sections 1107.7.1.1 and 1107.7.1.2 are required to be Type A and Type B units. The number of Type A units shall be determined in accordance with Section 1107.6.2.

**1107.7.1.1 One story with Type B units required.** At least one story containing dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence shall be provided with an accessible entrance from the exterior of the building and all units intended to be occupied as a residence on that story shall be Type B units.

**1107.7.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units.** On all other stories that have a building entrance in proximity to arrival points intended to serve units on that story, as indicated in 2.1 and 2.2, all dwelling units and sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence served by that entrance on that story shall be Type B units.

- 2.1 Where the slopes of the undisturbed site measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet of the planned entrance are 10% or less, and
- 2.2 Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet of the planned entrance are 10% or less.

- 2.3 Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest arrival point shall be used unless that arrival point serves the story required by Section 1107.7.1.1.

**1107.7.2 Multistory units.** A multistory dwelling or sleeping unit which is not provided with elevator service is not required to be a Type B unit. Where a multistory unit is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for a Type B unit, and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.

**1107.7.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units.** Where elevator service in the building provides an accessible route only to the lowest story containing dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, only the units on that story which are intended to be occupied as a residence are required to be Type B units.

**1107.7.4 Site impracticability.** On a site with multiple non-elevator buildings, the number of units required by Section 1107.7.1 to be Type B units is permitted to be reduced to a percentage which is equal to the percentage of the entire site having grades, prior to development, which are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 1107.7.1 on the site are Type B units, and
2. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where the slope between the building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater than 8.33 percent, are Type B units, and
3. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less, are Type B units, and
4. Units served by an elevator in accordance with 1107.7.3 are Type B units.

**1107.7.5 Base flood elevation.** The required number of Type A and Type B units shall not apply to a site where the lowest floor or the lowest structural building members of non-elevator buildings are required to be at or above the base floor elevation resulting in:

1. A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and
2. A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the primary entrances, the closest arrival point shall be used.

## **SECTION 1108A SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES**

**1108.1 General.** In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, the requirements of Sections 1108.2 through 1108.5.5.2 shall apply to specific occupancies.

**1108.2 Assembly area seating.** Assembly areas with fixed seating shall comply with Sections 1108.2.1 through 1108.2.5.2. Dining areas shall comply with Sections 1108.2.6 through 1108.2.6.2.

**1108.2.1 Services.** Services and facilities provided in areas not required to be accessible shall be provided on an accessible level and shall be accessible.

**1108.2.2 Wheelchair spaces.** In theaters, bleachers, grandstands and other fixed seating assembly areas, accessible wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2. At least one seat for a companion shall be provided beside each wheelchair space.

**TABLE 1108.2.2  
ACCESSIBLE WHEELCHAIR SPACES**

CAPACITY OF SEATING IN ASSEMBLY AREAS	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES
4 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 100	4
101 to 300	5
301 to 500	6
Over 500	6, plus 1 additional space for each total seating capacity increase of 100, or portion thereof, over 500

**1108.2.3 Lines of sight and dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall provide lines of sight complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 and shall be dispersed in accordance with Section 1108.2.3. Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed to the minimum required number of

wheelchair spaces in accordance with Table 1108.2.2. Once the minimum required number of wheelchair spaces has been met, further dispersion is not required. The location of wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed in accordance with Sections 1108.2.3.1, 1108.2.3.2, and 1108.2.3.3. Where the minimum required number of wheelchair spaces is not sufficient to allow for complete dispersion, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed in the following priority: dispersion by type of seating area, horizontal dispersion, and dispersion for variety of distance from the event.

**1108.2.3.1 Dispersion by type.** Where there are seating areas, each having distinct services or amenities, wheelchair space seating locations shall be provided within each seating area. In stadium style assembly spaces for viewing motion picture projections, the wheelchair space seating locations shall be dispersed in the tiered seating area.

**1108.2.3.2 Horizontal dispersion.** Wheelchair space seating locations shall be dispersed horizontally to provide viewing options. Seating locations shall be separated by a minimum of 10 intervening seats.

**1108.2.3.3 Dispersion for variety of distance from the event.** Wheelchair space seating locations shall be dispersed at a variety of distances from the event to provide viewing options. Seating locations shall be separated by a minimum of 5 intervening rows.

**Exceptions:**

1. For other than spaces utilized for viewing motion picture projections, in assembly spaces with 300 seats or fewer, dispersion for a variety of distances from the event is not required if the wheelchair space seating locations are within the front fifty percent of the total rows.
2. In spaces utilized for viewing motion picture projections, in assembly spaces with 300 seats or fewer, dispersion for a variety of distances from the event is not required if the wheelchair space seating locations are within the center fifty percent of the total rows.
3. In bleachers, wheelchair space seating locations shall not be required to be provided in rows other than rows at points of entry to bleacher seating.

**1108.2.4 Assistive listening systems.** Stadiums, theaters, auditoriums, lecture halls and similar fixed seating assembly areas where audible communications are integral to the use of the space shall have an assistive listening system if the area is equipped with an audio amplification system or the area has a capacity of 50 or more persons.

**1108.2.4.1 Receivers.** Receivers shall be provided for assistive listening systems in accordance with Table 1108.2.4.1. Twenty-five percent of receivers, but not less than two, shall be hearing aid compatible.

**TABLE 1108.2.4.1**

**RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS**

<b>CAPACITY OF SEATING IN ASSEMBLY AREA</b>	<b>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF RECEIVERS</b>	<b>MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED RECEIVERS REQUIRED TO BE HEARING-AID COMPATIBLE</b>
50 or less	2	2
51 to 200	2 plus 1 per 25 seats, or fraction thereof, over 50 seats	2
201 to 500	2 plus 1 per 25 seats, or fraction thereof, over 50 seats	1 per 4 receivers, or fraction thereof
501 to 1,000	20 plus 1 per 33 seats, or fraction thereof, over 500 seats	1 per 4 receivers, or fraction thereof
1,001 to 2,000	35 plus 1 per 50 seats, or fraction thereof, over 1,000 seats	1 per 4 receivers, or fraction thereof
2,001 and over	55 plus 1 per 100 seats, or fraction thereof, over 2,000 seats	1 per 4 receivers, or fraction thereof

**1108.2.5 Designated aisle seats.** Designated aisle seats complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided in all assembly areas.

**1108.2.5.1 Number.** Five percent of the total number of aisle seats provided shall be designated aisle seats.

**1108.2.5.2 Location.** At least one of each four required designated aisle seats, or fraction thereof, shall be located on an accessible route. All other required designated aisle seats shall be the aisle seats located closest to accessible routes.

**1108.2.6 Dining areas.** In dining areas, the total floor area allotted for seating and tables shall be accessible.

**Exception:** In buildings without elevators, an accessible route to a mezzanine seating area is not required, provided that the mezzanine contains less than 25 percent of the total area and the same services are provided in the accessible area.

**1108.2.6.1 Fixed or built-in seating or tables.** Where fixed or built-in seating or tables are provided in dining areas, at least 5 percent, but not less than one such seat or table, shall be accessible and be distributed throughout the facility.

**1108.2.6.2 Dining counters.** In establishments serving food or drink for consumption where the only seating is at counters exceeding 34 inches (864 mm) in height, a 60-inch (1524 mm) minimum length portion of the counter shall be accessible.

**1108.3 Self-service storage facilities.** Self-service storage facilities shall provide accessible individual self-storage spaces in accordance with Table 1108.3.

**TABLE 1108.3  
ACCESSIBLE SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITIES**

TOTAL SPACES IN FACILITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE SPACES
1 to 200	5%, but not less than 1
Over 200	10, plus 2% of total number of units over 200

**1108.3.1 Dispersion.** Accessible individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of space provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the number of required accessible spaces, the number of accessible spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 1108.3. Accessible spaces are permitted to be dispersed in a single building of a multibuilding facility.

**1108.4 Judicial facilities.**

**1108.4.1 General.** Judicial facilities shall comply with Sections 1108.4.2 through 1108.4.4.2.

**1108.4.2 Courtrooms.** Each courtroom shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 806.

**1108.4.3 Holding cells.** Where provided, central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with Section 1108.4.3.

**1108.4.3.1 Central holding cells.** Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, one of each type shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805. Where central-holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one cell complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.2 shall be provided.

**1108.4.3.2 Court-floor holding cells.** Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, each courtroom shall be served by one cell of each type complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.2. Cells may serve more than one courtroom.

**1108.4.4 Visiting areas.** Visiting areas shall comply with Section 1108.4.4.

**1108.4.4.1 Cubicles and counters.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 904.3. Knee and toe space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 306 shall be provided under the



counter. A clear floor or ground space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 305 shall be positioned for a forward approach to the counter.

**Exception:** This requirement shall not apply to the detainee side of cubicles or counters in non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells.

**1108.4.4.2 Partitions.** Where solid partitions or security glazing separates visitors from detainees, at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 904.6.

## **1108.5 Detention and correctional facilities.**

**1108.5.1 General.** Buildings, facilities, or portions thereof, in which people are detained for penal or correction purposes, or in which the liberty of the inmates is restricted for security reasons shall comply with Section 1108.5.

**1108.5.2 General. Holding cells and general housing cells.** General holding cells and general housing cells shall be provided in accordance with Section 1108.5.2.

**Exception:** Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by the Attorney General.

**1108.5.2.1 Cells.** At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of cells in a facility shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.2.

**1108.5.2.2 Beds.** In cells having more than 25 beds, 5 percent of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.2.

**1108.5.2.3 Communication features.** At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.3.

**1108.5.2.4 Overlap.** Cells complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.2 shall not be used to satisfy the minimum number of cells required to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.3.

**1108.5.3 Special holding cells and special housing cells.** Where special holding cells or special housing cells are provided, at least one cell serving each purpose shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 805.2. Cells subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification, and medical isolation.

**Exception:** Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by the Attorney General.

**1108.5.4 Medical care facilities.** Patient bedrooms or cells required to comply with Section 1107.5 shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with Section 1108.5.3.

**1108.5.5 Visiting areas.** Visiting areas shall comply with Section 1108.5.5.

**1108.5.5.1 Cubicles and counters.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 904.3 on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides. Knee and toe space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 306 shall be provided under the counter. A clear floor or ground space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 305 shall be positioned for a forward approach to the counter.

**Exception:** This requirement shall not apply to the inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding or housing cells required to comply with Section 1108.5.

**1108.5.5.2 Partitions.** Where solid partitions or security glazing separates visitors from detainees, at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with Section 904.6.

## **SECTION 1109A OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES**

**1109.1 General.** Accessible building features and facilities shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.2 through 1109.22.

**Exception:** Type A and Type B dwelling units shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.2 Toilet and bathing facilities.** Toilet rooms and bathing facilities shall be accessible. Where a floor level is not required to be connected by an accessible route, the only toilet rooms or bathing facilities provided within the facility shall not be located on the inaccessible floor. At least one of each type of fixture, element, control or dispenser in each accessible toilet room and bathing facility shall be accessible.

### **Exceptions:**

1. In toilet rooms or bathing facilities accessed only through a private office, not for common or public use, and intended for use by a single occupant, any of the following alternatives are allowed:
  - 1.1. Doors are permitted to swing into the clear floor space provided the door swing can be reversed to meet the requirements in ICC/ANSI A117.1.
  - 1.2. The height requirements for the water closet in ICC/ANSI A117.1 are not applicable.

- 1.3. Grab bars are not required to be installed in a toilet room, provided that the reinforcement has been installed in the walls and located so as to permit the installation of such grab bars.
- 1.4. The requirement for height, knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory.
2. This section is not applicable to toilet and bathing facilities that serve dwelling units or sleeping units that are not required to be accessible by Section 1107.
3. Where multiple single-user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are clustered at a single location and contain fixtures in excess of the minimum required number of plumbing fixtures, at least 5 percent, but not less than one room for each use at each cluster, shall be accessible.
4. Toilet room fixtures that are in excess of those required by the plumbing code and that are designated for use by children in day care and primary school occupancies.

**1109.2.1 Unisex toilet and bathing rooms.** In assembly and mercantile occupancies, an accessible unisex toilet room shall be provided where an aggregate of six or more male and female water closets are required. In buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the assembly or mercantile occupancy shall be used to determine the unisex toilet room requirement. In recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an accessible unisex bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in an occupancy.

**Exception:** Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture, a unisex bathing room is not required.

**1109.2.1.1 Standard.** Unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with this section and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.2.1.2 Unisex toilet rooms.** Unisex toilet rooms shall include only one water closet and only one lavatory. A unisex bathing room in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.3 shall be considered a unisex toilet room.

**Exception:** A separate-sex toilet room containing not more than two water closets without urinals, or containing only one water closet and one urinal shall be considered a unisex toilet room.

**1109.2.1.3 Unisex bathing rooms.** Unisex bathing rooms shall include only one shower or bathtub fixture. Unisex bathing rooms shall also include one water closet and one lavatory. Where storage facilities are provided for separate-sex bathing rooms, accessible storage facilities shall be provided for unisex bathing rooms.

**1109.2.1.4 Location.** Unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall be located on an accessible route. Unisex toilet rooms shall be located not more than one story above or below separate-sex toilet rooms. The accessible route from any separate-sex toilet room to a unisex toilet room shall not exceed 500 feet (152 m).

**1109.2.1.5 Prohibited location.** In passenger transportation facilities and airports, the accessible route from separate-sex toilet rooms to a unisex toilet room shall not pass through security checkpoints.

**1109.2.1.6 Clear floor space.** Where doors swing into a unisex toilet or bathing room, a clear floor space not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided, within the room, beyond the area of the door swing.

**1109.2.1.7 Privacy.** Doors to unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall be securable from within the room.

**1109.2.2 Water closet compartment.** Where water closet compartments are provided in a toilet room or bathing facility, at least one wheelchair-accessible compartment shall be provided. Where the combined total water closet compartments and urinals provided in a toilet room or bathing facility is six or more, at least one ambulatory-accessible water closet compartment shall be provided in addition to the wheelchair-accessible compartment. Wheelchair-accessible and ambulatory-accessible compartments shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.3 Portable toilet and bathing rooms.** Where multiple single-user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one toilet unit or bathing unit at each cluster, shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**Exception:** Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site.

**1109.4 Sinks.** Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, provided in accessible spaces shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Mop or service sinks are not required to be accessible.
2. Sinks designated for use by children in day care and primary school occupancies.

**1109.5 Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars.** Where kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars are provided in accessible spaces or rooms, they shall be accessible in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.6 Drinking fountains.** On floors where drinking fountains are provided, at least 50 percent, but not less than one fountain, shall be accessible.

**1109.7 Water coolers.** Where water coolers are provided, at least 50 percent, but not less than one, of such units provided on each floor shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.8 Elevators.** Passenger elevators on an accessible route shall be accessible and comply with Section 3001.3.

**1109.9 Lifts.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall not be a part of a required accessible route in new construction.

**Exceptions:** Platform (wheelchair) lifts are permitted for:

1. An accessible route to a performing area in occupancies in Group A.
2. An accessible route to wheelchair spaces required by Section 1108.2.2.
3. An accessible route to spaces that are not open to the general public with an occupant load of not more than five.
4. An accessible route within a dwelling or sleeping unit.
5. An accessible route to wheelchair seating spaces located in outdoor dining terraces in A-5 occupancies where the means of egress from the dining terraces to a public way is open to the outdoors.

**1109.10 Storage.** Where fixed or built-in storage elements such as cabinets, shelves, medicine cabinets, closets, and drawers are provided in required accessible spaces, at least one of each type shall contain storage space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.10.1 Lockers.** Where lockers are provided in accessible spaces, at least five percent, but not less than one, of each type shall be accessible.

**1109.10.2 Shelving and display units.** Self-service shelves and display units in mercantile occupancies and shelving in stack areas of libraries shall be located on an accessible route. Such shelving and display units shall not be required to comply with reach-range provisions.

**1109.10.3 Coat hooks and folding shelves.** Where coat hooks or folding shelves are provided in inaccessible toilet rooms, toilet compartments, or in dressing, fitting or locker rooms, at least one of each type shall be provided in accessible toilet rooms, toilet compartments, and dressing, fitting and locker rooms. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in dressing, fitting, or locker rooms without individual compartments, at least one of each type shall be accessible.

**1109.11 Detectable warnings.** Passenger transit platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or guards shall have a detectable warning.

**Exception:** Detectable warnings are not required at bus stops.

**1109.12 Assembly area seating.** Assembly areas with fixed seating in every occupancy shall comply with Section 1108.2 for accessible seating and assistive listening devices.

**1109.13 Dining surfaces and work surfaces.** Where dining surfaces for the consumption of food and drink are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the seating and standing spaces at the dining surfaces shall be accessible. Where work surfaces are provided for use by other than employees, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the work surfaces shall be accessible.

**Exceptions:**

1. Sales counters and service counters shall not be required to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 902.
2. Check-writing surfaces provided at check-out aisles not required to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 904.2 shall not be required to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 902.

**1109.13.1 Dispersion.** Accessible fixed or built-in seating at tables, counters or work surfaces shall be distributed throughout the space or facility containing such elements.

**1109.14 Customer service facilities.** Customer service facilities shall provide for accessible features in accordance with Sections 1109.14.1 through 1109.14.5.

**1109.14.1 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms.** Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms, or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall be accessible.

**1109.14.2 Check-out aisles.** Where check-out aisles are provided, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.14.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.14.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, accessible check-out aisles shall also be dispersed. Traffic control devices, security devices and turnstiles located in accessible check-out aisles or lanes shall be accessible.

Exception: Where the area of the selling space is less than 5,000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>), only one check-out aisle is required to be accessible.

**TABLE 1109.14.2  
ACCESSIBLE CHECK-OUT AISLES**

TOTAL CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION	MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION
--	---

1 to 4	1
5 to 8	2
9 to 15	3
Over 15	3, plus 20% of additional aisles

**1109.14.3 Point of sales and service counters.** Where counters are provided for sales or distribution of goods or services, at least one of each type provided shall be accessible. Where such counters are dispersed throughout the building or facility, the accessible counters shall also be dispersed.

**1109.14.4 Food service lines.** Food service lines shall be accessible. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but not less than one, of each type provided shall be accessible.

**1109.14.5 Queue and waiting lines.** Queue and waiting lines servicing accessible counters or check-out aisles shall be accessible.

**1109.15 Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware.** Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware intended for operation by the occupant, including switches that control lighting and ventilation, and electrical convenience outlets, in accessible spaces, along accessible routes or as parts of accessible elements shall be accessible.

**1109.15.1 Operable windows.** Where operable windows are provided in rooms that are required to be accessible in accordance with Sections 1107.5 and 1107.6, at least one window in each room shall be accessible and each required operable window shall be accessible.

**Exception:** Accessible windows are not required in bathrooms or kitchens.

**1109.16 Recreational facilities.** Recreational facilities shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1109.16.1 and 1109.16.2.

**1109.16.1 Groups R-2 and R-3.** Where recreational facilities are provided serving accessible dwelling or sleeping units in occupancies in Groups R-2 and R-3 as applicable in Section 101.2, 25 percent, but not less than one of each type in each occupancy group of such facilities, shall be accessible. Every recreational facility of each type on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of each type that are required to be accessible.

**1109.16.2 Other occupancies.** Where recreational facilities are provided in other occupancies, each facility shall be accessible.

**1109.17 Mailboxes.** Where mailboxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but not fewer than one, of each type shall be accessible. In residential facilities, where mailboxes are

provided for each dwelling unit, accessible mailboxes shall be provided for each dwelling unit required to be a Type A dwelling unit.

**1109.18 Two-way communication systems.** Where a two-way communication system is provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.19 Laundry equipment.** Where three or fewer washing machines or clothes dryers are provided in spaces required to be accessible, at least one of each type shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Where more than three washing machines or clothes dryers are provided, at least two of each shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.20 Vending machines and similar equipment.** In restaurants and cafeterias, spaces for vending machines and similar equipment shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1109.21 Automatic teller machines and fare machines.** Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection, or adjustment machines are provided, at least one machine of each type at each location where such machines are provided shall be accessible. Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type shall be accessible.

**1109.22 Depositories, vending machines, change machines, and fuel-dispensing machines.** Where provided, at least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine, and fuel-dispensing machine shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 309.

**Exception:** Drive-up-only depositories shall not be required to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Section 309.

## **SECTION 1110A SIGNAGE**

**1110.1 Signs.** Required accessible elements shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility at the following locations:

1. Accessible parking spaces required by Section 1106.1 except where the total number of parking spaces provided is five or less.
2. Accessible passenger loading zones.
3. Accessible areas of refuge required by Section 1003.2.13.5.



4. Accessible rooms where multiple single-user toilet or bathing rooms are clustered at a single location.
5. Accessible entrances where not all entrances are accessible.
6. Accessible check-out aisles where not all aisles are accessible. The sign, where provided, shall be above the check-out aisle in the same location as the check-out aisle number or type of check-out identification.
7. Unisex toilet and bathing rooms.
8. Accessible dressing, fitting, and locker rooms where not all such rooms are accessible.
9. Required accessible portable toilets and bathing facilities.

**1110.2 Permanent designations.** Where exterior signs are provided as permanent designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces at the door of the space they serve, the signs shall be tactile. Where interior signs are provided as permanent designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the signs shall be tactile. Where pictograms are provided as permanent designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall have tactile text descriptors. Signage shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1110.3 Directional signage.** Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility.

1. Inaccessible building entrances.
2. Inaccessible public toilets and bathing facilities.
3. Elevators not serving an accessible route.
4. At each separate-sex toilet and bathing room indicating the location of the nearest unisex toilet or bathing room where provided in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.

**1110.4 Directional and informational signs.** Signs which provide direction to, or information about, permanent interior spaces of the site and facilities shall contain visual characters complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**Exception:** Building directories, personnel names, company or occupant names and logos, menus and temporary signs are not required to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1110.5 Other signs.** Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as follows:

1. In assembly areas required to comply with Section 1108.2.4, a sign notifying the general public of the availability of assistive listening systems shall be provided at ticket offices or similar locations and shall include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss.
2. In assembly areas required to comply with Section 1108.2.5, a sign notifying the general public of the availability of designated aisle seats shall be provided at ticket offices or similar locations.
3. A tactile sign, including raised letters and Braille, stating: EXIT, shall be provided at the following locations: doors to exit stairways, exit discharge doors from exit passageways, exit doors, and horizontal exit doors.
4. At exits and elevators serving a required accessible space, but not providing an approved accessible means of egress, visual and tactile signs shall be installed indicating the location of accessible means of egress.
5. Signs required to provide instructions in areas of refuge shall include visual and tactile characters.
6. At bus stops and terminals, signage must be provided in accordance with Section 1112.4.
7. At fixed transportation facilities and stations, signage must be provided in accordance with Sections 1113.2.2 through 1113.2.2.3.

## **SECTION 1111A TELEPHONES**

**1111.1 General.** Where public pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, or other types of public telephones are provided, accessible public telephones shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1111.2 through 1111.5 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered two or more adjacent telephones.

**1111.2 Wheelchair accessible telephones.** Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair accessible telephones complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 1111.2.

TABLE 1111.2

NUMBER OF TELEPHONES PROVIDED ON A FLOOR OR LEVEL	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR- ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES
1 or more single units	1 per floor, level, or exterior site
1 bank	1 per floor, level, or

	exterior site
2 or more banks	1 per bank <sup>a</sup>

- a. At least one telephone per floor shall provide a forward approach complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1, except for exterior installations where dial-tone-first service is available.

**1111.3 Volume controls.** All public telephones shall have volume controls complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1111.4 TTYs.** TTYs complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1111.4.1 through 1111.4.9.

**1111.4.1 Bank requirements.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY shall be provided at that bank.

**Exception:** TTYs are not required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.

**1111.4.2 Floor requirement.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

**1111.4.3 Building requirement.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in that building.

**1111.4.4 Site requirement.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on an exterior site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.

**1111.4.5 Rest stops, emergency road stops, and service plazas.** Where a public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency road stop or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.

**1111.4.6 Hospitals.** Where a public pay telephone is provided in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room, or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each such location.

**1111.4.7 Transportation facilities.** Transportation facilities shall be provided with TTYs in accordance with Section 1113.2.5 in addition to the TTYs required by Sections 1111.4.1 through 1111.4.4.

**1111.4.8 Signs.** Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. Such signs shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY.

**1111.4.9 Detention and correctional facilities.** In detention and correctional facilities, where a public pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, then at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.

**1111.5 Shelves for portable TTYs.** Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## **SECTION 1112A BUS STOPS AND TERMINALS**

**1112.1 General.** Bus stops and terminals shall comply with Sections 1112.2 through 1112.5.

**1112.2 Bus stop pads.** Where new bus stop pads are constructed at bus stops, bays or other areas where a lift or ramp is to be deployed, they shall comply with Sections 1112.2.1 through 1112.2.4.

**1112.2.1 Surface.** Bus stop pads shall have a firm, stable surface.

**1112.2.2 Dimensions.** Bus stop pads shall have a clear length of 96 inches (2438 mm) minimum measured from the curb or vehicle roadway edge and a clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum measured parallel to the vehicle roadway to the maximum extent allowed by legal or site constraints.

**1112.2.3 Connection.** Bus stop pads shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with Section 1104.

**1112.2.4 Slope.** The slope of the bus stop pad parallel to the roadway shall, to the extent practicable, be the same as the roadway. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:48 perpendicular to the roadway is allowed.

**1112.3 Bus shelters.** Where provided, new or replaced bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Such shelters shall be connected by an accessible route to the boarding area required by 1112.2.

**1112.4 Signs.** New bus route identification signs shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**Exception:** Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay are not required to comply with this requirement.

**1112.5 Bus stop siting.** Bus stop sites shall be chosen such that, to the maximum extent practicable, the areas where lifts or ramps are to be deployed comply with Sections 1112.2 and 1112.3.

## **SECTION 1113A FIXED TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS**

**1113.1 General.** Fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 1113.2 through 1113.4.

**1113.2 New construction.** New stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity bus, intercity rail, high speed rail and other fixed guide-way systems shall comply with Sections 1113.2.1 through 1113.2.9.

**1113.2.1 Station entrances.** Where different entrances to a station serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one entrance serving each group or route shall comply with Section 1104 and ICC/ANSI A117.1. Accessible entrances shall, to the maximum extent practicable, coincide with those used by the majority of the general public. In below ground subway stations, at least one entrance to each station shall comply with Section 1104 and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1113.2.2 Signs.** Signage in fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with Sections 1113.2.2.1 through 1113.2.2.3.

**1113.2.2.1 Tactile signs.** Where signs are provided at entrances to stations identifying the station or the entrance, or both, at least one sign at each entrance shall be tactile and shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Such signs shall be placed in uniform locations at entrances within the transit system to the maximum extent practicable.

**Exception:** Where the station has no defined entrance but signs are provided, the tactile signs shall be placed in a central location.

**1113.2.2.2 Identification signs.** Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sightlines of a standing or sitting passenger from within the train on both sides when not obstructed by another train.

**1113.2.2.3 Informational signs.** Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station which are located on boarding areas, platforms, or mezzanines shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1. A minimum of one tactile sign identifying the specific station and complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. Signs covered by this provision shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the transit system.

**Exception:** Where sign space is limited, track numbers, train destination names, directions to the ticket office, and information essential to using the transit system shall have a character height of

3 inches (76 mm) minimum and shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Specific exit street names, directional information, and other information not essential to use of the transit system shall have a character height of 1.5 inches (38 mm) minimum and shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1113.2.3 Fare machines.** Self-service fare vending, collection and adjustment machines shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Where self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided for the use of the general public, at least one accessible machine of each type provided shall be provided at each accessible point of entry or exit.

**1113.2.4 Rail-to-platform height.** In stations covered by this section, rail-to-platform height shall be coordinated with the floor height of new vehicles so that the vertical difference, measured when the vehicle is at rest, is within plus or minus 0.625 inch (15.9 mm) under normal passenger load conditions. For rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, high speed rail, and intercity rail systems in new stations, the horizontal gap, measured when the new vehicle is at rest, shall be 3 inches (76 mm) maximum. For slow-moving automated guide-way “people mover” transit systems, the horizontal gap in new stations shall be 1 inch (25.4 mm) maximum.

**Exceptions:**

1. For existing vehicles operating in new light rail, commuter rail, high speed rail, and intercity rail stations, the maximum vertical difference with respect to the new platform shall be plus or minus 1.5 inches (38 mm).
2. In light rail, commuter rail and intercity rail systems where it is not operationally or structurally feasible to meet the horizontal gap or vertical difference requirements, mini-high platforms, car-borne or platform-mounted lifts, ramps or bridge plates, or similar manually deployed devices meeting the applicable requirements of 36 CFR Part 1192, or 49 CFR Part 38 shall suffice.

**1113.2.5 TTYs.** Where a public pay telephone is provided in a transit facility (as defined by the Department of Transportation) at least one public TTY complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided in the station. Where one or more public pay telephones serve a particular entrance to a bus or rail station, at least one TTY telephone complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 shall be provided to serve that entrance.

**1113.2.6 Track crossings.** Where it is necessary to cross tracks to reach boarding platforms, the route surface shall be level with the rail top at the outer edge and between the rails, except for a 2.5 inch (64 mm) maximum gap on the inner edge of each rail to permit passage of wheel flanges. Where gap reduction is not practicable, an above-grade or below-grade accessible route shall be provided.

**1113.2.7 Public address systems.** Where public address systems are provided to convey information to the public in terminals, stations or other fixed facilities, a means of conveying the same or equivalent information to persons with hearing loss or who are deaf shall be provided.

**1113.2.8 Clocks.** Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

**1113.2.9 Escalators.** Where provided in below-grade stations, escalators shall have a clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) minimum.

**1113.3 Existing facilities: key stations.** Rapid, light and commuter rail key stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in Subpart C of 49 CFR Part 37, and existing intercity rail stations shall comply with Sections 1113.3.1 through 1113.3.3.

**1113.3.1 Accessible route.** At least one accessible route from an accessible entrance to those areas necessary for use of the transportation system shall be provided. The accessible route shall include the features specified in Section 1113.2, except that the escalators shall not be required to comply with Section 1113.2.9. Where technical infeasibility in existing stations requires the accessible route to lead from the public way to a paid area of the transit system, an accessible fare collection machine complying with Section 1113.2.3 shall be provided along such accessible route.

**1113.3.2 Rail-to-platform height.** In light rail and commuter rail key stations, the platform or a portion thereof and the vehicle floor shall be coordinated so that the vertical difference, measured when the vehicle is at rest, is within plus or minus 1.5 inches (38 mm) under normal passenger load conditions, and the horizontal gap, measured when the vehicle is at rest, is 3 inches (76 mm) maximum for at least one door of each vehicle or car required to be accessible by 49 CFR Part 37.

**Exceptions:**

1. Existing vehicles retrofitted to meet the requirements of 49 CFR Part 37.93 (one-car-per-train rule) shall be coordinated with the platform such that, for at least one door, the vertical difference between the vehicle floor and the platform, measured when the vehicle is at rest with 50 percent normal passenger capacity, is within plus or minus 2 inches (51 mm) and the horizontal gap is 4 inches (102 mm) maximum.
2. Where it is not structurally or operationally feasible to meet the horizontal gap or vertical difference requirements, mini-high platforms, car-borne, or platform mounted lifts, ramps or bridges plates, or similar manually deployed devices, meeting the applicable requirements of 36 CFR Part 1192 shall suffice.

**1113.3.3 Direct connections.** New direct connections to commercial, retail or residential facilities shall, to the maximum extent feasible, have an accessible route complying with Section 5062 of the Existing Buildings Code from the point of connection to boarding platforms and transportation system elements used by the public. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and transportation system elements used by the public.

**1113.4 Existing facilities: alterations.** For the purpose of complying with Section 5062 of the Existing Buildings Code, an area of primary function shall be as defined by applicable provisions of 49 CFR Part 37.43(c) or 28 CFR Part 36.403.

## **SECTION 1114A REFERENCED STANDARD**

**1114.1 Modification.** ICC/ANSI A117.1, as referenced in Section 1101.2, shall be modified as indicated in the following:

1. *Revise Section 308.3.1 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**308.3.1 Unobstructed.** Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the floor or ground.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Existing elements shall be permitted at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor or ground.
2. Where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs, operable parts of fuel-dispensers shall be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the surface of the vehicular way.

*Delete Section 602.2 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 and substitute the following:*

**602.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space.** Drinking fountains shall have a clear floor or ground space complying with Section 305 positioned for a forward approach and centered on the unit. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.

**Exception:** A parallel approach complying with Section 305 shall be permitted at drinking fountains for children's use where the spout is 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground and is 3 ½ inches (90 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.

*Revise Section 602.5 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**602.5 Spout Location.** Drinking fountains shall have the spout 15 inches (380 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.

*Revise Section 604.6 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**604.6 Flush Controls.** Flush controls shall be hand-operated or automatic. Hand-operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated flush controls shall be located on the



open (wide) side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with Section 604.8.2.

*Add new Section 604.9 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**604.9** Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use. Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall comply with Section 604.9.

**604.9.1 Location.** The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be centered in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in Section 604.8.2.

**604.9.2 Clear Floor Space.** Clearance around a water closet shall comply with Section 604.3.

**604.9.3 Height.** The height of water closets shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum to 17 inches (430 mm) maximum measured to the top of the toilet seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

**604.9.4 Grab Bars.** Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 604.5.

**604.9.5 Flush Controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.4 and shall be installed 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**604.9.6 Dispensers.** Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Section 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor. There shall be a clearance of 1 ½ inches (38 mm) minimum below the grab bar. Dispensers shall not be of a type that control delivery or that do not allow continuous paper flow.

**604.9.7 Toilet compartments.** Toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.8.

*Revise Section 608.4 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**608.4 Seats.** A folding or non-folding seat shall be provided in transfer-type shower compartments. Seats shall comply with Section 610.

*Revise Section 608.6 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**608.6 Shower Unit.** A shower spray unit shall be provided, with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum, that can be used as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower. In transfer type showers, the controls and shower unit shall be on the control wall within 15 inches (380

mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the shower opening. In roll-in-type showers, shower spray units mounted on the back wall shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the side wall. If an adjustable-height shower head mounted on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall not obstruct the use of grab bars.

*Add new Section 706.4 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**706.4 Receiver Jacks.** Receivers required for use with an assistive listening system shall include a 1/8 inch (3 mm) standard mono jack. Where other jack types are used, adapters shall be provided to comply with this provision.

*Add new Section 706.5 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**706.5 Receiver Hearing-Aid Compatibility.** Receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible shall interface with telecoils in hearing aids through the provision of neck loops.

*Add new Section 706.6 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**706.6 Sound Pressure Level.** Assistive listening systems shall be capable of providing a sound pressure level of 110 dB minimum and 118 dB maximum with a dynamic range on the volume control of 50 dB.

*Add new Section 706.7 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**706.7 Signal-to-Noise Ratio.** The signal-to-noise ratio for internally generated noise in assistive listening systems shall be 18 dB minimum.

*Add new Section 706.8 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**706.8 Peak Clipping Level.** Peak clipping shall not exceed 18 dB of clipping relative to the peaks of speech.

*Add new Section 707.5.3.1 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**707.5.3.1 User control.** Audible instruction shall be capable of being repeated or interrupted. There shall be a volume control for the audible instruction function.

**Exception:** Speech output for any single function shall be permitted to be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected.

*Revise Section 707.5.6 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**707.5.6 Receipts and verification.** Where a receipt is available and is requested, audible presentation of the transaction information provided on the receipt shall be provided.

*Add new Section 708 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**708 Two-Way Communication Systems.**

**708.1 General.** Two-way communication systems shall comply with Section 708.

**708.2 Audible and Visual Indicators.** The system shall provide both visual and audible signals.

**708.3 Handsets.** Handset cords, if provided, shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to two-way communication systems provided at inaccessible entrances.

**708.4 Residential Dwelling Unit Communication Systems.** Communication systems between a residential dwelling unit and a site, building, or floor entrance shall comply with Section 708.4.

**708.4.1 Common Use or Public Use System Interface.** The common use or public use system interface shall include the capability of supporting voice and TTY communication with the residential dwelling unit interface.

**708.4.2 Residential Dwelling Unit Interface.** Residential dwelling unit system interface shall include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the common use or public use system interface.

*Revise Section 802.1 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**802.1 General.** Wheelchair spaces, companion seats, and designated aisle seats in auditorium and assembly areas with fixed seating shall comply with Section 802.

*Revise Section 802.5 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**802.5 Approach.** One side of the wheelchair space shall adjoin an accessible route. Access to any wheelchair space shall not be through another adjoining wheelchair space.

*Revise Section 802.7 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**802.7 Companion Seats.** At least one seat for a companion shall be provided for each required wheelchair space. The companion seat shall be provided directly adjacent to the long side of each required wheelchair space. Individuals seated in companion seats shall be seated in the same row and shoulder-to-shoulder with the wheelchair user seated in the adjacent space. Companion seats shall be equivalent in quality, size, comfort, and amenities to the seating in the immediate area.

**Exception:** Companion seats shall be permitted to be movable.

*Delete Section 802.8 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 and substitute the following:*

**802.8 Lines of Sight.** Lines of sight to the screen, performance area, or playing field for spectators in wheelchair spaces shall comply with Section 802.8.

**802.8.1 Lines of sight over seated spectators.** Where spectators are expected to remain seated during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with 802.8.1.

**802.8.1.1 Lines of sight over heads.** Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of individuals seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of seated individuals in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

**802.8.1.2 Lines of sight between heads.** Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of individuals seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of seated individuals in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

**802.8.2 Lines of sight over standing spectators.** Where spectators are expected to stand during events, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of standing individuals in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

*Add new Section 802.9 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**802.9 Designated Aisle Seats.** Designated aisle seats shall comply with 802.9.

**802.9.1 Armrests.** Where armrests are provided on seating in the immediate area, folding or retractable armrests shall be provided on the aisle side of designated aisle seats.

**802.9.2. Identification.** Each designated aisle seat shall be identified by a sign or marker.

*Add new Section 805 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

## **805 Holding Cells and Housing Cells**

**805.1 General.** Holding cells and housing cells shall comply with Section 805.

**805.2 Features for People Using Wheelchairs or Other Mobility Aids.** Cells required to have features for people using wheelchairs or other mobility aids shall comply with Section 805.2.

**805.2.1 Wheelchair Turning Space.** Wheelchair turning space complying with Section 304 shall be provided within the cell.

**805.2.2 Benches.** Where benches are provided, at least one bench shall comply with Section 903.

**805.2.3 Beds.** Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

**805.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities.** Toilet facilities or bathing facilities that are provided as part of a cell shall comply with Section 603. Where provided, not less than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 603 through 610.

**805.3. Communication Features.** Cells required to have communication features shall comply with Section 805.3.

**805.3.1 Alarms.** Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visual alarms complying with Section 702 shall be provided.

**Exception:** This requirement shall not apply where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress.

**805.3.2 Telephones.** Telephones, where provided within cells, shall have volume controls complying with Section 704.3.

*Add new Section 806 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**General.** Courtrooms shall comply with Section 806.

**806.2 Turning Space.** Where provided, areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with 304.

**806.3 Clear Floor Space.** Each jury box and witness stand shall have, within its defined area, clear floor space complying with Section 305.

**Exception:** In alterations, wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where ramp or platform lift access poses a hazard by restricting or projecting into a means of egress required by the appropriate administrative authority.

**806.4 Judges' Benches and Courtroom Stations.** Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with Section 902.

*Revise Section 902 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

## **SECTION 902 DINING SURFACES AND WORK SURFACES**

*Revise Section 902.1 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**902.1 General.** Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with Section 902.

**Exception:** Dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use shall be permitted to comply with 902.5.

*Revise Section 902.2 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**902.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space.** Clear floor or ground space complying with Section 305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.

*Add new Section 902.5 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**902.5 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces for Children's Use.** Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use shall comply with Section 902.5.

**Exception:** Dining surfaces and work surfaces that are used primarily by children 5 years and younger shall not be required to comply with Section 902.5 where a clear floor or ground space complying with Section 305 positioned for a parallel approach is provided.

**902.5.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space.** A clear floor space complying with Section 305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided, except that knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted.

**902.5.2 Height.** The tops of tables and counters shall be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

*Add new Section 904.5 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**904.5 Self-Service Shelves and Dispensing Devices.** Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food, and beverages shall comply with Section 308.

*Add new Section 904.6 of ICC/ANSI A117.1 to read as follows:*

**904.6 Security Glazing.** Where counters or teller windows have security glazing to separate personnel from the public, a method to facilitate voice communication shall be provided. Telephone handset devices, if provided, shall comply with 704.3.

## **CHAPTER 12A INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT**

### **SECTION 1204A LIGHTING**

*Revise Section 1204.4 to read as follows:*

**1204.4 Stairway Illumination.** Stairways within dwelling units and exterior stairways serving a dwelling unit shall have an illumination level on tread runs of not less than 1 foot-candle (11 lux). Stairs in other occupancies shall be governed by Chapter 10.

## CHAPTER 16A STRUCTURAL DESIGN

### SECTION 1604A GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

*Add new Section 1604.1.1 to read as follows:*

**1604.1.1 Buildings erected before July 1, 1925:** In the alteration of buildings erected before July 1, 1925, the code official is authorized to allow a maximum reduction of 30 percent of the specified minimum live loads in Table 1607.1, with a minimum live load for other than residential buildings of 40 psf (1.92 kN/m<sup>2</sup>), provided official live load placards are posted showing this reduced live load.

### SECTION 1607A LIVE LOADS

*Revise Number 16 on Table 1607.1 to read as follows:*

**TABLE 1607.1  
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS AND MINIMUM  
CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS<sup>9</sup>**

Occupancy	Uniform (psf)	Conce ntrated (lbs.)
16. Garages (Passenger cars only)	50      Note a	
Top deck of exposed garage	50, plus snow loading in accordance with Section 1608	
Trucks and buses	See Section 1607.6	

*Add new Section 1607.14 to read as follows:*

**1607.14 Powered maintenance platforms.** The structural supports for powered maintenance platforms shall be designed in accordance with the requirements in Subpart F, §1910.66 of Occupational Safety and Health Administration Standards listed in Chapter 35.

### SECTION 1608A SNOW LOADS



*Add new Section 1608.1.1 to read as follows:*

**1608.1.1 Snow load for the District of Columbia.** The basic snow load for the District of Columbia, as shown in Figure 1608.2 shall be a minimum of 25 psf (1.20 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) plus drifting or 30 psf (1.44 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) equivalent uniform load, whichever is greater.

## **SECTION 1609A WIND LOADS**

*Revise Section 1609.1.2 to read as follows:*

**1609.1.2 Minimum wind loads.** The wind loads used in the design of the main wind-force-resisting system shall not be less than 20 pounds per square foot (0.958 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) multiplied by the area of the building or structure projected on a vertical plane normal to the wind direction. In the calculation of design wind loads for components and cladding for buildings, the algebraic sum of the pressures acting on opposite faces shall be taken into account. The design pressure for components and cladding of buildings shall not be less than 20 pounds per square foot (0.958 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) acting in either direction normal to the surface. The design force for open buildings and other structures shall not be less than 20 pounds per square foot (0.958 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) multiplied by the area,  $A_f$ .

**Exception:** The wind pressures on tanks, signs, chimneys, stacks, cooling towers, dish antennas, and similar exposed surfaces and their supporting frames shall be not less than 30 psf (1.436 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) of projected area.

## **CHAPTER 18A SOILS AND FOUNDATION**

### **SECTION 1805 FOOTINGS AND FOUNDATIONS**

*Revise Section 1805.2.1 to read as follows:*

**1805.2.1 Frost Protection.** Except where erected upon solid rock or otherwise protected from frost, foundation walls, piers and other permanent supports of all buildings and structures larger than 100 square feet (9.25 m<sup>2</sup>) in *area* or 10 feet (3048 mm) in *height* shall extend to a minimum depth below adjacent grade of 2 feet, six inches (762 mm):-

## **CHAPTER 24A GLASS AND GLAZING**

### **SECTION 2406A SAFETY GLAZING**

*Revise exceptions 1 and 2 under Section 2406.2 (6) to read as follows:*

**2406.2 Hazardous locations.** The following shall be considered specific hazardous locations requiring safety-glazing materials:

Exceptions:

1. Panels where there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and glazing.
2. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel adjacent to a door where the nearest exposed edge of the glazing is within a 24-inch (610 mm) arc of either vertical edge of the door in a closed position and where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the walking surface.
3. Glazing in walls perpendicular to the plane of the door in a closed position, other than the walls towards which the door swings when opened, in one- and two-family dwellings or within dwelling units in Use Group R-2.

## **CHAPTER 30A ELEVATOR AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS**

### **SECTION 3001A GENERAL**

*Add new Section 3001.5 to read as follows:*

**3001.5 Shop Drawings:** Shop drawings shall be submitted with the application to the code official bearing the signature and seal of the designer, manufacturer, or contractor who designed the system. For new construction, the include shop drawing stamp from the office of the architect/engineer of record with action noted before the work is begun. Shop drawings shall locate and specify:

1. Capacity and car speed of the installation;
2. Top and bottom over-travel;
3. Weight of the complete car;
4. Car-controlling device or mechanism;
5. Electrical protective devices, including automatic shutdown devices;
6. Existing and proposed types of fire suppression systems;
7. Type of limit switches or other terminal stopping devices;
8. Diameter of the sheaves;
9. Size, number and material of all wire ropes;
10. Type of over-speed governor and safety;
11. Overhead and pit clearances;
12. Type of buffers and manufacturer's number;
13. Thickness and quality of the machine slab or machine room floor;
14. Weight of the machine if mounted overhead;
15. Material, quality and spans of overhead supporting members;
16. Complete load reactions on building structural supporting members;

17. Construction of the machine room and hoistway enclosure including all HVAC equipment, hoistway landings with landing doors, where any or all parts are used, are to be repaired, or that may be affected;
18. Access provided for inspection and maintenance;
19. Location and dimensions of mazes, gates, guards, screens, and railings to control access and egress to manlifts;
20. Elevator electrical characteristics and configuration;
21. Construction requirements and temporary hoistway structural requirements, excluding construction means, methods, and techniques.

## **CHAPTER 31A SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

### **SECTION 3105A AWNINGS AND CANOPIES**

*Delete Sections 3105.1 through 3105.3 in their entirety and substitute the following:*

**3105.1.General.** Awnings or canopies shall comply with the requirements of this Section, other applicable Sections of this code, the DC Zoning Regulations, the DC Public Space Manual and other applicable requirements.

**3105.1.1 Permit.** A permit shall be obtained from the Code Official for the erection, repair, or replacement of any fixed awning, canopy, or hood and for any retractable awning located at the first story level and extending over the public street or over any portion of a court or yard beside a building serving as a passage from a required exit or exit discharge to a public street.

**Exemption.** A permit shall not be required for the erection, repair or replacement of fixed or retractable awnings projecting 40 inches (1016 mm) or less installed on buildings under the jurisdiction of the IRC, or for retractable awnings installed above the first story or where the awning does not project over the public street or over any court or yard serving as a passage from a required exit to a public street.

**3105.2 Design and construction.** Awnings and canopies shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind or other lateral loads and live loads as required by Chapter 16 with due allowance for shape, open construction and similar features that relieve the pressures or loads. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration. Awnings shall have frames of noncombustible material and shall be either fixed or retractable. Canopies shall have rigid frames of noncombustible material. Coverings shall be flame resistant in accordance with NFPA 701 or shall have a flame spread rating not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

**3105.3 Fixed or permanent awnings.** The minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any fixed or permanent awning shall be 8 feet (2438 mm). Fixed or permanent awnings installed above the first story shall not project more than 5 feet (1524 mm).

**Exception.** Above doors in buildings under the jurisdiction of the IRC, the minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of the awning shall be 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

**3105.4 Retractable awnings.** The minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any retractable awning shall be 8 feet (2438 mm). Retractable awnings shall be securely fastened to the building and shall not extend closer than 12 inches (305 mm) from the curb line. They shall be equipped with a mechanism or device for raising and holding the awning in a retracted or closed position against the face of the building.

Exception. Above doors in buildings under the jurisdiction of the IRC, the minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of the awning shall be 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

**3105.5 Canopies.** Canopies shall be attached to the building at the inner end and supported at the outer end by not more than two stanchions with braces anchored in an approved manner and shall not extend closer than 2 feet (610 mm) from the curb line. The minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any canopy shall be 8 feet (2438 mm). The width of canopies shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 m).

**3105.6** Lettering on awnings or canopies. Lettering on awnings or canopies shall comply with Section 3107.

## **SECTION 3106A MARQUEES**

*Delete Section 3106.2 in its entirety and renumber the remaining Sections in consecutive order.*

## **SECTION 3107A SIGNS**

Delete Section 3107.1 in its entirety and substitute the following:

**3107.1 General.** The provisions of Section 3107 shall govern the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display, and maintenance of outdoor display signs and other forms of exterior advertising.

**3107.2 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this Section and as used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.

**BILLBOARD.** This term includes billboards and poster panels.

**3107.3 Permits.** No sign exceeding 1 square foot (0.093 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, unless exempted by Section 3107.3.5, shall be erected, made a part of a building, painted, repainted, placed, replaced, hung, rehung, altered, repaired structurally, changed in color, made to flash, or maintained, without a permit issued in accordance with this Section by the code official.

**3107.3.1 Application for permit.** Application for sign permit shall be made upon a form provided by the code official. Application for a permit to install a sign shall be accompanied by drawings in triplicate, drawn to scale showing details of construction dimensions, lettering, and method of attachment of the sign.

**3107.3.2 Dimensions of the premises.** The application shall contain a statement of width of premises or width and height of the building, or any other dimensions deemed necessary by the code official to determine the allowable area of the sign.

**3107.3.3 Materials specifications.** The applicant shall furnish specifications or other information covering type and thickness of materials for the sign and its support.

**3107.3.4 Permits for electrical signs.** Any sign on or in which lighting of any type is to be used, or which will be illuminated by artificial means, or which will contain other electrical features, shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 27 of this code and require the issuance of a separate electrical installation permit.

**3107.3.5 Exemptions from permit.** The types of signs and advertising specified in 3107.3.5.1 through 3107.3.5.8 do not require permits unless located within areas requiring review by the Commission of Fine Arts.

**3107.3.5.1 Theater bills and changeable copy signs.** The changing of bills of acts and features of theaters on established frames at such theaters, and the changing of the copy of any authorized changeable copy sign, the wording of which does not conflict with the provisions of this Section.

**3107.3.5.2 Billboard advertising.** Changing of matter advertised on authorized billboards and poster panels included in the official list of billboards.

**3107.3.5.3 Signs within a building.** Any sign located within a building, not attached directly or painted on a window, and not located within 18 inches (457 mm) of a window or entrance.

**3107.3.5.4 Signs on windows.** Signs upon a show window, or upon any other window abutting on, or overlooking a street or public way, within the Commercial and Industrial Districts as fixed by the current Zoning Regulations, which signs advertise only the name of the occupant of the building, office, or store, the business conducted or products sold therein, when the aggregate area of those signs does not exceed 20 percent of the area of the window upon which they are displayed.

**3107.3.5.5 Small unilluminated signs.** Unilluminated signs located outside of and unattached to buildings in areas zoned Commercial or Industrial, otherwise complying with Section 3107.6, when such signs do not exceed three (3) per record lot, when each such sign does not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in its maximum dimension and 4 square feet (0.371 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, and when each of such signs is located more than 20 feet (6096 mm) back of the building line or of the building restriction line. Such signs shall be allowed in addition to those for which a permit is required under this Section.

**3107.3.5.6 Show cards.** No more than two (2) show cards per show window not to exceed 14 by 22 inches (356 mm by 559 mm), advertising matters of current public interest, which may be placed or displayed in show windows of occupied business establishments for a period not to exceed 30 days.

**3107.3.5.7 Real estate signs.** Real estate signs not exceeding 6 square feet (0.557 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.



**3107.3.5.8 Vacated property.** One sign not to exceed 6 square feet (0.557 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, giving the name, business, and new address of the former occupant, is permitted to be displayed for not more than 60 days.

**3107.4 Commission of Fine Arts submission.** The provisions of Sections 3107.4.1 through 3107.4.2.9 shall govern applications to be made to the Commission of Fine Arts.

**3107.4.1 Shipstead-Luce Act area submissions.** All applications to erect signs on buildings or land within the area controlled by Public Law 231, 71st Congress, known as the Shipstead-Luce Act, shall be submitted to the Commission of Fine Arts for review before a permit is issued. In addition to compliance with all other applicable provisions of this Section, signs within the meaning of the Shipstead-Luce Act shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3107.4.1.1 through 3107.4.1.9.

**3107.4.1.1 Billboards, roof signs, projecting and revolving signs.** Billboards as described in Section 3107.7.6, roof signs as described in section 3107.7.2, projecting signs as described in section 3107.7.1, and revolving signs as described in Section 3107.7.11, shall not be permitted.

**3107.4.1.2 Permissible signs.** Single-faced signs, only, shall be permitted upon the exterior walls of buildings, and all signs shall be stationary. The maximum sign projection allowed shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the building or building restriction lines.

**3107.4.1.3 Illuminated signs.** Illuminated signs shall consist of freestanding, back-lighted, **opaque letters, illuminated by steady light.** **Exposed sources of sign illumination shall be prohibited.**

**3107.4.1.4 Sign dimensions.** The aggregate area of all signs advertising any one business on a building or premises shall be limited to 25 sq. feet (2.322 m<sup>2</sup>) per street frontage.

**3107.4.1.5 Sign copy.** Copy on signs shall be limited to the address or name of the establishment, or both, and the type of business conducted, as indicated by the Certificate of Occupancy issued for the premises involved.

**3107.4.1.6 Number of colors on sign.** No more than two colors, nor more than one color in addition to black or white, shall be used for any sign, including the illumination of such sign.

**3107.4.1.7 Signs on awnings.** Signs on awnings shall be limited to the valance and shall otherwise comply with other applicable requirements of this Section.

**3107.4.1.8 Show window lettering.** Lettering of signs limited to a show window, or any other window, abutting on or overlooking a street or public way, shall

cover an aggregate area of not more than 25 square feet (2.322 m<sup>2</sup>), per business, nor more than 20 percent of the area of the window, whichever is less.

**3107.4.1.9 Nonconforming signs.** Despite the limitations imposed by the requirements above, when the Commission of Fine Arts finds that the sign or the conditions surrounding it justify granting a variance from or exception to any of the requirements of Sections 3107.4.1.1 through 3107.4.1.8 and the Commission finds that granting such a variance or exception will not impair the intent and purpose of this Section or of the Shipstead-Luce Act, the code official is authorized to approve an application to erect a sign not conforming to the said requirements.

**3107.4.2 Old Georgetown Act area submissions.** All applications to erect signs on buildings or land within the area controlled by Public Law 808, 81st Congress, known as the Old Georgetown Act, shall be submitted to the Commission of Fine Arts for review before a permit is issued. In addition to compliance with all other applicable provisions of this Section, signs within the meaning of the Old Georgetown Act shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3107.4.2.1 through 3107.4.2.9.

**3107.4.2.1 Billboards, roof signs, projecting and revolving signs.** Billboards as described in Section 3107.7.6, roof signs as described in Section 3107.7.2, and revolving signs as described in Section 3107.7.11, shall not be permitted. Projecting signs as described in Section 3107.7.1, shall be allowed upon favorable recommendation by the Commission of Fine Arts, which shall include the maximum allowable projection of the sign.

**3107.4.2.2 General restriction.** All signs shall be stationary.

**3107.4.2.3 Illuminated signs.** Illuminated signs shall consist of freestanding, back-lighted, opaque letters, illuminated by steady light. Exposed sources of sign illumination shall be prohibited.

**3107.4.2.4 Sign dimensions.** The aggregate area of all signs advertising any one business on a building or premises shall be limited to 25 square feet (2.322 m<sup>2</sup>) per street frontage.

**3107.4.2.5 Sign copy.** Copy on signs shall be limited to the address or name of the establishment, or both, and the type of business conducted, as indicated by the Certificate of Occupancy issued for the premises involved.

**3107.4.2.6 Number of colors on sign.** No more than two colors, nor more than one color in addition to black or white, shall be used for any sign, including the illumination of such sign.

**3107.4.2.7 Signs on awnings.** Signs on awnings shall be limited to the valance and shall otherwise comply with other applicable requirements of this Section.

**3107.4.2.8 Show window lettering.** Lettering of signs limited to a show window, or any other window, abutting on or overlooking a street or public way, shall cover an aggregate area or not more than 25 square feet (2.322 m<sup>2</sup>), per business, nor more than 20 percent of the area of the window, whichever is less.

**3107.4.2.9 Nonconforming signs.** Despite the limitations imposed by the requirements above, when the Commission of Fine Arts finds that the sign or the conditions surrounding it justify granting a variance from or exception to any of the requirements of Sections 3107.4.2.1 through 3107.4.2.8 and the Commission finds that granting such a variance or exception will not impair the intent and purpose of this Section or of the Old Georgetown Act, the code official is authorized to approve an application to erect a sign not conforming to the said requirements.

**3107.5 Marking of signs.** Every sign for which a permit is required shall be marked with letters not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in height, giving the permit number and date of permit issuance.

**3107.6 Character of Advertising.** No sign of any character shall be erected, hung, rehung, placed, replaced, painted, repainted, repaired, or maintained upon any structure or upon any wall or roof, or upon any premises, unless such sign advertises a bona fide business conducted on the premises, and for which business a Certificate of Occupancy has been issued. The change of sign copy on any sign other than an authorized "Changeable Copy Sign" shall require issuance of a new sign permit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Signs covered by Sections 3107.3.5.1 through 3107.3.5.3, 3107.3.5.5 through 3107.3.5.8, billboards as described in Sections 3107.7.6 through 3107.7.6.7.15, and temporary signs as described in Section 3107.8.
2. When buildings are under construction or alteration for a specific use, the code official is authorized to issue a permit for the construction or erection of a sign complying with these regulations, if such building or alteration has progressed to the satisfaction of the code official for its projected use, and application for Certificate of Occupancy has been filed.

**3107.6.1 Area use restriction.** Not more than 50 percent of the area of any sign shall be used to advertise products or commodities actually sold on the premises.

**Exception:** Devices indicating only time, temperature, or both, shall not be required to comply with this restriction.

**3107.6.2 Removal of signs.** Any sign erected, hung, rehung, placed, replaced, painted, repainted, or maintained which no longer advertises a bona fide business conducted upon the premises as specified in Section 3107.6, or is not an authorized billboard or poster panel, shall be taken down, removed, or obliterated within five (5) days upon notification

by the code official or such longer time as may be designated by the code official, and failure to so comply on the part of the owner, occupant, agent, or person having beneficial use of any building or premises upon which such sign may be found, shall subject the owner to the fines provided for in the Act of March 3, 1931, 46 Stat. 1486, as amended, D.C. Code Section 1-327 (1981 ed.), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42, Section 457.

**3107.6.3 Miscellaneous signs.** The tacking, painting, pasting, or otherwise affixing of signs or posters of a miscellaneous character, visible from the street or public way, on the walls of buildings, on barns, sheds, trees, fences, or other structures, except as otherwise provided in this Section, is prohibited.

**3107.6.4 Street clocks.** No lettering or advertising matter shall be placed on any street clock or part thereof, except that the name of the manufacturer of the clock is permitted to be displayed on the dial in small letters not to exceed one-twentieth of the height of the dial.

**3107.6.5 Signs on vacant property.** Display of any sign, poster, or other advertising medium on or in any part of a vacant building, store, or premises, visible from the street or public way, other than real estate signs, complying with Section 3107.16 and authorized billboards or poster panels, is prohibited.

**Exception:** One sign not more than 6 square feet (0.557 m<sup>2</sup>) in area giving the name, business, and new address of the former occupant is permitted to be displayed for not more than 60 days on the vacated premises.

**3107.6.6 Directional signs.** Directional signs shall not be allowed except as permitted under Section 3107.7.6 for billboards or poster panels, under Section 3107.3.5.6 for show cards, under Section 3107.6.5 on vacated property, and their temporary display for the purpose of indicating the availability of real estate for sale or lease and the holding of an open house at a particular property.

**Exception:** Signs not more than 6 square feet (.557 m<sup>2</sup>) in area indicating the location of parking facilities for patrons shall be allowed under permit.

**3107.6.7 Special permits.** The code official is authorized to issue a permit to erect and maintain a sign not conforming with this Section if the code official finds that such sign or conditions surrounding such sign are unusual in character, of a type infrequently encountered, and that approval of the permit will aid in the promotion of an activity of an exclusively civic nature or will provide an equitable application of this Section basically in keeping with its purpose and intent. The code official in each such special permit is authorized to impose such terms and conditions as he or she may deem necessary. Any sign erected under a special permit shall be removed at or prior to the time specified in the permit for the removal of such sign. If no time is specified, then such sign shall be removed not later than ten (10) days after notice from the code official to do so.

**3107.6.7.1 Temporary decorations for buildings.** The code official is authorized to approve permits for temporary decorations on the fronts of buildings or on legal projections from buildings in the spirit of a holiday period, inauguration, or similar occasion. Temporary decorations are permitted to include greetings, symbols, pictures, and other markings appropriate to the occasion. Any structures, framework, and fastenings shall be subject to the usual requirements. Authority is not granted in this Section to approve applications for decorations on, over, along, or across any street or highway, except as provided for in Section 3107.6.7.2. Permits for temporary decorations shall be issued for periods not exceeding 40 days.

**3107.6.7.2 Temporary decorations for streets.** Temporary street decorations shall not be installed on, over, along or across any street or highway until a special permit has been issued by the Director of Public Works. Street decorations are a privilege, not a right, and the Director of Public Works is authorized to deny the corresponding permit or impose such conditions as may be deemed necessary, in the interest of public safety or welfare. Street decorations shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Street decorations shall not contain any advertising or any form of explicit or implicit reference to commercial businesses or products.
2. Street decorations shall be substantially related to an event or seasonal festivity of a civic or religious nature, not occurring more frequently than once a year.
3. Street decorations shall be stationary and shall be substantially supported structurally.
4. Street decorations containing electrical wiring or systems shall comply with Chapter 27.

**3107.7 Types of signs.** The provisions of this Section shall apply to types of signs and requirements for all signs.

**3107.7.1 Projecting signs.** Signs projecting from or beyond a building line or building restriction line shall be allowed in Commercial and Industrial Districts, as defined in the current Zoning Regulations, when supported on iron or steel brackets and stayed securely, or affixed in an approved equivalent manner, subject to the limitations imposed by Sections 3107.7.1.1 through 3107.7.1.3.

**3107.7.1.1 Sign projection restrictions.** No sign shall project more than 42 inches (1067 mm) beyond the building line or building restriction line, on the street frontage of a building. Hooded lights are permitted to be placed on projecting signs solely to illuminate such signs, but the hoods of such lights shall

not project more than an additional 6 inches (152 mm). No part of projecting signs shall have less than 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above the surface of a sidewalk or any other space used by the public, nor less than 15 feet (4572 mm) clearance above the surface of any driveway in public space. No portion of a sign shall extend over public space closer than 18 inches (457 mm) from the curb lane. No sign, including illumination, shall project more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the building line, in alleys.

**3107.7.1.2 Double-faced projecting signs.** Double-faced projecting signs on the front of buildings shall not extend above the roof or parapet a distance of more than one-third of the height of the sign nor more than 4 feet (1219 mm). Such signs are permitted to return over the roof or parapet not over 18 inches (457 mm) back of the face of the wall.

**3107.7.1.3 Rigid attachment of signs.** No sign projecting over public space shall be so erected or hung as to swing, sway, or revolve in any manner, except banners or flags. The supports for banners and flags shall also be installed so as to be rigid.

**3107.7.2 Roof signs.** Roof signs shall not be erected above the height limit established by the Zoning Regulations. The base of a roof sign shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) nor more than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof parapet wall on which it is erected or affixed. The height of a roof sign shall not exceed half of the width of its base. In no case shall such sign exceed the maximum area fixed by Section 3107.10.

**3107.7.2.1 Attachments.** All roof signs shall be securely braced and fastened with lag screw expansion bolts, anchor plates, or by another approved structurally sound method, to prevent accidents in high winds. Roof signs shall not be erected or hung so as to swing, sway, or revolve in any manner. Complete structural plans indicating roof construction, method of attachment, and sign framing shall be provided with all applications for roof sign permits.

**3107.7.2.2 Height limit.** Lettering, advertising, or display of any character, other than religious symbols, is prohibited above the limit of height established by the current Zoning Regulations, on spires, towers, domes, minarets, pinnacles, penthouses, ventilation shafts, chimneys, smokestacks, water storage tanks, cooling towers, or on any other support media extending above said height limit.

**3107.7.3 Signs supported by projecting construction.** Signs are permitted to be supported by canopies, marquees, porticos, and roofs of show windows constructed so as to safely support the weight of the sign or signs, in addition to the required snow and wind loads. Such signs shall not extend more than 42 inches (1067 mm) beyond the building line, except as provided for in Section 3107.7.1.

**3107.7.4 Signs on awnings or similar projections.** One horizontal line of letters, each letter not to exceed 12 inches (305 mm) in height, is permitted to be placed or painted on the vertical faces of valances, or on top of or hung from a canopy, marquee, portico, or awning. Where the line of letters is placed on top or hung from a marquee, canopy, portico, or awning, it shall be constructed in the so-called "skeleton" design, composed of separate letters without background or border. The line of letters shall designate only the street number of the premises and the name of the occupant or building or trade name. Such signs shall also be permitted in Residential Districts and Special Purpose Districts for apartment houses and hotels only.

**3107.7.5 Banner signs and flags.** No banner sign or flag used for advertising purposes shall be erected, hung, attached, or affixed to any pole, staff, or other appurtenance, unless a permit for it has been issued, nor shall such banner, sign, flag extend over public space more than 42 inches (1067 mm), or be hung or maintained less than 18 feet (5486 mm) above the parking or sidewalk or 25 feet (7620 mm) above the roadway.

**3107.7.5.1 Barber poles.** Barber poles on public space attached to a building shall not project more than 42 inches (1067 mm) from the building line and provide not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above the sidewalk or existing ground level.

**3107.7.6 Billboards.** The provisions of this Section shall govern billboards in the District of Columbia.

**3107.7.6.1 Authorized list.** Only those billboards which were in existence as of January 1, 1972, that are contained in the "Authorized List of Billboards, Three-sheet Poster Boards, and Wall Signs," dated November 30, 1931, as amended through December 31, 1971, are authorized to remain in place, subject to the conditions in Section 3107.7.6.1 through 3107.7.6.7.15.

**3107.7.6.2 Existing authorized billboards.** Any existing billboard contained in the authorized list referred in Section 3107.7.6.1 shall be permitted to be maintained, repaired, altered, or rebuilt under authority of permits issued by the code official. No change in size or location is authorized and the maintenance and repair requirements of Section 3107.7.6.5 shall be met.

**3107.7.6.3 Unauthorized billboards.** Billboards which were not included in the authorized list referred in Section 3107.7.6.1 are without authority, unless erected in accordance with Sections 3107.7.6.6 through 3107.7.6.7. All unauthorized billboards shall be removed by the owner. No such billboard shall be replaced in any form or in any location, unless a new permit is issued in accordance with Sections 3107.7.6.6 through 3107.7.6.7.

**3107.7.6.4 Razed billboards.** Any billboard which is included in the authorized list referred in Section 3107.7.6.1 and which is razed, demolished, or obliterated,

shall be stricken from the authorized list. No such billboard shall be replaced in any form or in any location, unless a new permit is issued in accordance with Sections 3107.7.6.6 through 3107.7.6.7.

**3107.7.6.5 Maintenance and repair.** Whenever the code official finds that any billboard on the authorized list referred in Section 3107.7.6.1, or erected under a permit issued in accordance with Sections 3107.7.6.6 through 3107.7.6.7, is not maintained in good repair and has not deteriorated more than 50 percent of its replacement value, the code official shall notify the owner thereof and order him to repair the billboard within a specified time but not less than 10 calendar days. If the code official finds that the billboard has deteriorated more than 50 percent of its replacement value, or is not repaired within the time specified in the repair notice, the code official shall notify the owner of the billboard and the owner of the real property on which said billboard is located to remove the billboard from the property within a specified time. All billboards ordered to be removed shall be stricken from the authorized list when the time limit set in the removal notice ends. Failure to comply shall subject said owners, upon conviction or adjudication, to the fines provided for in the Act of March, 1931, 46 Stat. 1486, as amended, D.C. Code 1-327 (1981 ed.), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. law 6-42, Section 457.

**3107.7.6.6 Permit required.** No billboards shall be erected, placed, maintained or relocated within the District of Columbia unless an application for permit is approved by the code official.

1. Permit applications. Permit applications shall be made upon forms provided by the code official. Permit applications shall be accompanied by four (4) sets of drawings showing details of construction, foundations, lighting, location of the billboard in relation to property lines, and relation to any other billboards located within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of the billboard for which the application is submitted. A separate electrical permit is required for billboards containing any electrical features.
2. Permit fee. The permit application must be accompanied by a fee pursuant to Section 108.
3. Zoning compliance. Billboard permit applications shall comply with the current Zoning Regulations. However, where a billboard is to be located in an area, which, in the judgement of the Zoning Administrator is not permitted, the Zoning Administrator shall notify the applicant in writing that the application for permit is denied for failure to conform to the Zoning Regulations, indicating the applicable provisions of the Zoning Regulations. The Director's decision may be appealed to the Board of Zoning Adjustment as prescribed by its rules.



4. Shipstead-Luce Act and Old Georgetown Act areas. Where a billboard is to be located in an area covered either by the Shipstead-Luce Act, Act of May 16, 1930, 46 Stat. 366, as amended by the Act of July 31, 1939, 53 Stat. 1144, D.C. Code Section 5-410 (1981 ed.), or by the Old Georgetown Act, Act of September 22, 1950, 64 Stat. 903, ch. 984, D.C. Code Sections 5-1101 to 5-1107, the application and supporting material shall be transmitted to the Commission of Fine Arts for review under Section 5-410 and 5-1102 of the D.C. Code (1981 ed.).
5. Permit denial. If the code official denies a billboard permit, the basis for the denial shall be stated in writing, including references to the statutory or regulatory provisions that would be violated if the permit were granted. The code official shall notify the applicant in writing with the reasons for denial of the permit.

**3107.7.6.7 Design standards.** Billboard permit applications shall comply with items 1 through 15 below, before a permit shall be issued:

1. The billboard shall not contain any moving parts, except where such moving parts are used to convey public service information such as time, temperature, date, weather, or similar information.
2. The billboard shall not contain flashing, intermittent, moving, or neon lights; the billboard shall not be lighted so as to permit beams of light to be directed at any portion of a public right-of-way, which beams of light are of such intensity or brilliance as to cause glare or impair the vision of any driver, or otherwise interfere with the driver's operation of a motor vehicle; the billboard shall not obstruct or undermine the traffic information systems of signs and lights.
3. The billboard shall not be located on lots of less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) of street frontage, nor shall billboard length be more than half the street frontage of the lot where it is proposed to be erected.
4. The billboard shall not be located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of an existing billboard.
5. When located along an Interstate Highway or a controlled Access Primary Roadway within the Federal Aid Primary Urban Extension System as designated by the D.C. Department of Public Works, the billboard shall not be located less than 500 feet (152 400 mm) from an existing billboard.
6. The billboard shall not be located on lots within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of any Residential District, as defined by the current Zoning Regulations.

7. The billboard shall not be located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of any park or building owned or under the control of the government of the District of Columbia or of the Federal Government.
8. The billboard shall not be located within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of any Historic Landmark or in or within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of any Historic District as listed in the District of Columbia Inventory of Historic Sites.
9. The billboard shall not be visible from the nearest right-of-way line of any Interstate Highway or Federal Aid Primary Urban Extension System route, as designated by the D.C. Department of Public Works, or on any surface or elevated right-of-way of the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority system, except as authorized under item 10 of this Section.
10. Where permitted by the current Zoning Regulations, billboards shall be permitted that do not comply with item 9 of this Section, provided such billboards are located more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from any of the right-of-ways mentioned therein.
11. The billboards shall be set back from each property line of the lot where it is proposed to be erected, a distance of at least one (1) foot (305 mm) for each foot (305 mm) of overall billboard height.
12. The billboard shall not have a net advertising area in excess of 300 square feet (27.9 m<sup>2</sup>) for each sign face. For the purpose of this Section, net area shall be considered exclusive of any border, trim, ornamental base, apron supports or other structural members.
13. The billboard shall be designed and installed so as to maintain a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2438 mm) from the ground, as measured from the adjacent grade.
14. The billboard shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm) in overall height as measured from grade at the center line of the billboard to the level of the highest point of the billboard.
15. The billboard shall conform to Section 3107.11.

**3107.7.7 Signs on side walls.** Where no sign or signs exist on the side wall of any building or structure, no permit shall be issued for the erection, hanging or painting of a sign or signs on such side wall, except as provided in Sections 3107.7.7.1 and 3107.7.7.2.

**3107.7.7.1 Corner buildings and alleys entrances.** The code official shall be authorized to issue permits to erect, hang, or paint a sign or signs on those side walls of a corner building which abut a public street, or on those side walls of

buildings which have a public entrance opening for business purposes upon an alley, when such signs comply with the provisions of this Section.

**3107.7.7.2 Walls facing parking lots.** A building with adjoining parking lots used in connection with such building shall be permitted to have side wall signs facing over such parking lots toward a street or alley fronting on such lots.

**3107.7.8 Signs on public space.** No structure or standard used as a sign, bulletin, or advertisement of any sort shall be built, placed, erected, hung, maintained, or left in or upon any street, avenue, alley, highway, footway, sidewalk, parking or other public space in the District of Columbia, unless specifically approved by the code official, including the use of directional signs as described in Section 3107.6.6, in accordance with provisions of this Section.

**3107.7.9 Transported signs or banners.** No advertising sign or banner shall be carried or transported on or over any public space. The provisions of this Section shall not apply to signs displayed on vehicles and advertising the bona-fide business of the owner. This Section shall not be construed to apply to banners or signs carried by members of any labor organization or similar body, whether employers or employees, publicizing the existence of or facts about any labor dispute.

**3107.7.10 Commercial advertising on WMATA vehicles.** Despite the provisions of Section 3107.7.9, or any other law, the sale and use of commercial revenue advertising space on the rear and side exteriors, or entire exterior surfaces of Metrobus public transit vehicles under the control and operation of the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority (WMATA) shall be permitted for such vehicles operating on public space within the District of Columbia, subject to the conditions of Sections 3107.7.10.1 through 3107.7.10.2.

**3107.7.10.1 Observance of the law.** No advertisement shall be accepted by WMATA which violates this code or any other District of Columbia or federal law.

**3107.7.10.2 Public service announcements.** The rear and side exterior advertising space on at least 10 percent of the total number of Metrobus vehicles available for public transit operations shall be reserved for free public service announcements and advertisements regarding community, art, cultural, educational, and similar events.

**3107.7.11 Revolving signs.** Revolving signs shall be permitted in Commercial and Industrial Districts as defined in the current Zoning Regulations, when located entirely upon the land of the owner and not projecting beyond the building line, subject to the conditions of Sections 3107.7.11.1 through 3107.7.11.7. As used in this subsection, “revolving sign” includes a sign that displays 3-D, moving, animated, or periodically-changing images or text.

**3107.7.11.1 Location restriction.** Revolving signs shall not be permitted on the roofs of buildings or structures.

**3107.7.11.2 Application requirement.** Complete details of erection and operation of revolving signs shall be submitted with the sign permit application.

**3107.7.11.3 Color and electrical features.** The color and electrical features of revolving signs shall be approved by the Department of Public Works before issuance of a revolving sign permit.

**3107.7.11.4 Revolving speed.** Revolving signs shall not revolve faster than 5 revolutions per minute.

**3107.7.11.5 Dimensions.** The area of revolving signs shall not exceed 40 square feet (3.72 m<sup>2</sup>) per face, and the maximum dimension shall not exceed 3 feet (914 mm).

**3107.7.11.6 Clearance and height.** Revolving signs shall have not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above the adjacent ground level, and the total height of the sign above grade shall not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm).

**3107.7.11.7 Illumination.** Exposed lights or tubing shall be prohibited on revolving signs, and illumination shall be from indirect or internal sources.

**3107.7.11.8 Vehicular Traffic Safety.** No revolving sign may be installed or maintained if the Department of Transportation has determined that the sign location, size, or height above grade is objectionable with regard to vehicular traffic safety.

**3107.8 Temporary signs during construction.** The code official is authorized to issue permits for the erection, painting, or affixing of signs on premises where building operations are being conducted, giving the name and address of the engineers, architects, contractors, financing institutions, and identifying the project or purpose of the building. Such signs shall comply with all requirements of this Section, and any sign so erected, painted, or affixed shall be removed upon completion of the building operations, or at any time before completion of building operations, when ordered by the code official in the interest of public safety, health and welfare.

**3107.8.1 Signs in public space.** Permits shall be issued for temporary construction signs, as described in Section 3107.8 to be erected on temporary barricades, covered walkways, construction offices or public space between the building line and such structures, subject to the conditions of Section 3107.8.

**3107.8.2 Dimensions.** The total area of signs erected on public space pursuant to Sections 3107.8 through 3107.8.2 shall be limited to 2 square feet (0.186 m<sup>2</sup>) for each foot of street frontage of the lot, with a maximum sign area of 40 square feet (3.72 m<sup>2</sup>) for residentially zoned property, and 200 square feet (18.58 m<sup>2</sup>) for commercially zoned

property. An additional 5 square feet (0.465 m<sup>2</sup>) of sign area shall be permitted on barricades to identify each adjoining premises or business.

**3107.9 Residential or Special Purpose District limitations.** The provisions of this Section shall govern types of signs in residential or special purpose districts.

**3107.9.1 General Residential District limitation.** No sign or signs shall be permitted in any Residential District, as fixed by the current Zoning Regulations, unless a permit is issued by the code official in accordance with the provisions of this Section.

**Exemption.** A permit shall not be required for a nameplate not exceeding 1 square foot (0.093 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, to advertise a home occupation, and bearing only the name and occupation of the occupant of the building.

**3107.9.2 Zoning restrictions.** Nothing within this Section shall be construed to grant any greater area nor any greater illumination than limited by specific order of the Board of Zoning Adjustment. If such a specific order prohibits any signs or illumination, such specific order shall take precedence over the provisions of this Section.

**3107.9.3 Location restrictions.** Residential district signs shall be located entirely on private property and shall be located on the portions of the building or premises occupied by the use for which the signs are authorized.

**3107.9.4 Illumination.** Residential District signs shall be allowed to be illuminated by steady white lighting only. No fluctuating, pulsating, or moving lights or lighting designed to change appearance in any manner shall be permitted in any Residential District. Where illumination of signs located in any Residential District is by gas tubes, these tubes shall not be visible but shall be allowed to be so arranged as to provide indirect light.

**3107.9.5 Authorized signs.** Signs complying with any of the Sections 3107.9.5.1 through 3107.9.5.8 shall be permitted.

**3107.9.5.1 Public information.** The code official is authorized to issue temporary permits for signs to advertise matters of a public, semi-public, or charitable character. Such temporary permits shall be granted for a period not to exceed thirty (30) days.

**3107.9.5.2 Temporary automobile parking lots.** On temporary automobile parking lots approved by the code official for such use, the total area of signs shall not exceed 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>) facing each street upon which the lot has a vehicular entrance, in addition to separate signs authorized under Section 3107.9.5.8.

**3107.9.5.3 Nonconforming uses.** Signs advertising a nonconforming use as defined in the current Zoning Regulations, shall be limited to a total area not to

exceed, for each use, the limits permitted by Section 3107.10 or 40 square feet (3.72 m<sup>2</sup>), whichever is less. Separate signs authorized under Section 3107.9.5.8 shall be counted towards the limits of this Section.

**3107.9.5.4 Church bulletins.** Church bulletins shall not exceed 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>) in area for each church. When approved by the code official, church bulletins shall be allowed to be placed on public parking upon recommendation of the Public Space Committee.

**3107.9.5.5 Non-profit organization.** Signs for each school, college, hotel, philanthropic institution, non-profit organization, hospital, residential care facility or church, shall be limited to a total area not to exceed 40 square feet (3.73 m<sup>2</sup>).

1. Non-profit organization nameplates. When approved by the code official, a nameplate or nameplates, each such plate not more than 6 square feet (0.56 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, shall be allowed to be placed on the public parking at entrance driveways, upon recommendation of the Public Space Committee. The area of such nameplates shall not be counted towards the limits on total sign area specified in Section 3107.9.5.5.
2. Sign supports. Signs pursuant to Section 3107.9.5.5 shall be allowed to be supported on posts or pilasters where permits have been secured for posts or pilasters, but shall not be so placed as to extend over any walkway or roadway unless there is at least 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above such walkway or 15 feet (4572 mm) clearance above such roadway.

**3107.9.5.6 Apartment house signs.** For apartment houses, signs shall be limited to the name and house number of the building. Such signs shall only be permitted when facing the street or streets upon which entrances to the building are located. Such signs shall not exceed for each building frontage, the limits set forth in Table 3107.9.5.6. Signs placed on a marquee, canopy, or awning, as permitted under Section 3107.7.4, shall not be counted towards the area limitation given in Table 3107.9.5.6. For purposes of this Section, a group building erected under a covenant shall be considered as a single building.

TABLE 3107.9.5.6  
APARTMENT HOUSE SIGNS

STREET FRONTAGE (feet) (a)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SIZE OF SIGN ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet) (b)

Up to 45	4
45 to 50	5
50 to 55	6
55 to 60	7
60 to 65	8
65 to 70	9
70 to 75	10
75 to 80	11
80 to 85	12
85 to 90	13
90 to 95	14
95 to 100	15
100 to 105	16
105 to 110	17
110 to 115	18
115 to 120	19
120 and above	20

Note a. 1 foot = 304.8 mm

Note b. 1 square foot = 0.093 square meters

**3107.9.5.7 Office buildings, commercial or industrial uses.** For buildings or premises approved by the Board of Zoning Adjustment for office buildings and commercial or industrial uses, the total area of signs, for each such building or premises, shall not exceed the limit prescribed in Section 3107.10, or 40 square feet, (3.73 m<sup>2</sup>), or such other limitation as may have been imposed by the Board of Zoning Adjustment, whichever is less. Such signs shall be attached flat against the wall of the building, unless they conform to Section 3107.9.5.7.1.

1. Signs beyond the wall. Signs pursuant to Section 3107.9.5.7 shall be permitted on canopies, marquees, porticos, and awnings located entirely on private property, where placed or painted in the manner and with the limitations described in Section 3107.7.4. Signs so placed shall be counted towards the maximum allowable area of signs.

**3107.9.5.8 Parking rate signs.** Where Section 612 of DCMR 24, "Public Space and Safety" requires that a schedule of auto parking charge rates be posted, a separate sign setting forth such schedule, not more than 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, shall be allowed in addition to the areas otherwise permitted in Sections 3107.9.5.2 and 3107.9.5.3.

**3107.9.6 Signs in Special Purpose Districts.** For buildings or premises located in a Special Purpose District, as defined in the current Zoning Regulations, the total area of signs shall not exceed the limits set forth in Table 3107.9.6, nor those imposed by any specific order of the Board of Zoning Adjustment.

**TABLE 3107.9.6**  
**SIGNS IN SPECIAL PURPOSE DISTRICTS**

STREET FRONTAGE (feet) (a)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SIZE OF SIGN ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet) (b)
Up to 40	40 ft <sup>2</sup>
40 to 100	1 ft <sup>2</sup> per foot of frontage
Over 100	100 ft <sup>2</sup> plus 0.5 ft <sup>2</sup> per foot of frontage over 100

Note a. 1 foot = 304.8 mm

Note b. 1 square foot = 0.093 square meters

**3107.10 Maximum size of signs.** In any district other than Residential or Special Purpose Districts, the total area of sign or signs attached to, displayed from, or erected upon any building, lot, or parcel of land, shall not exceed the limits prescribed in Sections 3107.10.1 through 3107.10.7.

**3107.10.1 One story buildings.** Two square feet (0.19 m<sup>2</sup>) for each foot of width of front of building occupied by the business or profession to be advertised, such signs or signs to be placed on the front under consideration within the limits of the portion of the front in which the business advertised is located. Roof signs shall not exceed 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) facing any one street frontage.

**3107.10.2 First floor stores or businesses in multi-story buildings.** The provisions of Section 3107.10.1 shall apply, except that such signs shall be kept within a height of 20 feet (6096 mm) above the sidewalk.

**3107.10.3 Upper stories of multi-story buildings.** The total area of all signs above the 20-foot height specified in Section 3107.10.2 shall not exceed the limits set forth in Table 3107.10.3, for each street frontage.

**TABLE 3107.10.3**  
**SIGNS ABOVE THE FIRST STORY**

AREA OF WALL ABOVE 20 FEET	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE AREA
-------------------------------	---------------------------



ABOVE THE SIDEWALK, ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet) (a)	OF SIGNS ABOVE 20 FEET ABOVE SIDEWALK ON STREETFRONTAGE
Up to 1600	40 ft <sup>2</sup>
1600 to 4000	1/40 of area of wall above 20 ft height
Over 4000	100 ft <sup>2</sup> roof signs, or 1/40 of area of wall above 20 ft height for signs below roof

Note a. 1 square foot = 0.093 square meters

**3107.10.4 Single occupancy buildings.** Where an entire building over one story in height is occupied by one business, store or occupant, the total area of all signs on each street frontage shall not exceed the limits set forth in Table 3107.10.4.

**TABLE 3107.10.4**  
**SIGNS ON SINGLE-OCCUPANT MULTI-STORY BUILDINGS**

AREA OF WALL ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet) (a)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE AREA OF SIGNS ON STREETFRONTAGE
Up to 4000	100 ft <sup>2</sup>
Over 4000	1/40 of area of wall, of which not more than 100 ft <sup>2</sup> above the roof

Note a. 1 square foot = 0.093 square meters

**3107.10.5 Unimproved lots or lots with a small office.** Where a business is conducted on an unimproved lot or a lot with a small office, 2 square feet (0.19 m<sup>2</sup>) of sign area for each foot of street frontage shall be allowed, but not more than 150 square feet (13.95 m<sup>2</sup>) per frontage under consideration. The area of the signs of such buildings shall not exceed that permitted under Section 3107.10.1.

**3107.10.6 Parking rate signs.** Where Section 612 of DCMR 24, "Public Space and Safety" requires that a schedule of auto parking charge rated be posted, a sign setting

forth such schedule, not more than 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>) in area shall be allowed in addition to the areas otherwise permitted in Sections 3107.10.1 through 3107.10.5.

**3107.10.7 Exemptions.** Signs exempted from permit pursuant to Sections 3107.3.5 through 3107.3.5.8 shall not be counted towards the total sign area permitted under Sections 3107.10.1 through 3107.10.5.

**3107.11 Structural and materials requirements.** All signs and their supports, including signs exempted from permit, shall comply with all structural and materials requirements of this Section and other applicable Sections of this code.

**3107.11.1 Wind load.** Signs shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind pressure as provided for in Chapter 16.

**3107.11.2 Seismic load.** Signs designed to withstand wind pressures shall be considered capable of withstanding earthquake loads, except as provided for in Chapter 16.

**3107.11.3 Working stresses.** The allowable working stresses shall conform with the requirements of Chapter 16. The working stresses of wire rope and its fastenings shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate strength of the rope or fasteners.

**Exceptions:**

- 1 The allowable working stresses for steel and wood shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 22 and Chapter 23.
2. The working strength of chains, cables, guys or steel rods shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of such chains, cables, guys or steel.

**3107.11.4 Attachment.** Signs attached to all structures shall be safely and securely fastened by means of metal anchors, bolts or approved expansion screws of sufficient size and anchorage to safely support the loads applied. Structure to which signs are attached shall be designed to support the loads applied. Signs shall not be attached to or supported by unbraced parapet walls.

**3107.11.5 Lateral bracing assumptions.** For design of lateral bracing in the direction of the length of the sign, the wind shall be assumed at an angle of 45 degrees with the front or back of the sign, and the bracing designed for the force on the projected area perpendicular to the wind.

**3107.11.6 Ground supports.** Ground supports for signs shall comply with Sections 3107.11.6.1 through 3107.11.6.2.

**3107.11.6.1 Wood materials.** Where wood is embedded in the soil, the wood shall be pressure treated with an approved preservative.

**3107.11.6.2 Metal materials.** Metal materials shall be protected from corrosion.

**3107.11.7 Combustible materials.** Plastic materials shall burn at a rate no faster than 2.5 inches per minute (64 mm/min) when tested in accordance with ASTM D 635.

**3107.11.8 Incombustible materials.** Signs as specified in Section 3107.11.8.1 through 3107.11.8.5 shall be of incombustible material except that sign cappings, decorations, lettering, and moldings may be of combustible materials.

**3107.11.8.1 Wall signs.** Wall signs exceeding 40 square feet (3.72 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, flat against, or supported not more than 15 inches (381 mm) away from the wall.

**3107.11.8.2 Projecting signs.** Projecting signs exceeding 2.5 square feet (0.23 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.

**3107.11.8.3 Ground-supported signs.** Ground-supported signs over 15 feet (4572 mm) in height or located 6 feet (1828 mm) or less from any building.

**3107.11.8.4 Roof signs.** Roof signs, irrespective of height or area.

**3107.11.8.5 Electrical signs.** Signs using electricity.

**3107.11.9 Use of glass.** Glass in signs shall be double-strength plain glass, plate glass, or wired glass. Glass shall be designed per Table 3107.11.9, except that no panel of more than 10 square feet (0.93 m<sup>2</sup>) of glass other than wired glass shall be used in signs projecting over public space.

**TABLE 3107.11.9  
SIZE, THICKNESS AND TYPE OF GLASS PANELS IN SIGNS**

MAXIMUM SIZE OF EXPOSED PANEL (square feet)		MINIMUM THICKNESS OF GLASS	TYPE OF GLASS
Any dimension (inches)	Area (square inches)	(inches)	
30	500	1/8	Plain, plate or wired
45	700	3/16	Plain, plate or wired
144	3,600	1/4	Plain, plate or wired
>144	>3,600	1/4	Wired glass

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm<sup>2</sup>

**3107.12 Alteration or relocation of signs.** No sign erected before the adoption of these regulations shall be altered structurally or relocated, unless it is brought into compliance with the requirements of all applicable regulations for new signs.

**3107.13 Dangerous signs.** When any sign now or hereafter erected, hung, attached, or maintained becomes structurally unsafe or otherwise dangerous to the safety of any building or premises, or to the public, the code official shall order the same to be taken down, removed, or made safe, and such order shall be complied with by the owner, occupant, agent, or person having the beneficial use of any building or premises upon which said dangerous sign may be erected, hung, attached, or maintained. Any such person failing to comply with the orders issued pursuant to this Section shall, upon conviction or adjudication, be subject to the fines provided for in the Act of March 3, 1931, 46 Stat. 1486, as amended, D.C. Code Section 1-327 (1981 ed.), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42, Section 457.

**3107.14 Obstructive signs.** No sign shall be so erected, hung, or attached as to obstruct any window, door, fire escape, balcony, platform, stairway, ladder, stack, vent pipe, or egress from any building.

**3107.14.1 Removal of obstructive signs.** Signs in violation of Section 3107.14 shall be removed or relocated to conform with this code.

**3107.15 Display of license or permit.** The provisions of this Section shall govern licenses, permits and penalties for sign work.

**3107.15.1 Display of license.** Any person, persons, firm, or corporation engaged in the business of painting, repainting, placing, replacing, hanging, erecting, or maintaining signs within the meaning of this Section shall have at his, her, their, or its principal place of business within the District of Columbia the license issued by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, available for inspection by the code official or by any member of the Metropolitan Police Department, at all appropriate times.

**3107.15.2 Display of permit.** A permit for the erection, repair, painting, repainting, or as otherwise provided in this Section, of a sign shall be kept on the premises where such sign is being erected repaired, painted, repainted, or as otherwise provided in this Section, and shall be displayed by the permittee when ordered to do so by the code official or by any member of the Metropolitan Police Department, at all appropriate times.

**3107.15.3 Penalties.** Any person failing to comply with these regulations shall, upon conviction or adjudication, be subject to the fines provided for in the Act of March 3, 1931, 46 Stat. 1486, as amended, D.C. Code Section 1-327 (1981 ed.), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42, Section 457.

**3107.16 Real estate signs.** The provisions of this Section shall govern real estate signs.

**3107.16.1 Public space restrictions.** No sign or advertisement relating to the sale, rent, or lease of land or premises shall be located on the sidewalk or parking of any street, avenue, or road in the District of Columbia.

**3107.16.2 Number, location and size of sign.** One (1) painted or printed sign or advertisement for the sale, rent, or lease of land or premises shall be allowed with the written consent of the owner or the owner's agent to be placed, by any one of not more than three (3) real estate agents, on any lot, piece, or parcel of land abutting on a street, avenue, or road in the District of Columbia, or attached to the exterior of any building fronting on them, provided permits are secured for such sign in accordance with Section 3107.16.4. The area of any such sign shall not exceed 40 square feet (3.716 m<sup>2</sup>) if located within a Residential district, or 60 square feet (5.58 m<sup>2</sup>) if located within an unsubdivided outlying Section of the District of Columbia. This Section shall not apply to the temporary placement of directional signs relating to the sale or lease of real estate which indicate the holding of an open house, or a sign attached to the one painted or printed sign allowed by Section 3107.3.5.7 which indicates that the premises have been sold, leased, or placed under contract.

**3107.16.3 Additional restrictions.** Real estate signs shall be located on the premises advertised. Directional signs shall not be permitted.

**3107.16.4 Permit for real estate signs.** Under the provisions of the Act of March 4, 1913, 37 Stat. 974, a permit shall be issued to erect, hang, place, paint, or display any sign advertising the sale, rent or lease of real estate, or which in any manner pertains to land or buildings, unless exempted by Section 3107.3.5.7. No permit shall be required for the temporary placement of directional signs which indicate the holding of an open house at a particular property.

**3107.16.5 Penalties.** The code official is authorized to require the removal of any sign or advertisement in violation of this provision and to institute proceedings against persons violating this provision, and upon, conviction or adjudication, such persons shall be subject to the fines provided for in the Act of March 3, 1931, 46 Stat. 1486, as amended, D.C. Code Section 1-327 (1981 ed.), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to titles I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42, Section 457.

**3107.17 Rules for Special Signs.** The code official is authorized to issue a permit for a "Special Sign," as defined in Subsection 3107.17.1. Special Signs shall be subject to the rules of this section and not to the rules in this chapter pertaining to billboards, poster panels, wall signs, and other specific types of signs. The rules of this section shall apply only to Special Signs.

**3107.17.1 Definitions:** As used in this section, the following definitions apply:

**Special Sign:** A sign which meets the standards listed in §3107.17.5, that is erected, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed or maintained on an outdoor or exterior wall or surface of a building pursuant to a Special Sign Permit issued by the Director of the Department. A Special Sign shall only include signs that are erected, hung, placed, painted, displayed or maintained on an outdoor or exterior wall or surface that is not self-standing. A Special Sign shall be one of the thirty-two special signs approved by the Director pursuant to the Rules for Special Signs adopted September 22, 2000 (47 D.C. Register 7695 – 7700).

**Call to Action:** An explicit, specific or blatant message to consumers from the sponsor that asks consumers to take action by purchasing, using, utilizing or considering the use of a sponsor's product and/or service, including without limitation providing price or value information (e.g., "affordable" or "5% interest rate available") and inducements to act (e.g., "one month's free service when you buy").

**Logo:** The symbol, emblem, typeface, or other visual device used by the sponsor to identify itself and to distinguish itself from others in the marketplace.

**Permit Holder:** The individual or entity who or which holds a Special Sign Permit validly issued and in good standing in accordance with the requirements of this section and with all other applicable terms and conditions of Chapter 31, and who or which makes such Special Sign available for sponsorship or community service as provided herein.

**Sponsor:** The entity that contracts with the Permit Holder for the use of a Special Sign to display the Sponsor's artwork that meets the visual and text standards of Subsection 3115.4.2.5.

**3107.17.2 Special Sign Permit:** No Special Sign may be erected, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed, or maintained in the District of Columbia without the owner of such Special Sign first obtaining a Special Sign Permit from the Department in accordance with Subsection 3107.17.3 and approval of the artwork in accordance with Subsection 3107.17.5. A Special Sign Permit authorizes the sign's location and particular artwork.

**3107.17.3 Special Sign Permit Application:** An application for a Special Sign Permit shall be submitted by the owner to the Director of the Department, or his designee, on a form provided by the Department, and shall include the following:

- (a) Identification of: (1) the applicant; (2) the proposed location of the Special Sign, by the street address of the building or premises and the face direction of the wall or surface (e.g., "northern-facing"); (3) the proposed linear dimensions of the Special Sign; and (4) a list of all existing Special Signs, identified by the address of the premises, located within a radius of one thousand feet (1000 ft) of the center of the proposed Special Sign;
- (b) An affidavit signed by the applicant or his duly authorized representative, certifying that the applicant is in compliance with the Clean Hands Before

Receiving A License or Permit Act of 1996 (“Clean Hands Act”), D.C. Law 11-118, effective May 11, 1996, D.C. Official Code Section 47-2861 *et seq.*).

- (c) A permit fee in the amount of one dollar (\$1.00) per square foot of the Special Sign. The permit fee may be paid by check made payable to the order of the “D.C. Treasurer.” The permit fee may be refunded to the applicant if the permit is not issued, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1 for the refund of unused permit fees.

**3107.17.3.1 Applicant Qualifications:** The applicant who or which submits an application for a Special Permit shall be licensed to do business in the District of Columbia as a business engaged in outdoor advertising, shall be a business in good standing at the time the application is submitted and for the duration of the permit, as evidenced in the Department’s records. The applicant shall not owe more than one hundred dollars (\$100) in taxes or delinquent fines to the District of Columbia at the time the application is submitted, as evidenced in the records of the District of Columbia Office of Tax and Revenue, and shall be in compliance with the Clean Hands Act.

**3107.17.4 Review, Approval and Denial of Permit Applications:** The Director of the Department, or his designee, shall review and approve or deny a Special Sign Permit application within twenty (20) days of its submission. Special Sign Permits shall be issued in the name of the applicant and shall pertain solely to the Special Sign location identified on the permit, subject to the transferability provisions of Subsection 3107.17.7.

**3107.17.4.1 Denial of Application:** If the Director denies a Special Sign Permit, the denial shall be in writing to the applicant and shall state the statutory or regulatory basis for the denial. The applicant shall have ten (10) business days from receipt of the denial to correct any defect in the application.

**3107.17.5 Approval of Special Sign Artwork:** Prior to the erection, hanging, placement, posting, painting, or displaying of any Special Sign artwork, the applicant shall obtain approval of such Special Sign artwork from the Department. The applicant shall submit the Special Sign artwork for approval with the original permit application or obtain approval for the Special Sign artwork subsequent to the issuance of the Special Sign Permit. Special Sign artwork shall be submitted to the Director of the Department or his or her designee, who shall review and act on the Special Sign artwork submission within ten (10) days of the submission. No Special Sign artwork shall be accepted by the Department which violates the D.C. Official Code or any other District of Columbia law or municipal regulation, or federal law. No Special Sign artwork shall be approved by the Department unless:

- (a) Identification of the Sponsor of the Special Sign, when provided, is limited to the bottom center, bottom right or bottom left corner of the Special Sign artwork, and shall be limited to the words “Sponsored by [Name and/or Logo of Sponsor]”. This Sponsor identification shall be no higher than one-tenth (1/10) of the

maximum vertical dimension of the face of the sign, and no wider than one-third (1/3) of the maximum horizontal width of the face of the sign.

- (b) The copy of the Special Sign is predominantly pictorial and non-verbal, with textual matter occupying no more than 25% of the display area of the sign. The space occupied by any sponsor identification shall not be counted against the 25% limitation.
- (c) Any words included in the body of the Special Sign artwork shall not directly or indirectly identify the Sponsor or any of the Sponsor's recognizable campaign slogans, or serve as a direct "Call to Action" on behalf of the Sponsor.
- (d) The Department of Transportation determines that the sign location, size, and height above grade is not objectionable with regard to vehicular traffic safety.
- (e) The Department determines that the sign location is compatible with any existing park or building under the control of either the District of Columbia or the Federal government, pursuant to applicable laws and regulations.
- (f) The distance between horizontal projection of the center of the new proposed sign and the horizontal projection of the center of any other existing Special Sign within a one thousand feet (1000 ft) radius is at least five (5) times the sum of the diagonals of the two signs. This provision shall not affect existing Special Signs but shall apply to all new Special Signs and to the proposed relocation of any existing Special Sign.

**3107.17.5.1 Submission of Color Copies:** Color copies of the proposed Special Sign artwork shall be submitted to the Department for approval, in duplicate. The color copies shall be legible. Once Special Sign artwork is approved, the two (2) copies shall be stamped "approved" by the Department; one copy shall be placed in the applicant's permit file with the Department and be made available for inspection by the Department, for as long as the sign shall remain on display, and one copy shall be returned to the applicant reflecting the approval of the Department.

**3107.17.6 Changing Special Sign Copy:** A Special Sign permit holder may change the Special Sign artwork at the permit location by submitting the new artwork for approval in accordance with the provisions of Section 3107.17.5. A "change copy" fee in the amount of five hundred dollars (\$500) must be paid before each new Special Sign artwork can be approved and changed. The \$500 change copy fee in this Subsection is refundable if the request to change the Special Sign artwork by the permit holder is not approved by the Director. Changing the copy of a permitted Special Sign shall not entail an increase of any of the linear dimensions of the sign.

**3107.17.7 Transferability of Special Sign Locations:** A Special Sign Permit shall be transferable to a new location only under the following conditions:



- (a) Except for transfers from locations presently lying outside the area defined in paragraph (b) of this subsection, the transfer is for cause, which only means that: (1) the lease for the location of the Special Sign is cancelled, terminated, or otherwise invalid; (2) the Special Sign is partially or totally obstructed; or (3) the location of the Special Sign is or would be no longer feasible because of construction or development.
- (b) The new location is within the Central Business District (C-4), as defined by Title 11 of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations; the commercial or industrial portions of the New York Avenue corridor, areas zoned industrial (M, C-M), as defined in Chapter 8 of Title 11 of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations (11 DCMR §800 *et seq.*); facilities within the jurisdiction of the District of Columbia Sports Commission as of November 1, 2001; or the following areas within the Central Employment Area which are bounded as follows:
  - (1) Beginning at the corner of F Street, N.W. and 17th Street, N.W., west along F Street, N.W. to 20th Street, N.W., north along 20th Street, N.W. to Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., west along Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W. to 21st Street, N.W., north along 21st Street, N.W. to M Street, N.W., east along M Street, N.W. to 20th Street, N.W., north along 20th Street, N.W. to N Street, N.W., east along N Street, N.W. to 19th Street, N.W., south along 19th Street, N.W. to G Street, N.W., east along G Street, N.W. to 17th Street, N.W., south along 17th Street, N.W. to F Street, N.W.;
  - (2) Beginning at the corner of Rhode Island Avenue, N.W. and M Street, N.W., northeast along Rhode Island Avenue, N.W. to Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., east along Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. to 15th Street, N.W., south along 15th Street, N.W. to M Street, N.W., west along M Street, N.W. to 16th Street, N.W., south along the east side of 16th Street, N.W. to Eye Street, N.W., north along the west side of 16th Street, N.W. to M Street, N.W., west along M Street, N.W. to Rhode Island Avenue, N.W.;
  - (3) Beginning at the intersection of Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. and 14th Street, N.W., east along Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. to 9th Street, N.W., north along 9th Street, N.W. to N Street, N.W., east along N Street, N.W. to 7th Street, N.W., south along 7th Street, N.W. to K Street, N.W., east along K Street, N.W. to 3rd Street, N.W., south along 3rd Street, N.W. to Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., west along Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. to Eye Street, N.W., west along Eye Street, N.W. to 9th Street, N.W., south along 9th Street, N.W. to H Street, N.W., west along H Street, N.W. to 11th Street, N.W., north along H Street, N.W. to Eye Street, N.W., west along Eye Street, N.W. to 12th Street, N.W., north along 12th Street, N.W. to L Street, N.W., west along L Street, N.W. to 14th Street, N.W., north along 14th Street, N.W. to Massachusetts Avenue, N.W.;
  - (4) Beginning at the intersection of Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. and H Street, N.W., east along H Street, N.W. to the closed alley (formerly Smith Court) in the mid-block between 1st Street, N.W. and North Capitol

Street, south along that closed alley line to G Street, N.W., east along G Street, N.W., to North Capitol Street, south along North Capitol Street, N.W. to Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., northwest on Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. to H Street, N.W.;

- (5) Beginning at the intersection of Florida Avenue, N.E. and North Capitol Street, southeast along Florida Avenue, N.E. to 4th Street, N.E., south along 4th Street, N.E. to M Street, N.E., west along M Street, N.E. to 3rd Street, N.E., south along 3rd Street, N.E. to K Street, N.E., west along K Street, N.E. to 1st Street, N.E., south along 1st Street, N.E. to G Place, N.E., west along G Place, N.E. to North Capitol Street, north along North Capitol Street to Florida Avenue, N.E.;
- (6) Beginning at the corner of M Street, S.E. and South Capitol Street, east along M Street, S.E., to 1st Street, S.E., south along 1st Street, S.E., to Potomac Avenue, S.E., west along Potomac Avenue, S.E., to South Capitol Street, north along South Capitol Street to M Street, S.E.; and
- (7) Beginning at the intersection of Maryland Avenue, S.W. and Maine Avenue, S.W., east along Maryland Avenue, S.W. to 9th Street, S.W., south along 9th Street, S.W. to Interstate 395, west along Interstate 395 to Maine Avenue, S.W.
  - (c) The Special Sign in its new location is approved by the Department in accordance with all other applicable provisions of Subsection 3107.17.
  - (d) The permit holder pays a “change location” fee in the amount of \$ 500. The \$ 500 change location fee shall be refundable if the transfer of the Special Sign permit to a new location is not approved. If the relocation of the Special Sign is made at the request of the Department, a change location fee shall not be required.
  - (e) If the Special Sign is painted or drawn onto an existing structure, the method of removal shall be that the existing structure where the Special Sign has been placed shall be made neutral prior to the relocation.
  - (f) If a current Special Sign permit for a location that is not in the zone of transferability, as defined in paragraph (b) of this subsection, is transferred to another location under this subsection, the Department shall ensure that the current Special Sign has been removed prior to the relocation and no subsequent Special Sign shall be permitted to be erected in the former location or area outside the zone of transferability.
  - (g) No Special Sign shall be installed so as to extend above the lowest portion of the roofline of an existing building's dimensions.

**3107.17.8 Installation of Special Signs:** The installation of a Special Sign shall be done in a workmanlike manner and in accordance with the standards of the industry. Special Signs shall be subject to the structural provisions of Subsection 3107.11. Special signs shall not be installed upon building walls so as to cover any existing windows. A Special Sign shall only be installed upon a building and no part of either it or its supporting structure may protrude above the wall upon which it is installed. The topmost point of a Special Sign or of its supporting structure shall not be higher than the allowable height for a new building at the premises, under the current Zoning Regulations.

**3107.17.9 Illumination of Special Signs:** Special Signs within five hundred feet (500 ft) of a residential zone, as established in the Zoning Regulations of the District of Columbia, shall not be illuminated. Other Special Signs may be indirectly illuminated by projecting artificial light on the surface of the sign, but shall not be internally illuminated nor be constructed of or incorporate neon, or any other type of gas or vapor lights. Special Signs shall not contain movable parts, or highly reflective or fluorescent materials, nor shall they contain 3-D, moving, animated, or periodically-changing images or text.

**3107.17.10 Limitations on Special Sign Permits:** The Department shall not issue any new permit, whether as an initial permit, for changes to artwork pursuant to Subsection 3107.17.5, or for transfer to a new location pursuant to Subsection 3107.17.7, for any Special Sign to be displayed upon buildings or land located in any of the following areas:

- (1) In or within one hundred feet (100 ft) of a Residential District, as defined in the District of Columbia Zoning Regulations, or within one hundred feet (100 ft) of a school or church with a valid certificate of occupancy for such use, or within one hundred feet (100 ft) of a federal or District of Columbia park or monument.
- (2) Between one hundred and two hundred feet (100 ft - 200 ft) of a Residential District, as defined in the Zoning Regulations of the District of Columbia, unless the sign faces away from the residential district and is placed at an angle of forty-five degrees (45°) or less with the closest residential zoning district boundary line.
- (3) In or within sixty feet (60 ft) of any Historic District or Historic Landmark or site listed on the most current edition of the “District of Columbia Inventory of Historic Sites” as amended from time to time, unless the Special Sign is located outside a Residential District, on a side-wall or back-wall of the building or site and historic preservation approval is granted if necessary. Special signs in any Historic District or on a Historic Landmark or site shall be removed within six months of its erection, hanging, placement or display.
- (4) In or within one hundred feet (100 ft) of premises within the area controlled by Public Law 231, 71st Congress, known as the Shipstead-Luce Act.
- (5) In or within one hundred feet (100 ft) of premises within the area controlled by Public Law 808, 81st Congress, known as the Old Georgetown Act.
- (6) In a waterfront district (W) and pursuant to specific prohibitions as may be contained in the Zoning Regulations of the District of Columbia, as amended from time to time.

**3107.17.11 Enforcement of Regulations and Removal of Special Signs:** Any unauthorized Special Sign (including a Special Sign without a permit, or a permitted Special Sign with unauthorized artwork) shall be taken down, removed, or obliterated within ten (10) days after receipt of written notification of violation from the Department.

The code official is authorized to bring enforcement actions on behalf of the Department, which may include the authorization to use the police or other governmental authority to order removal of, or to remove, the unauthorized Special Sign and the imposition of civil fines of no more than three dollars (\$3) per square foot of sign, per day that the unauthorized Special Sign fails to be taken down, removed or obliterated. Both the owner of the premises upon which the Special Sign is displayed and the permit holder are responsible for taking down, removing or obliterating the sign upon notification by the Department to do so, and both may be held responsible for any penalties or fines imposed for the violation. Additional enforcement measures may be taken pursuant to, and consistent with, the provisions of Section 113, "Violations and Infractions."

**3107.17.12. Moratorium on Issuance of Special Signs:** Other than for changes in artwork pursuant to Subsection 3107.17.5, or for transfers of location pursuant to Subsection 3107.17.7, no new Special Sign Permits shall be issued after November 9, 2000.

## **SECTION 3110A FENCES**

### *Add new Section 3110 Fences*

**3110.1 General.** Fences shall comply with the requirements of this Section, other applicable Sections of this code and other municipal regulations. This Section applies to fences back of the building line. All barbed wire and similar fences shall comply with the requirement of 3110.4 and 3110.4.1. Fences on privately owned land beyond a building restriction line shall comply with the requirements for fences on public property and permits for such fences shall be obtained from the code official.

**3110.1.1 Fence walls.** Fence walls shall conform to the requirements for fences.

**3110.1.2 Screens or trellises.** Screens or trellises shall conform to the requirements for fences.

**3110.1.3 Height measurement.** The measurement of the height of a fence shall be made from the top of the fence to grade, on the side of the fence where grade level is higher.

**3110.1.4 Permit applications.** Applications for permits to erect a fence shall be accompanied by an official building plat upon which the proposed fence location is indicated. Approval by the Zoning Division of the Department shall be required before a permit shall be issued.

**3110.2 Party fences.** Only those portions of the length of a fence, including footings, which are partly on each side of a party line shall be considered as party fences. Permit applications for party fences shall be signed by the owners of the properties on which the fence is to be located.

**3110.2.1 Fence materials.** A party fence shall be a wood, woven wire, or iron fence of open pattern unless otherwise agreed upon by the adjoining owners.

**3110.2.2 Height agreements.** Where owners propose to erect a party fence over 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Districts or 10 feet (3048 mm) in S-P, C, C-M, or M Districts, written agreement to the height by the owners of the properties on which the fence is to be located shall be filed with the code official before issuance of a permit.

**3110.3 Other fences.** Fences other than party fences shall comply with Sections 3110.3.1 through 3110.3.5.

**3110.3.1 Fences abutting streets.** Fences abutting a street shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Districts nor 10 feet (3048 mm) in height in S-P, C, C-M, or M Districts.

**Exception.** Wing walls attached to a building or forming part of the fences may exceed the above heights for that portion removed from party lines the distance of a side yard for a building, as required by the current Zoning Regulations.

**3110.3.2 Fences abutting alleys.** Fences abutting alleys shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Districts nor 10 feet (3048 mm) in S-P, C, C-M, or M Districts.

**Exception.** The code official is authorized to approve a greater height where the alley is 15 feet (4572 mm) wide or more.

**3110.3.3 Fences near party lines.** Fences within a strip 10 feet (3048 mm) wide and parallel to the party line shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Districts nor 10 feet (3048 mm) in S-P, C, C-M, or M Districts. Fences shall not obstruct light or ventilation for any required window.

**Exception:** Where the written consent of the adjoining owners is filed, the code official may approve a greater height.

**3110.3.4 Fences distant from party line.** Fences more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a party line, alley, building or building restriction line shall not be limited as to height, provided such fences do not encroach on a required yard or court, nor obstruct the light or ventilation for any required window.

**3110.3.5 Gate height.** Gates shall not exceed the height of the fence.

**3110.4 Barbed wire and similar fences.** No barbed wire or similar fence, barrier, or obstruction, made thus in whole or in part, shall be erected, constructed, or maintained, along the building restriction line, or in or upon any street, alley, road, or other public walk, driveway, or public or private parking in the District of Columbia.

**3110.4.1 Barbed wire and similar fence on private property.** A barbed wire or similar fence, barrier or obstruction may be erected wholly on private property when located in back of the lot line or building restriction line if one exists. The minimum height of the lowest strand of barbed wire shall be 6 feet (1829 mm) above adjacent ground and the wire shall not project beyond the lot line or building restriction line.

## **CHAPTER 32A ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY**

### **SECTION 3201A GENERAL**

*Maintain this Section without deletion*

### **SECTION 3202A ENCROACHMENTS**

*Delete Sections 3202.1 through 3202.4 in their entirety and substitute the following:*

**3202.1 Character of encroachments.** Encroachments (hereinafter referred to in this Section as “projections” are a privilege. They cannot be claimed as a right, and require a permit issued by the code official. The provisions of Section 3202 establish the limitations on projections that may be granted, but proposed projections may be further restricted or refused if the code official considers such action best for the public interest.

**3202.2 Removal of projections.** All permits for projections shall be issued with the understanding and agreement by the applicant that any and all such projections shall be promptly removed upon notice by the code official. Projections not requiring individual approval. Footing projections approved in connection with building permits, bases, sills, water tables, cornices, belt courses, and roof overhangs conforming with requirements hereafter defined, shall not require approval as projections.

**3202.4 Modification of projection requirements.** The code official is authorized to grant modifications of requirements on projections when either Section 3202.4.1 or 3202.4.2 applies.

**3202.4.1 Modifications in the general public interest.** Modifications requested to embellish the building, when the primary object of the modification is not the occupation of additional public space or changing of interior arrangements, and in the opinion of the code official such modification will not interfere with adjacent buildings nor with the general public interest.

**3202.4.2 Foregone construction.** When the owner will permanently forego construction on, or the use of, a projection portion of his or her lot, in conformity with a plan previously approved by the National Capital Planning Commission for improvement of any street or thoroughfare, and the code official determines that the public interest will thereby be better served, the code official is authorized to grant a modification to authorize projections which shall equitably compensate such owner. Such projections and arrangements shall comply with the limitations and conditions of Sections 3202.4.2.1 through 3202.4.2.5.

**3202.4.2.1 Width.** The width of projections allowed under Section 3202.4.2 shall be limited as follows:

1. Where the adjoining structure projects into public space a distance equal to or in excess of the proposed projection, the proposed projection may be constructed to the lot line extended, on the side of such adjoining structure.
2. Where the adjoining structure does not project into public space, or projects a distance less than the proposed projection, the proposed projection shall not extend to within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the lot line extended, on the side of such adjoining structure, unless the angle formed by the building line and the face of the proposed projection does not exceed 45 degrees.
3. Projections at the corner of two streets shall be allowed to continue around the corner if corresponding projections are approved for both streets.

**3202.4.2.2 Height.** The height of projections above grade shall be limited to the height of the building. No portion of such projection or supports thereof shall be constructed less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above the sidewalk or parking grade at any point. When approved, balconies or other projections, which in the judgment of the code official will embellish the area, may be constructed with lower clearances above grade but never less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above walkways, nor less than 15 feet (4267 mm) above driveways.

**3202.4.2.3 Projecting distance.** No projection shall extend leaving a clear space of less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the footprint on the face of the projection to the outer edge of the curb. In addition, the projection shall be limited as specified in Table 3202.4.2.

**TABLE 3202.4.2  
MAXIMUM PROJECTIONS  
UNDER FOREGONE CONSTRUCTION MODIFICATIONS**

TYPE OF STREET	WIDTH OF STREET (feet) (a)	MAXIMUM PROJECTING DISTANCE (feet) (a)
Unparked	40 to 45	4
Unparked	45 to 70	6
Unparked	70 to 80	8
Unparked	80 or over	14
Parked	Any width	14

Note a. 1 foot = 304.8 mm



**3202.4.2.4 Required covenant.** The owner who applies for a projection modification under Section 3202.4 shall record a covenant, complying with Section 106.6.4, with the Recorder of Deeds.

**3202.4.2.5 Referrals.** The code official shall refer all applications for projections under Section 3202.4.2 to the Public Space Committee for consideration and recommendation.

**3202.5 Projections on streets to be widened.** No new projections shall be allowed on the parts of streets to be widened in conformity with adopted and recorded highway extension plans until such parts of streets are so widened.

**Exceptions.** Where existing streets or avenues are widened, or new streets or avenues are laid out and opened, in conformity with the adopted and recorded highway extension plans, in subdivisions existing at the time of record of such plans, and such widening or opening shall leave buildings or parts of buildings on such streets or avenues, such buildings will be allowed projections beyond the building line. The projections of such buildings shall be limited in size to those allowed for porches but no limitations shall be placed upon the kind of projection unless the facade is structurally altered. In case the facade is structurally altered the projections shall conform in all respects to those described in the following regulations. Such buildings are permitted to be moved under permit to another location on the same lot, upon compliance with applicable regulations.

**3202.6 Streets on which projections are prohibited.** No projections except cornices, bases, sills, belt courses, pilasters, and water tables, shall be permitted beyond the building line of the streets listed below.

1. North side of Good Hope Road between Martin Luther King Jr. Avenue and Eighteenth Street, S.E.;
2. Florida Avenue, N.W., from Seventh Street to Ninth Street;
3. Maine Avenue, S.W., from Seventh Street to Fourteenth Street;
4. M Street, N.W., from Twenty-ninth Street to Thirty-sixth Street;
5. K Street, N.W., from Rock Creek westward to Wisconsin Avenue;
6. Water Street, N.W., from Wisconsin Avenue westward to the termination of said street;
7. Wisconsin Avenue, N.W., from the angle south of N Street to the north roadway of Q Street;
8. Twelfth Street, N.W., from Monroe Street to the angle north of Otis Street;

9. Martin Luther King Jr. Avenue, S.E. from Good Hope Road to the northern boundary of the grounds of St. Elizabeth's Hospital.

**3202.7 General restrictions.** All projections shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3202.7.1 through 3202.7.6.

**3202.7.1 Limitations based on street width.** No projection other than uncovered steps, cornices, bases, water tables or pilasters, shall be allowed on any street less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width and in any case a clear space from the outer edge of the curb to the outer face of all projections and steps shall be preserved and shall be not less than:

1. Six (6) feet (1829 mm) on streets 40 feet (12 192 mm) but less than 50 feet (15 250 mm) wide;
2. Eight (8) feet (2438 mm) on streets 50 feet (15 240 mm) but less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) wide;
3. Ten (10) feet (3048 mm) on streets 60 feet (18 288 mm) to and including 80 feet (24 384 mm) wide;
4. Twelve (12) feet (3658 mm) on streets over 80 feet (24 384 mm) to and including 90 feet (27 432 mm) wide;
5. Fifteen (15) feet (4572 mm) on streets more than 90 feet (27 432 mm) wide.

**3202.7.2 Clearance.** Except as provided in Section 3202.7.2.1 a clear space of at least eight (8) inches (203 mm) shall be preserved between party lines or alley lines extended and the outer walls or sides of projections.

**3202.7.2.1 Clearance exemption.** Cornices, belt courses, pilasters, bases, water tables, and walls or areas, are permitted to extend to but not over party lines or alley lines extended, but shall be constructed so that the removal of one house or its projections will not affect or damage the adjoining house or projections and will not interfere with the construction or reconstruction of projections or buildings on the adjoining property.

**3202.7.2.2 Definition of party lines extended.** The term "party lines extended" means lines through the corners of the property and perpendicular to the street.

**3202.7.3 Chimneys.** No chimney shall project beyond the building line or building restriction line.

**3202.7.4 Plumbing fixtures.** No plumbing fixtures shall be located in projections.

**3202.7.5 Overhead projections.** No portion of a sign, fixture, marquee, or other overhead projection of a building shall extend over public space closer than 18 inches

(457 mm) from of the curb line, except as provided for market sheds in Sections 3202.12.4 through 3202.12.4.3.

**3202.7.6 Construction of projections.** Except as modified elsewhere herein for specific projections, all projections shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. Roofing, skylights and roof domes in projecting structures are permitted to be of the same materials as allowed for similar non-projecting structures.

**3202.8 Projections requiring special approval.** Projections under Sections 3202.8.1 and 3202.8.2 shall require approval by the Director of Public Works.

**3202.8.1 Pedestrian walkways and tunnels.** Pedestrian walkways and tunnels shall meet the requirements of Section 3104. In addition, the vertical clearance from the public right-of-way to the lowest part of a pedestrian walkway shall be 15 feet (4572 mm) minimum.

**3202.8.2 Porte-cocheres.** Porte-cocheres shall be permitted one story in height. All driveways and approaches crossing sidewalks or parking lots shall be paved and otherwise improved to the satisfaction of the Director of Public Works.

**3202.9 Subsurface projections.** Areaway, vault, and coal chute projections shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.9.1 through 3202.9.3.

**3202.9.1 Areaways.** Areaway projections shall comply with the following requirements:

Width. The width to outside of area enclosing walls between lot lines extended is not limited. The extent of projection shall be measured from the building line to the inside face of the areaway wall.

**3202.9.1.2 Enclosure height.** The height of areaway enclosures shall be limited to the surface of the pavement or grade.

**Exceptions.** Copings not over 8 inches (203 mm) high, and railings.

**3202.9.1.3 Projection.** Projection beyond the building shall be limited by zoning districts, as defined in the current Zoning Regulations, as follows:

1. Four (4) feet (1219 mm) on streets in C, C-M, and M Districts.
2. Four (4) feet (1219 mm) on unparked streets in Residential Districts and SP Districts, more than 60 feet (18288 mm) wide.
3. Six (6) feet (1829 mm) on parked streets in Residential Districts and SP Districts, 60 to 70 feet (18288 mm to 21336 mm) wide.

4. 6 ½ feet (1981 mm) on parked streets in Residential Districts and SP Districts, more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
5. Seven (7) feet (2134 mm) on parked streets in Residential Districts and SP Districts where parking is 20 feet (6096 mm) or more in width.

**3202.9.1.4 Other requirements.** Areaways shall be protected by strong metal railing not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) nor more than 48 inches (1219 mm) high. Proper protection by metal railings shall be provided where steps or platforms are built over areas. Basement or cellar steps in areaways shall be protected in the same way and have gates at top of steps unless otherwise protected.

**Exception.** Areaways located in unpaved parking that cannot lawfully be paved are permitted to be protected by substantial metal gratings.

3202.9.1.5 Alley location prohibited. Areaways shall not be located in an alley.

3202.9.2 Vaults. Vaults shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.9.2.1 through

3202.9.2.1 Permits. Applications for vault permits shall comply with the following:

1. Plans shall be submitted showing the location and dimensions of the vault and all openings, the depth, and proposed construction.
2. The application for a vault permit shall be accompanied by a certified copy showing the recordation with the Recorder of Deeds, District of Columbia, of a written agreement upon the official form for the purpose signed by the owner of the abutting property, contracting to release and relinquish the vault space, and to remove, free of expense to the District of Columbia, all structural parts of the vault when so ordered by the code official, as required by the Police Regulations.

**3202.9.2.2 Size and openings.** Vault design shall comply with the following:

1. The size and extent of vaults, and the number and size of openings, will be a matter of special determination in each case by the code official.
2. Vaults extending under alleys shall have no openings in alley pavement, and shall not extend within 2.5 feet (762 mm) of the center of the alley.

**3202.9.2.3 Use of vault space.** The use of the vault space shall be restricted as follows:

1. In business districts, vaults shall not be used for: public entrances to basements; exit corridors unless they are open area way stairs; the housing of boilers, plumbing fixtures, propane or any similar flammable gas; or the housing of mechanical appliances or any equipment not removable within 24 hours. However, except for transformer vaults, vaults shall be allowed to be used for the storage of readily movable personal property and equipment, for sales or office space, for the storage of fuel oil tanks, or for the parking of motor vehicles. Ducts, pipes, wiring, fans, ducted air shafts, and similar items which can be removed or relocated if vault space is removed shall be allowed to be installed in vault space.
2. In business districts, filling pipes for fuel oil shall be extended to within 18 inches (457 mm) of the curb line when physically possible. Such pipes shall terminate in filling boxes of approved design. A separate permit shall be required for filling pipes and boxes.
3. If openings in the roofs of vaults are used for sidewalk elevators or for runways, they shall be located as near to the curb as possible and shall be equipped with heavy metal safety doors and frames.
4. The code official is authorized to approve other uses not forbidden by law, code, or regulation.

**3202.9.2.4 Vault cover.** Cover over vaults shall comply with the following:

1. The paving over vaults shall be laid according to specifications of the Department of Public Works for surface paving and shall conform with established grades. All such coverings shall be so constructed as to be flush with pavement, and have a roughened surface to provide security to persons passing over them. Pavements over vaults shall be laid at the expense and risk of the owner of abutting property, but not until a special permit or order has been issued by the Department of Public Works. The roof of a vault between the curb and building lines shall at no place be less than 4 inches (102 mm) below the approved sidewalk grade at that point.
2. Vaults shall be roofed over within a reasonable time or within the time fixed by the permit. Whenever the grade is changed, the vault shall be changed and repaved at the expense of the owner of abutting property, to comply with the new grade.

**3202.9.2.5 Interference with utilities.** Construction of vaults shall observe the following restrictions:

1. Vaults shall be constructed so as not to interfere with sewers, water mains, gas mains, electric or telephone conduits, signal conduits, manholes, lamp posts, trees, or any other public or public utility works or improvements.
2. If construction or alteration of a vault requires the removal or relocation of utilities, and if by agreement a public utility or District utility arranges to alter its facilities, the owner of abutting property shall notify the appropriate company or office concerned as to when he or she has been issued a permit and is ready to start construction or alteration work.

**3202.9.3 Coal chutes.** In Residential and SP Districts, coal chutes with circular cast iron covers shall be allowable to be located within the space allowed for areaways, provided however, that no coal chute shall be located within the sidewalk space. In C, C-M, and M Districts, the location of coal chutes shall conform to the requirements for vaults.

**3202.10 Balconies, windows, towers and structural trim.** Balconies, windows, towers and structural trim shall conform to the provisions to Sections 3202.10.1 through 3202.10.9.

**3202.10.1 General restrictions.** The restrictions of Sections 3202.10.1.1 and 3202.10.1.2 shall apply to projections as specified therein.

**3202.10.1.1 Prohibition on alley location.** No balcony, bay or oriel window, or tower shall project over alley spaces.

**3202.10.1.2 Restrictions based on zoning districts.** No bay or oriel window, or tower projecting over public space shall be allowed on buildings to be built in C, C-M, or M Districts, as defined in the current Zoning Regulations. No show windows projecting over public space shall be allowed on buildings to be built in Residential or SP Districts, as defined in the current Zoning Regulations. Where such projections are on existing buildings in such districts, and the buildings are structurally altered, the projections shall be removed. Bay or oriel windows, or towers are permitted on buildings in Residential or SP Districts, including one or more street fronts of such buildings.

**3202.10.2 Balconies.** Balconies shall comply with the following width, height, and projection requirements:

**3202.10.2.1 Width.** Balcony width is unlimited except for 8-inch separation from party or lot lines extended. Where balconies are built in conjunction with bay windows, they shall comply in width with the requirements for bay windows and be included in their width.

**3202.10.2.2 Height.** Height of railings shall be limited to 3 feet 6 inches (1067 mm) above the floor of the balcony.

**3202.10.2.3 Projection.** The balcony projection shall be limited to 3 feet (914 mm) from the building line on streets more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) and less than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide, and to 4 feet (1219 mm) from the building line on streets 70 feet (21 336 mm) or more in width.

**3203.10.3 Bay windows.** Stairways shall not be permitted in the bay windows. Doors, not swinging beyond the projection, shall be permitted.

**3203.10.3.1 Width.** The width of bay windows shall be limited as follows:

1. A single projection of 9 feet (2743 mm) in width shall be allowed for all buildings having a width of 16 feet (4877 mm) or more at the building line; the allowable width of a single projection shall increase 6 inches (152 mm) for every foot (305 mm) of increase in the width of the buildings 24 feet (7315 mm) wide at the building line. For buildings over 24 feet (7315 mm) in width the allowable width of a single projection shall increase 2 inches (51 mm) for every foot (305 mm) of increase in width of the building over 24 feet (7315 mm).
2. Double projections (two separate projections) shall not be allowed on buildings less than 24 feet (7315 mm) wide at the building line. On buildings 24 feet (7315 mm) wide a double projection shall be allowed, the total width of both projections not to exceed 13 feet (3962 mm). The allowable width of double or multiple projections on buildings exceeding 24 feet (7315 mm) wide at the building line shall be increased 6 inches (152 mm) for each foot (305 mm) of increased building width over 24 feet (7315 mm).
3. The width of all projections shall be measured at a distance of one foot from the building line.
4. Bay window projections of buildings on interior lots shall not extend beyond party lines extended. Bay windows at the corner of two streets are permitted to be continued around the corner. The portion of the bay window beyond building lines extended shall not be counted in the width of projections on either front.

**3202.10.3.2 Height.** The height of bay windows is not limited.

**3202.10.3.3 Projection.** The projection shall be limited as follows:

1. Three (3) feet (914 mm) on streets 60 feet (18 288 mm) to 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
2. Four (4) feet (1219 mm) on streets more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.

**3202.10.4 Oriel and show windows.** Oriel and show windows shall conform with all the requirements governing bay windows.

**3202.10.5 Towers.** Tower projections shall conform with all the requirements governing bay windows.

**3202.10.6 Colonnades.** The width of colonnades is not limited except by the clearance from party and alley lines extended required under Section 3202.7.2. Colonnades shall comply with the following height and projection requirements:

**3202.10.6.1 Height.** The height of colonnades is limited to two stories above grade. The main floor of the colonnade shall not be more than 7 inches (178 mm) above grade.

**3202.10.6.2 Projection.** Colonnade projection is limited to 6 feet (1829 mm) where parking is 17 feet (5182 mm) or more wide. No colonnades shall be permitted where parking is less than 17 feet (5182 mm) wide.

**3202.10.7 Pilasters.** Pilasters not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) wide are permitted to project 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the building line; pilaster bases are permitted to project 8 inches (203 mm) beyond the building line.

**3202.10.8 Bases, water tables, and sills.** Bases and water tables shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm) above grade at the building wall nor above window sill level of the main story. Their length is not limited. The projection beyond the building line of bases, water tables, and window and other sills, is limited to 8 inches (203 mm).

**3202.10.9 Belt courses, cornices and roof overhangs.** The length and height of belt courses, cornices, and roof overhangs are not limited. The projection beyond the building line is limited to 8 inches (203 mm) for belt courses and 60 inches for cornices and roof overhangs.

**3202.11 Porches, steps, ramps and doors.** Porches, steps, ramps and doors shall conform to the provisions of Sections 3202.11.1 through 3202.11.5.

**3202.11.1 Restrictions by zoning districts.** Porch and step projections shall be allowed only in Residential and SP Districts, as established by the current Zoning Regulations.

**3202.11.2 Porches.** Porches shall have open balustrades or railings and shall be open to the roof. The floor of the porch shall be not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the terrace, parking, or pavement.

**3202.11.2.1 Width.** Where there are no bay windows, oriel or tower projections, porches shall not be limited in width. Where there are such projections in the same story, the total width of porch and bay window, oriel, or tower projections shall not exceed that given for multiple bay window projections.



**3202.11.2.2 Height.** Porches shall be limited to one story in case of wood frame construction. Porches of more than one story in height shall be of noncombustible construction throughout and shall conform to the provisions for bay windows in Section 3202.10.3 as to the width and extent of projection beyond the building line.

**3202.11.2.3 Projection.** Porch projection shall be limited as follows:

1. Three (3) feet (914 mm) on unparked streets, 60 feet (18 288 mm) to 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
2. Four (4) feet (1219 mm) on unparked streets more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
3. Five (5) feet (1524 mm) on all parked streets.

**3202.11.2.4 Rear porches.** Porches on rear of dwellings shall not project over the building line or building restriction line.

**3202.11.3 Steps and ramps.** Steps and ramps are not limited in width but shall comply with the following height and projection requirements.

**3202.11.3.1 Height.** Step and ramp heights shall be limited to that of the main floor.

**3202.11.3.2 Projection.** Step and ramp projection shall be limited as follows:

1. Three (3) feet (914 mm) on unparked streets 40 feet (12 192 mm) but less than 45 feet (13 716 mm) wide.
2. Four (4) feet (12 192 mm) on unparked streets 45 feet (13 716 mm) but less than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
3. Five (5) feet (1524 mm) on unparked streets 70 feet (21 336 mm) but less than 80 feet (24 384 mm) wide.
4. Six (6) feet (1829 mm) on unparked streets 80 feet (24 384 mm) wide or over.
5. Ten (10) feet (3048 mm) on parked streets.

**3202.11.4 Projecting doors and windows.** Projecting doors and windows shall conform to the provisions of Sections 3202.11.4.1 through 3202.11.5.

**3202.11.4.1 Permanent doors or windows.** No permanent door or window shall open outward on public spaces when less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the sidewalk grade.

**Exception.** Where the line of travel is protected by an adjoining porch, terrace, bay window, areaway, or similar construction, projecting not less than the outward swing of the door, permanent doors or windows are permitted to open outward.

**3202.11.4.2 Residential or SP districts.** Permanent doors and windows in Residential or SP Districts shall be allowed to open on public parking, provided they do not encroach on any sidewalk or driveway.

**3202.11.5 Storm doors.** Storm doors projection beyond the building shall not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) and width of enclosure shall be not more than 3 feet 914 mm) beyond each side of the permanent door opening. When doors are located on a business street where there is no parking, doors shall be placed in the side of the vestibule and open outward or be double acting.

**3202.12 Awnings, canopies, marquees, market sheds, platforms, and scales.** Awnings canopies, marquees, market sheds, platforms, and scales shall conform to the provisions of this Section and other applicable Sections of this code.

**3202.12.1 Awnings.** Awnings shall conform to the provisions of this Section, Section 3105 and other applicable Sections of this code.

**3202.12.1.1 Projecting awnings beyond the building line.** Awnings shall have a minimum clear height of 8 feet (2438 mm) above the sidewalk or any other space used by the public, and shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3202.12.1 through 3202.12.1.6.

**3202.12.1.2 Folding, hinged or fixed awnings.** Folding, hinged or fixed type awnings attached only to the structure are permitted to be erected over windows, show windows and doors and shall extend not over 5 feet (1524 mm) beyond the point of attachment. The width shall be sufficient to cover only the door or opening and a reasonable distance each side thereof.

**Exception:** Projecting porches are permitted to be covered with an awning in Residential Districts.

**3202.12.1.3 Awnings over parking and sidewalks.** Awnings with fixed iron posts and frames are permitted to be erected beyond the building line to the inner line of the sidewalk. The code official is authorized to approve permits for awnings of this class for use in conjunction with any place of assembly having an occupant capacity greater than 100 persons; with any residential building having more than 50 dwelling units; and with any mercantile establishment or business building when such establishment or business building has a frontage of 100 feet

(30480 mm) or more on the street on which the awning is proposed or contains more than 15,000 square feet (1,393.5 square meters) in area per floor.

**3202.12.1.4 Specific cases.** In specific cases where the code official determines that such an installation would be of merit without being detrimental to the public, awnings over sidewalks may extend as close as 18 inches (457 mm) from the curb. In these cases, when the code official determines that (a) pedestrian traffic flow will not be impeded, (b) the presence of such an awning will not detract from the appearance of the neighborhood, and (c) such an awning will be of convenience to the patrons of the establishment served by the awning, especially in the loading and unloading of vehicular traffic in inclement weather, the code official is authorized to grant approval.

**3202.12.1.5 Awning width.** The width of awnings over parking or sidewalks typically shall be limited to the width of the door or opening and a reasonable distance each side thereof. Awnings shall be of approved fire-retardant material and of sufficient size to afford cover over the authorized seating area, preserving a minimum clearance of 8 inches (203 mm) from the party lines extended. All permit applications must be accompanied by drawings showing the spacing of all posts and method of anchoring. The frames shall be structurally stable and posts shall be so located as not to impede the principal flow of pedestrian traffic. Posts shall be rigidly secured at the base in sockets or by other approved means.

**3202.12.1.6 Temporary awnings or canopies.** Permits for sockets in the sidewalk for temporary covered ways across sidewalks or parking, as provided in Section 105 of DCMR Title 24 shall be issued upon approval of the Department of Public Works. Permits for sockets confer no authority to erect temporary covered ways across sidewalks or any other space used by the public. Where sockets have been regularly installed, the Police Department will thereafter issue temporary permits authorizing the use of the temporary covered way in inclement weather.

**3202.12.2 Canopies.** Canopies shall conform to the provisions of this Section, Section 3105 and other applicable Sections of this code. Canopies are permitted to be erected in the C, C-M, and M Districts over show windows or other display openings and loading platforms, subject to the following limitations:

**3202.12.2.1 Width.** Canopies are permitted to extend laterally on a building so as to cover the display window or space and a reasonable distance on each side thereof.

**3202.12.2.2 Clearance.** The minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any canopy shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**3202.12.2.3 Projection.** Canopy projections shall not exceed 5 feet (1524 mm) into public space unless the plans are submitted to and approved by the code official.

**3202.12.3 Marquees.** Marquees shall conform to the provisions of this Section, Section 3106 and other applicable Sections of this code. Marquees shall meet the following width, height, and projection requirements:

**3202.12.3.1 Width.** No construction supported directly from the building, either under the name of "marquee" or otherwise, shall be permitted to extend laterally on a building more than a sufficient length to cover the entrance and a reasonable distance on each side thereof.

**Exceptions.** Covered porches and marquees over loading platforms.

**3202.12.3.2 Clearance.** The minimum clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any marquee shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**3202.12.3.3 Projection.** On a parked street in a Residential District where the parking is not paved, or under Section 104.7 of DCMR Title 24 may not be paved, a marquee is permitted to project to the outer edge of line of said parking. On streets within C, C-M, and M Districts, on streets in a Residential District having no parking and streets on which the parking is paved or under Section 104.7 of DCMR Title 24 is permitted to be paved, the projection shall not exceed 5 feet (1524 mm), provided that if it is desired to exceed in projection the limits above specified, or to construct or support a marquee on posts, or otherwise than directly from the building, plans therefore shall be submitted to and approved by the code official.

**3202.12.4 Market sheds.** A market shed shall be permitted only on a site occupied by a market or produce house, when such site has been specifically designated as a market area.

**3202.12.4.1 Design.** The design of market sheds shall be approved by the code official, a permit shall be required, and all market sheds shall comply with the following provisions:

1. The shed roof is permitted over the public parking and public sidewalk of a building or buildings used for market purposes, extending from the building line to the curb.
2. The line of supports for the shed roof shall be at the inner edge of the sidewalk, the overhang being supported as a cantilever, unless the location of supports is otherwise approved by the Department of Public Works.

The shed is permitted to be supported by hanging from the wall of the building when approved by the code official.

3. Gutters shall be provided throughout the length of all shed roofs, with downspouts equivalent to a 2 ½-inch pipe per 200 square feet of surface drains, the pitch of the roof to be at least ½ inch per foot.
4. Shed roofs shall be furnished with electric lights beneath them with a candlepower equivalent to one 100-candles lamp per 100 linear feet (30480 mm) of shed or fraction thereof.
5. Shed roofs shall comply with all structural requirements of Chapter 16 and other applicable Sections of this code.

**3202.12.4.2 Use of space.** No public space beneath a shed constructed as above shall be used for the display, sale or storage of produce or containers.

**Exception.** An area specifically designated as a market area for the retail or wholesale sale of produce on the premises is permitted to be used for the display, sale or storage of produce or containers. The exception shall not affect the temporary storage of materials incident to loading and unloading.

**3202.12.4.3 Special conditions.** The foregoing rules shall be observed by the code official as a guide in issuing permits for such construction except where the conditions are so obviously at variance with these general rules as to require special consideration. Cases requiring special **consideration shall be reviewed as modifications pursuant to Chapter 1.**

**3202.12.5 Loading platforms.** The code official is authorized to approve loading platforms projecting more than 5 feet (1524 mm) beyond the building line, in C-M and M Districts. Canopies over such platforms shall be permitted. Special approval by the code official shall be required for such platforms and canopies.

**3202.12.6 Platform scales.** Platform scales projecting on public space are permitted in C-M and M Districts. Special approval by the Director of Public Works shall be required.

**3202.13 Enclosed sidewalk cafés.** Enclosed sidewalk cafés shall comply with this Section and all other applicable Sections of this code.

**3202.13.1 Permits.** Permits for enclosed sidewalk cafés shall be issued by the code official and shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations. Each application shall be accompanied by drawings of the structure, prepared and signed by a structural engineer registered in the District of Columbia. Other enforceable laws and regulations governing sidewalk cafes include: The Enclosed Sidewalk Café Act of 1982, D.C. Law 4-148, effective September 16, 1982; Chapters 2 and 3 of DCMR Title 24; Mayor's Order

No. 77-150, effective August 31, 1977; and regulations of the Department of Public Works, 30 D.C.R. 4346, August 26, 1983.

**3202.13.2 Design.** Permits for enclosed sidewalk cafés shall comply with Sections 3202.13.2.1 through 3202.13.2.5.

**3202.13.2.1 Walls and roofs.** Enclosed sidewalk cafés must have walls and roofs constructed of noncombustible materials.

**3202.13.2.2 Flooring.** Flooring shall comply with Section 804.

**3202.13.2.3 Enclosure materials.** Any enclosure materials, and the contents enclosed therein, must be capable of being removed within 24 hours.

**3202.13.2.4 Structural requirements.** Enclosed sidewalk cafés shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 16 and other applicable Sections of this code.

**3202.13.2.5 Exits.** When the combined occupancies of the sidewalk café and the adjacent restaurant exceed 75 persons, two exits shall be provided from the sidewalk café, one of which shall open directly to the sidewalk, public alley, or public space abutting the café, and the other may open into the abutting restaurant. If two means of egress are required for the adjacent business property, both means of egress shall be required for the sidewalk café. If one of the exits is in the center of the café and serves the interior of the restaurant, the required aisle width shall be increased to a width deemed acceptable by the code official.

## **CHAPTER 33A SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION**

### **SECTION 3301A GENERAL**

*Add Section 3301.2.1 to read as follows:*

**3301.2.1 OSHA.** Worker safety, health, and hazards involved in building operations shall be designed in accordance with 29 CFR Part 1926 of Occupational Safety and Health Administration Standards listed in Chapter 35.

### **SECTION 3303A DEMOLITION**

*Add new Sections 3303.1.1 through 3303.1.4 to read as follows:*

**3303.1.1 Required safeguards.** Props, posts, braces, stages, platforms and scaffolding necessary to provide sufficient strength and rigidity to the portions of the structure being demolished or removed shall be provided.

**3303.1.2 Special approval.** No structure, or portion thereof, being demolished shall be pulled or blasted, unless specific approval is given by the code official.

**3303.1.3 Grade level of walls.** All walls being demolished, including foundation and interior basement walls (but not including party walls on property lines), shall be reduced to a level below that of final grade.

**3303.1.4 Vaults.** All vaults projecting into public space, including walls, shall be removed in their entirety and the depression filled in accordance with the requirements of the Department of Public Works.

*Revise Section 3303.4 to read as follows:*

**3303.4 Site treatment.** Where a structure has been demolished or removed, the vacant lot shall be filled and maintained to the existing grade in accordance with applicable regulations of this code and jurisdiction.

*Add new Sections 3303.4.1 through 3303.4.4 to read as follows:*

**3303.4.1 Driveways.** All driveways in public space shall be removed in their entirety and new curbs and pavement constructed in accordance with the specifications of the Department of Public Works. The cost of the removal of the driveways and replacement

of the curbs and pavement shall be the responsibility of the person executing the demolition.

**3303.4.2 Fill.** Excavations, holes, and depressions shall be filled and leveled to a final grade which will provide good drainage.

**3303.4.3 Fill materials.** No materials other than Class 1, Class 2 or Class 3 fill material shall be used in filling depressions and grading the site. All depressions shall be filled; all excess earth, all building materials, and all debris shall be removed from the site; and the premises shall be left in a safe, clean and sanitary condition. All work shall be done in accordance with the Department of Health Environmental Health Administration Watershed Protection Division and, where applicable, the Department of Public Works.

**3303.4.4 Timing.** Deferral, for a period of not more than six (6) months, of the provisions for site treatment after removal of an existing building, shall be permitted if a new building is to be constructed thereon and the new construction started at the site within six (6) months of completion of demolition. If site treatment is deferred, the site shall be completely fenced and maintained so as to exclude the public from access to the site during the period between demolition and new construction.

## **SECTION 3307A PROTECTION OF ADJOINING PROPERTY**

*Revise Section 3307.1 to read as follows:*

**3307.1 Protection required.** Adjoining public and private property shall be protected from damage during construction, remodeling or demolition work. Protection must be provided for footings, foundations, party walls, chimneys, skylights, and roofs. Provisions shall be made to control water run-off and erosion during construction or demolition activities.

*Add Sections 3307.2 through 3307.4 to read as follows:*

**3307.2 Notification required.** The person causing work to be made that will affect an adjoining property shall provide written notice to the owners of adjoining buildings advising them of the intended work and that the adjoining buildings should be protected. If afforded the necessary written permission to enter the adjoining lot, building or structure, the person causing the construction, excavation, remodeling or demolition to be made shall at all times and at his or her own expense preserve and protect the adjoining lot, building or structure from damage or injury.

1. If the work is non-structural, notification shall be delivered to the adjoining property owner, with a copy to the code official, not less than 10 days prior to the scheduled starting date of the work.
2. If the work involves excavation requiring underpinning or other structural support of the adjoining building, the person causing the work shall notify the adjoining property owner by registered mail, with a copy to the code official, not less than thirty (30) days prior to



the proposed starting date. This notification shall include a copy of all documents filed for necessary permits. The adjoining property owner shall have thirty (30) days to respond in writing. If the necessary written permission is not afforded, the adjoining owner and the code official shall be notified by registered mail. It shall then be the duty of the owner of the adjoining lot, building or structure to make safe his or her own property, for the prosecution of which said owner shall be granted the necessary written permission to enter the premises of the construction, excavation, remodeling or demolition.

**3307.2.1 Underpinning party walls.** In the case of existing adjoining or party walls which require underpinning, proper underpinning shall be provided in accordance with applicable sections of this code whether or not written permission to enter the adjoining lot is granted.

**3307.2.1.1 Party walls.** In case of party walls erected in the original city of Washington (Squares 1–1170), or party walls erected with written consent of the adjoining owners, or both, the person causing the work shall notify the adjoining property owner, with a copy to the code official, not less than thirty (30) days prior to the proposed starting date. This notification shall include a copy of all documents filed for necessary permits. The person causing such excavation need not obtain the written permission from the adjacent property owner to provide underpinning for the adjoining structure.

**3307.2.2 Party wall maintenance.** In case an existing party wall is intended to remain or be used by the person who causes a construction operation to be made, and such party wall is in good condition and sufficient for the use of both the existing and proposed building, such person shall preserve the party wall from injury and shall support the party wall by proper foundations at said person's own expense, so that the wall is and remains as is and useful as the party wall was before the work was commenced. During any construction operation, the party wall shall be maintained weatherproof and structurally safe by adequate bracing until such time as the permanent structural supports have been provided.

**3307.2.2.1 Temporary protection.** If the party wall is to remain exposed for less than sixty (60) days, the exposed portions of the wall shall be protected from weather damage by tarpaulins, waterproof paper, or other temporary means approved for use by the code official. Such temporary protection shall be maintained in a weatherproof condition.

**3307.2.2.2 Intermediate protection.** If the party wall is to remain exposed for more than sixty (60) days, but less than eighteen (18) months, the exposed wall shall be restored and weatherproofed in accordance with the requirements for the particular type of construction involved. All plaster and other material not commonly used for exterior construction shall be removed; all holes shall be properly filled; and masonry party walls shall be repointed.

**3307.2.2.3 Permanent protection.** If the party wall is to remain exposed for eighteen (18) months or longer, the party walls shall be permanently restored and weatherproofed in accordance with the requirements for the particular type of construction involved. Party walls shall be faced with material commonly used for exterior finish, or restored as closely as practicable with the facing material and construction of the other exterior walls of the building left standing, and shall be painted or otherwise finished in a manner similar to other parts of the building.

**3307.2.3 Party wall beam holes:** Where a structure involving a party wall is being demolished, the owner of the demolished structure shall, at his or her own expense, bend over all wall anchors at the beam ends of the standing wall and shall brick up all open beam holes and otherwise maintain the safety and usefulness of the wall.

**3307.2.4 Unsafe party walls.** If any party wall or portion thereof which is left standing and exposed after a building is demolished or partially removed is deemed unsafe or dangerous by the code official, then the owner of the building that is being removed or demolished shall either remove and reconstruct, or anchor, brace, or buttress all of those portions of the party wall deemed unsafe or dangerous, and shall do all other work necessary to enclose properly the building or structure left standing.

**3307.3 Chimneys, soil stacks, vent stacks, and windows.** Wherever a new building or structure is erected to greater or lesser heights than an adjoining building, the construction and extension of new or existing chimneys, soil stacks, vent stacks, and the location of window openings shall comply with applicable sections of this code.

**3307.4 Adjoining roofs and flashing.** The owner shall repair and restore all flashing on any adjoining property, which has been broken or damaged during any construction operations. The owner shall also install such new flashing as may be required to protect any joints exposed by such operations. Where a new building or demolition of an existing building is being conducted at a greater height, the roof, roof outlets and roof structures of adjoining buildings shall be protected against damage with adequate safeguards by the person doing the work.

## **CHAPTER 34A EXISTING STRUCTURES**

*Chapter 34 of the International Building Code is deleted in its entirety, without replacement.*

## **CHAPTER 35A REFERENCED STANDARDS**

*Add Reference Standard OSHA to read as follows:*

OSHA	Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration	
Standard Reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
29 CFR - Part 1910	Occupational Safety and Health Standards	1607.14
29 CFR - Part 1926	Occupational Safety and Health Standards	3301.2.1

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12B RESIDENTIAL CODE**

**CHAPTER 3B BUILDING PLANNING**

**SECTION R-301 DESIGN CRITERIA**

*Revise Section R-301.1.2 to read as follows:*

**R-301.1.2 Engineered Design.** When a building of otherwise conventional light-frame construction contains structural elements not conforming to this code, these elements shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of non-conventional elements with other applicable provisions and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventional framed system.

Engineered design in accordance with the International Building Code is permitted for all buildings and structures, and parts thereof, included in the scope of this code.

**SECTION R-303 LIGHT, VENTILATION & HEATING**

*Revise Section R-303.4.1 to read as follows:*

**R-303.4.1 Light activation.** The control for activation of the required interior stairway lighting shall be accessible at the top and bottom of each stairway without traversing any steps. The illumination of exterior stairways shall be controlled from inside the dwelling unit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Lights that are continuously illuminated or automatically controlled.
2. Interior stairways consisting of less than six steps.

**SECTION R-304 MINIMUM ROOM AREAS**

*Revise Section R-304.2 Exception to read as follows:*

**R-304.2 Other rooms.** Other habitable rooms shall have a floor area of not less than 70 square feet (6.5 m<sup>2</sup>).

**Exception:** Kitchens

## **SECTION R-305 CEILING HEIGHT**

*Add new Section R-305.1 Exception 4 to read as follows:*

4. Bathrooms shall have a minimum ceiling height of 6 feet 8 inches (2036 mm) over the fixture and at the front clearance area for fixtures as shown in Figure R307.2. A shower or tub equipped with a showerhead shall have a minimum ceiling height of 6 feet 8 inches (2036 mm) above a minimum area of 30 inches (762 mm) by 30 inches (762 mm) at the showerhead.

## **SECTION R-310 EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS**

*Revise Section R-310.1 to read as follows:*

**R-310.1 Emergency escape and rescue required.** Every sleeping room shall have at least one openable emergency escape and rescue window or exterior door opening for emergency escape and rescue. Where openings are provided as a means of escape and rescue they shall have a sill height of not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the adjacent interior standing surface. Where a door opening having a threshold below the adjacent ground elevation serves as an emergency escape and rescue opening and is provided with a bulkhead enclosure, the bulkhead enclosure shall comply with Section R-310.3. The net clear opening dimensions required by this section shall be obtained by the normal operation of the window or door opening from the inside. Escape and rescue window openings with a finished sill height below the adjacent ground elevation shall be provided with a window well in accordance with Section R-310.2.

## **SECTION R-312 LANDINGS**

*Revise Section R-312.1.2 Exception to read as follows:*

**R-312.1.2 Landings at doors.** There shall be a floor or landing on each side of an exterior door.

**Exception:** Where a stairway of two or fewer risers is located on the exterior side of a door, other than the required exit door, a landing is not required for the exterior side of the door.

## **SECTION R-314 STAIRWAYS**

*Revise Section R-314.2 to read as follows:*

**R-314.2 Treads and risers.** The maximum riser height shall be 8 1/4 inches (210 mm) and the minimum tread depth shall be 9 inches (229 mm). The riser height shall be measured vertically between leading edges of the adjacent treads. The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to the treads leading edge. The walking surface of treads and landings of a stairway shall be sloped no steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope). The greatest riser height within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

The greatest tread depth within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

*Revise Section R-314.2.1 Exception 1 to read as follows:*

**Exceptions:**

1. A nosing is not required where the tread is a minimum of 10 inches (254 mm).

*Revise Section R-314.6 to read as follows:*

**R-314.6. Circular stairways.** Circular stairways shall have a tread depth at a point not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the side where the treads are narrower of not less than 10 inches (254 mm) and the minimum depth of any tread shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm). Tread depth at any walking line, measured a consistent distance from a side of the stairway, shall be uniform as specified in R-314.2

**SECTION R-315 HANDRAILS**

*Delete Section R-315.1 in its entirety and add new paragraph to read as follows (maintain Exceptions to this Section):*

**R-315.1 Handrails.** Handrails shall be provided on at least one side of stairways consisting of three or more risers. Handrails shall have a minimum height of 34 inches (864 mm) and a maximum height of 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from the nosing of the treads. All required handrails shall be continuous the full length of the stairs from a point directly above the top riser to a point directly above the lowest riser of the stairway. The ends of the handrail shall be returned into a wall or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals. A minimum clear space of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) shall be provided between the wall and the handrail.

**SECTION R-321 DWELLING UNIT SEPARATION**

Delete Section R-321.3.2 Exceptions and add the following new Exceptions to read as follows:

**R-321.3.2 Membrane penetrations.** Membrane penetrations shall comply with Section R-321.3.1. Where walls are required to have a minimum 1-hour fire resistance rating, recessed light fixtures shall be so installed such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

**Exceptions:**

1. Steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (0.0103m<sup>2</sup>) in area provided the total area of such openings does not exceed 100 square inches (0.0645 m<sup>2</sup>) for any 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of wall area. Outlet boxes on opposite sides of the wall shall be separated as follows:
  - 1.1 By a horizontal distance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm), or

- 1.2 By a horizontal distance of not less than the depth of the wall cavity when the wall cavity is filled with cellulose loose-fill or mineral fiber insulation, or
  - 1.3 By solid fire blocking in accordance with Section R602.8.1, or
  - 1.4 By other listed materials and methods.
- 2. Membrane penetrations for listed electrical outlet boxes of any materials are permitted provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.
  - 3. The annular space created by the penetration of a fire sprinkler provided it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

*Add new Section R-328 to read as follows:*

## **SECTION R-328 SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS, AND HOT TUBS**

**R-328.1 General.** Provisions of Appendix G, Swimming Pools, Spas, and Hot Tubs, of this Code shall be mandatory.

## CHAPTER 5B FLOORS

### SECTION R-502 WOOD FLOOR FRAMING

Add new Section R-502.3.3 to read as follows:

**R-502.3.3 Floor Cantilevers.** Floor cantilever spans shall not exceed the nominal depth of the wood floor joist. Floor cantilevers constructed in accordance with table R-502.3.3 shall be permitted when supporting a light-frame bearing wall and roof only. The ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be at least 3 to 1. TABLE R-502.3.3

**CANTILEVER SPANS FOR FLOOR JOISTS  
SUPPORTING LIGHT-FRAME EXTERIOR BEARING WALL AND ROOF ONLY<sup>a, b, c, f, g, h</sup>**

(Floor Live Load ≤ 40 psf, Roof Live Load ≤ 20 psf)

Member & SPACING	MAXIMUM CANTILEVER SPAN (UPLIFT FORCE AT BACKSPAN SUPPORT IN LBS.) <sup>d,e</sup>											
	GROUND SNOW LOAD											
	≤ 20 psf			30 psf			50 psf			70 psf		
	ROOF WIDTH			ROOF WIDTH			ROOF WIDTH			ROOF WIDTH		
	24 ft.	32 ft.	40 ft.	24 ft.	32 ft.	40 ft.	24 ft.	32 ft.	40 ft.	24 ft.	32 ft.	40 ft.
2X8 @ 12"	20" (177)	15" (227)		18" (209)								
2X10 @ 16"	29" (228)	21" (297)	16" (364)	26" (271)	18" (354)		20" (375)					
2X10 @ 12"	36" (166)	26" (219)	20" (270)	34" (198)	22" (263)	16" (324)	26" (277)			19" (356)		
2X12 @ 16"		32" (287)	25" (356)	36" (263)	29" (345)	21" (428)	29" (367)	20" (484)		23" (471)		
2X12 @ 12"		42" (209)	31" (263)		37" (253)	27" (317)	36" (271)	27" (358)	17" (447)	31" (348)	19" (462)	
2X12 @ 8"		48" (136)	45" (169)		48" (164)	38" (206)		40" (233)	26" (294)	36" (230)	29" (304)	18" (379)

For SI: 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 psf = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>



Notes:

- a. Tabulated values are for clear-span roof supported solely by exterior bearing walls.
- b. Spans are based on No. 2 Grade lumber of douglas-fir larch, hem-fir, southern pine, and spruce-pine-fir for repetitive (3 or more members).
- c. Ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be at least 3:1.
- d. Connections capable of resisting the indicated uplift force shall be provided at the backspan support.
- e. Uplift force is for a backspan to cantilever span ratio of 3:1. Tabulated uplift values are permitted to be reached by multiplying by a factor equal to 3 divided by the actual backspan ratio provided ( $3/\text{backspan ratio}$ ).
- f. See Section R301.2.2.7.1 for additional limitations on cantilevered floor joists for detached one-and two-family dwellings in Seismic Design Categories D1 and D2 and townhouses in Seismic Design Categories C, D1 and D2.
- g. A full-depth rim joist shall be provided at the cantilevered end of the joists.
- h. Linear interpolation shall be permitted for building widths and ground snow loads other than shown.

## **CHAPTER 6B WALL CONSTRUCTION**

### **SECTION R-602 WOOD WALL FRAMING**

Revise subsection R-602.8(1) to read as follows:

#### **R-602.8 Fireblocking** required.

1. In concealed spaces of stud walls and partitions, including furred spaces, at the ceiling and floor levels. Concealed horizontal furred spaces shall also be fireblocked at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm). Walls having parallel or staggered studs for sound-transmission control shall be permitted to have fire blocks of batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber or other approved nonrigid materials.

## **CHAPTER 30B SANITARY DRAINAGE**

### **SECTION R-P-3005 DRAINAGE SYSTEM**

*Revise Section R-P-3005.2.7 to read as follows:*

**R-P-3005.2.7 Building Drain and Building Sewer Junction.** There shall be a cleanout near the junction of the building drain and building sewer. This cleanout may be either inside or outside the building wall, provided it is brought up to finish grade or to the lowest floor level. An accessible interior building drain cleanout or test tee within close proximity to the building drain exit point shall fulfill this requirement. There shall be a cleanout at or as near as possible to the front property line if the building is constructed on the property line.

## **CHAPTER 31B VENTS**

### **SECTION R-P-3111 COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM**

*Revise Section R-P-3111.2 to read as follows:*

**R-P-3111.2 Installation.** The only vertical pipe of a combination drain and vent system shall be the connection between the fixture drain of the sink, lavatory or standpipe, and the horizontal combination waste and vent pipe. The maximum vertical distance shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

## **CHAPTER 33B GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

### **SECTION R-E-3301 GENERAL**

*Revise Section R-E-3301.1 to read as follows:*

**R-E-3301.1 Applicability.** The provisions of Chapter 33 through 42 shall establish the general scope of the electrical system and equipment requirements of this code. Chapters 33 through 42 cover those wiring methods and materials most commonly encountered in the construction of one and two-family dwellings and structures regulated by this code. Other wiring methods, materials and subject matter covered in the NFPA 70 are also allowed by this code. The provisions to the 1996 National Electrical Code will also be deemed acceptable.

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12C ELECTRIC CODE**

**CHAPTER 1C DEFINITIONS**

**ARTICLE E-100 GENERAL**

*Add new Section E-100-1 to read to as follows:*

**E-100-1 D.C. Electrical Code.** The National Fire Protection Association National Electrical Code/1996 as amended by the D.C. Electrical Code Supplement 2002 shall constitute the D.C. Electrical Code/ 2002, hereinafter referred to as the “Electrical Code”.

Repeal. Article 90 of the National Electrical Code/1996 is deleted except for 90-5.

1. Mandatory Rules and Explanatory Material. Mandatory rules of the National Electrical Code are characterized by the use of the word "shall." Explanatory material in the form of Fine Print Notes (FPN) is not mandatory.

(b) Scope. These regulations shall control the design, installation, maintenance, alteration, conversion, changing, repairing, removal, and inspection of electrical conductors, equipment, and systems in buildings or structures and on private or public space within the District of Columbia, for the transmission, distribution and use of electrical energy for power, heat, light, radio, television, signaling, and for other purposes.

**Exceptions:**

1. Installations of communications equipment under the exclusive control of communications utilities located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations are not subject to this code.

Electrical installations, including associated lighting, under the exclusive control of electrical utilities for the purpose of communications, metering, generation, control, transformation, transmission, or distribution of electric, when such installations are located in buildings used exclusively by utilities for such purposes, or outdoors on property owned or leased by the utility, or on or along public highways, streets, roads, and other public right-of-ways, or outdoors on private property by established rights such as easements, such installations are not subject to this code.

(c) Intent. The Electrical Code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is the practical safeguarding of persons and property from hazards arising from the use of electricity, and is not intended as a design specification nor an instruction manual for untrained persons.

(d) Permits required for electrical work. Power limited wiring: Electrical permit is required for the installation of fire protective signaling systems and other power limited wiring, telephone, and data.

1. Electrical installation permits not required: No permit shall be required to repair or replace portable electrical equipment.

## **ARTICLEE-110 REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS**

*Add new Section E-110-23 to read as follows:*

**E-110-23 Clearances.** The following clearances shall be maintained:

- (a) Gas Meters. Electrical equipment shall be so set that:

Parts of electrical equipment that in ordinary operation produce arcs, sparks, flames or molten metal shall be located as follows:

1. Not less than 3 feet from any part of a gas meter located indoors, unless the electrical equipment is designed, rated or protected in accordance with the requirements of Article E-501 for Class I, Division 2 locations.
2. Not less than 1 foot from any part of a gas meter located outdoors.
3. Not less than 2 feet from the outlet of a gas regulator vent.

In accordance with the requirements of the gas utility.

## **CHAPTER 2C WIRING AND PROTECTION**

### **ARTICLE E-210 BRANCH CIRCUITS**

#### **A. General Provisions**

*Add new Section E-210-5(c) to read to as follows:*

#### **E-210-5 Color Code for Branch Circuits.**

Three Phase, Four Wire Circuits.

- (1) For 208Y/120 Volts. Where practicable, three phase, four wire circuits operating at nominal 208Y/120 voltage shall be color coded as follows: Conductors for A, B and C phases and neutral shall be color coded black, red, blue and white respectively.
- (2) For 460Y/265 Volts. Where practicable, three phase, four wire circuits operating at nominal 460Y/265 voltage shall be color coded as follows: Conductors for A, B and C phases and neutral shall be color coded brown, orange, yellow and white/gray respectively.

*Add new Section E-210-8(a) (8) to read to as follows:*

#### **E-210-8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Projection for Personnel.**

- (a) Dwelling units.
- (8) Landscape and lamp post lighting at 8 feet (2.44 m) above grade or lower and operating at nominal 120 volts to ground shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection on any circuitry extending from the interior of the dwelling.

### **ARTICLE E-225 OUTSIDE BRANCH CIRCUITS AND FEEDERS**

#### **A. General**

*Delete Section E-225-25 and substitute the following:*

#### **E-225-25 Outside Lamps**

- (a) General
- (1) Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to the installation and maintenance of outside lamps, fixtures, and standards located on or over private or public space and shall be amendatory to and in addition to those of other sections of the code.



- (2) **Permits.** No private lamp post or lamp shall be erected or placed in public space or in any public street, avenue, alley, or road of the District of Columbia, nor beyond the inner edge of a sidewalk, unless authorized by a special permit in each case to be obtained from the Permit Branch previous to the erection of the lamp post or lamp; such permit to be conditioned on the right of the Director of Public Works to require such lamp post or lamp to be removed whenever he deems such removal necessary or advisable. The application for such permit must be accompanied by a written agreement signed by the owner or occupant, or both, of the premises in front of which it is desired to erect such lamp post or lamp, agreeing to remove the same when called upon by the Director of Public Works to do so.
- (3) **Public Space Restrictions.** Private lamps if placed on or over public space shall:
  - (a) Be mounted not less than 8 feet (2.44 m) above a public sidewalk or grade when of 100 watts or less.
  - (b) Be mounted not less than 14 feet (4.27m) above a public sidewalk or grade when over 100 watts, whether attached to a building or on a post.
  - (c) Be enclosed within a fixture or structure, except that outside bracket lights on porches, etc., with 60 watt lamps or less need not be enclosed and are permitted to be mounted less than 8 feet (2.44 m) above grade.
- (4) **Type of Standard.** Private lamp posts erected in public space not more than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 m) beyond the building line shall not exceed 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter, and shall be of an approved single-light type.
- (5) **Wattage Limitations.** The wattage of private lamps, other than spot and floodlights, in public space shall not exceed that established for the public street lamps for the vicinity. The mounting heights shall be not less than that of public street lamps of similar wattage. For residential zones, see Section E-225-25 (b) (1).
- (6) **Enclosing Globe.** Every private lamp erected in public space shall be enclosed in some form of ground, opalescent, or alabaster glass of sufficient density to remove the glare from the light source. This shall not be construed to apply to lamps less than 25 watts in capacity, used as borders for outline lighting, or illuminated signs, when placed not less than 8 feet (2.44 m) above the sidewalk.
- (7) **Colored Lights.** Colored lamps, colored globes on private lamps, or colored gas-tube systems shall not be used when placed more than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 m) beyond the building line.
- (8) **Light Rays Across Streets.** Lamps or clusters of lamps shall be so installed that the light beams shall not be directed across public sidewalks, streets, alleys or roadways, or against private property zoned or used as residential, except that spot or floodlights are

- permitted to be installed so as to direct their beams into public space to serve police purposes on special approval of the Director of Public Works.
- (9) Projections. Private lamps or any part thereof shall not be installed in public space more than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 m) beyond the building restriction lines, except for temporary barricade lights. Private lamps are permitted to be installed in commercial zones farther than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 m) beyond the building line when, in the opinion of the Director of Public Works, such private lamps are desirable to illuminate (1) public or monumental buildings, monuments and other similar structures, and (2) shrubbery, trees and similar landscape architecture, provided that the illumination is in the public interest, the direct rays are confined to premises served, and a nuisance is not created. Such private lamps are permitted to be mounted less than 8 feet (2.44 m) above the ground.
- (10) Spot and Floodlights. Spot and floodlights shall conform to the following:
- (a) They shall not be erected on or over public space more than 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 m) from the building line.
  - (b) If projecting beyond the building line, they shall not be erected within 22 feet (6.71 m) of an adjoining premises which, on the same street frontage, is zoned or used for residential purposes, except when effectively shielded so direct rays will not fall on the residential area.
  - (c) They shall not be erected on standards beyond the inner edge of a public sidewalk.
  - (d) Spot and floodlight standards erected in public space shall not exceed 20 feet (6.1 m) in height.
  - (e) Spot or floodlights placed on or near the ground to illuminate the face of a building or structure, or shrubbery, trees and similar landscape architecture, shall be so screened or shielded that the reflector projecting the light will not be visible from the street or sidewalk. Metal enclosures shall be grounded in accordance with NEC Article 250.
- (b) Residential Zone Restrictions
- (1) Public Space Restrictions in Residential Zones. Private lamps when placed on or over public space in a residential zone shall not exceed 100 watts.
  - (2) Spot and Floodlights in Residential Zones. Spot and floodlights in residential zones shall not exceed 250 watts.

**Exception:** Wattage is permitted to be increased to meet special conditions when approved by the Director of Public Works. Provided the light beams are directed only on premises where located.

## **ARTICLE E-230 SERVICES**

### **A. General**

*Add new Section E-230-2(a) exception 8 to read as follows:*

#### **E-230-2. Number of Services:**

Number

**Exception No. 8:** Small buildings accessory to the main building and located on the same lot with the main building are permitted to be served from the same service as the main building. In such case a covenant will not be required.

*Change Section E-230-3 to read to as follows:*

**E-230-3 Services From One Building Through Another and Covenants.** No overhead service, underground service, nor service from a private plant shall supply one building through another except where there is furnished a Master Service or Master Metering Covenant. No service shall cross property not included in the covenant. When such master service is requested, a building plat showing the location of all buildings and feeders connecting them shall be attached to one copy of the proposed covenant. Any through service connection or any wiring interconnection between buildings shall be discontinued or removed on the lapse of any condition upon which the approval is based. Such Master Service Metering Covenants are permitted to be approved in the following cases:

(a) Building on the Same Lot.

- (1) If all the buildings are of a single ownership, management, or control.
- (2) If all of the buildings are of a single ownership, but different management or control. The provisions of Section E-230-3 (a) (3) shall apply as to accessibility and protection of through service conductors.
- (3) If the buildings are used only for commercial or industrial purposes by different tenants, but are of single ownership or lease, more than one building is permitted to be supplied by the same service provided that if such through service conductors are protected and controlled or metered in the first building, the device for such purposes shall be confined to a compartment readily accessible to every tenant of the building serviced, and if not so protected and controlled, the through service conductors, which run within the building, shall be carried in conduit or duct placed beneath a building and covered with not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete or be embedded in not less than 2 inches (51mm) of solid masonry in a wall or other structure.

(b) Buildings on Different Lots in the Same Square.

- (1) If all of the buildings are under single ownership and management or control.
- (2) If all of the buildings are of a single ownership, but different management or control. The provisions of Section E-230-3 (a) (3) shall apply as to accessibility and protection of through service conductors.
- (3) If the buildings are in separate ownership but single management, lease, or control, and occupied as a single project. All owners shall be parties to the covenant, and separate services shall be provided when the single project control no longer operates.

D. Services Entrance Conductors

*Add new Section E-230-43 to read to as follows:*

E-230-43

- (a) Length of conductors. Service raceways or cables must extend from the point of attachment on the building of the service drop downward, and into the service equipment, except that: If a service raceway or cable is exposed on the exterior of a building, it is permitted to run the service raceway or cable horizontally for a distance not exceeding 25 feet (7.62 m). The total length of service raceway or cables on or in a building, in any case, shall not exceed 50 feet (15.24 m). Unnecessary runs of service raceway or cable must be avoided by placing the service equipment as close to the incoming conductors as is practical.
- (b) Length of conductors within a building. The length of a service connection within a building from the point of service entrance to the terminals of one or each of a group of service equipment, shall be as short as practicable and in general shall not exceed 15 feet (4.57 m) for new buildings or 20 feet (6.1 m) for old buildings where space limitations make a shorter installation impracticable. Commercial buildings shall be permitted greater lengths of unprotected service conductors when fully confined within a service equipment room having at least a two-hour fire rating and the room is accessible to qualified persons only.
- (c) In public space. A service raceway or service cable shall not be located in public space except on the face of a building wall that is erected on the building line. It shall not be located less than 15 feet (4.57 m) above grade on a wall abutting an alley nor through or in a public sidewalk.

F. Service Equipment – Disconnecting Means

*Change Section E-230-72(a) to read to as follows:*

E-230-72 Grouping of Disconnects

- (a) General. Two or More Service Disconnects. Service conductors from different distribution system entering at the same or adjacent location may supply a total of not more than six disconnects. Service connections located at different and remote locations may supply a total of not more than six disconnects at each location. Such remote service locations shall have a remote control switch or contactor adjacent to the new service location nearest the main entrance to the building so that all power in the building may be shut off at one location in case of emergency. Disconnects serving emergency lighting and fire alarm appliances, fire pumps, or other emergency equipment shall not count in the six disconnects permitted.

**ARTICLE E-240 OVERCURRENT PROTECTION**

B. Location

*Add new Section E-240-24(f) to read as follows:*

E-240-24 Location In or On Premises

- (f) Non-Permissible locations. Overcurrent devices other than supplementing overcurrent devices shall not be located on a ceiling, in a shelf, in a locker room, storage area, janitor's closet, or clothes closet, at the back of a counter space or behind an appliance or equipment installed close to the wall.

C. Enclosures

*Add new Section E-240-34 to read as follows:*

**240-34 Circuit Directory.** Enclosures of overcurrent devices shall have a circuit directory installed on the inside of the enclosure, in the appropriate space when so provided, otherwise in a location most suitable and practicable. The circuits shall be labeled properly and legibly as to load served.

## **CHAPTER 3C WIRING METHODS AND MATERIALS**

### **ARTICLE E-300 WIRING METHODS**

#### **A. General Requirements**

*Add new subsection E-300-7(c) to read as follows:*

**Cold Storage and Refrigerator Rooms.** Wiring in cold storage and refrigerator rooms shall conform to the general provisions of NEC Article 300, and the following:

- (1) Approved weather proof threaded or threadless fittings shall be used.  
NOTE: Knock-out boxes are not permitted.
- (2) Where wiring is above 8 feet (2.44 m) from the floor, approved open-work construction with weatherproof fittings, etc., is permitted to be used.
- (3) All joints and splices shall be painted with approved weatherproof paint after installation.
- (4) Fixtures, receptacles, switches, etc. shall be of an approved weatherproof type.

*Add new subsection E-300-24 to read as follows:*

**E-300-24 Service conductors.** Incoming service and load conductors shall not be installed in the same conduit or trough.

### **ARTICLE E-310 CONDUCTORS FOR GENERAL WIRING**

*Delete subsection E-310.14 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

**E-310.14 Aluminum Conductor Material.** Aluminum conductors shall not be permitted except as follows:

- (a) Stranded aluminum conductors No. 2 AWG through 1000 kcmil shall be made of an AA-8000 series electrical grade aluminum alloy conductor material.
- (b) With anti-oxidizing protection agent on all terminations and exposed aluminum.
- (c) With terminations torqued or high pressed to manufacturer required specifications.

### **ARTICLE E-384 SWITCHBOARDS AND PANEL BOARDS**

*Add new subsection E-384-37 to read as follows:*

**E-384-37 Switchboards of 1000 Amperes or Larger.** It shall be the responsibility of the owner of a Switchboard having a capacity of 1000 amperes or larger, or his responsible agent, to have a

licensed master electrician disconnect said equipment once every three years or less to perform prescribed preventive maintenance. Preventive maintenance shall consist of, but not be limited to:

- (a) Vacuum entire interior of switchboard.
- (b) Clean bus and contacts with suitable nonconductive solvents.
- (c) Lubricate all moving mechanisms.
- (d) Check all conductors for abrasions and replace them if found to be in poor condition.
- (e) Torque bus and conductor connections to manufacturers' recommended specifications.
- (f) Check calibration of overcurrent trip units and protective devices.
- (g) Evaluate short circuit protection. If found to be inadequate for safely clearing the maximum fault current available at the site, upgrade protection accordingly within twelve months.
- (h) Megger board to manufacturers' specifications before re-energizing.
- (i) Replace worn, damaged, or deteriorating components.
- (j) Submit report of preventive maintenance performed to D.C. Electrical Inspection Branch within thirty days.

## **CHAPTER 6C SPECIAL EQUIPMENT**

### **ARTICLE E-680 SWIMMING POOLS, FOUNTAINS AND SIMILAR INSTALLATIONS**

#### **A. General**

*Add new subsection E-680-6 (b) (4) to read as follows:*

**E-680-6 Receptacles, Lighting Fixtures, Lighting Outlets, Switching Devices and Ceiling Fans.**

(b) Lighting Fixtures, Lighting Outlets and Ceiling Fans.

(4) Lighting shall be provided at all swimming pools intended for use at night.



## **CHAPTER 7C SPECIAL CONDITIONS**

### **ARTICLE E-700 EMERGENCY SYSTEMS**

#### **B. Circuit Wiring**

*Change subsection E-700-9(c) 1 to read as follows:*

##### **E-700-9 (c) Fire Protection.**

(1) Feeder circuits and all risers for fire system wiring shall be installed in metallic conduit.

*Add new subsection E-700-9(d) to read as follows:*

**E-700-9 (d) Conductors for Emergency Lights Prohibited in Shafts, Ducts, Etc.** Conduits, cables, or conductors supplying exit or emergency lights shall not be installed in any flue, heating or ventilating duct, trash chute, garbage chute, laundry chute, dumbwaiter, lift, elevator or similar shaft, nor in any trash room.

### **ARTICLE E-760 FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS**

#### **B. Nonpower-Limited Fire ALARM (NPLFA) Circuits**

*Change subsection E-760-25 to read as follows:*

**E-760-25 NPLFA Circuit Wiring Methods.** Wiring shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cable, flexible metal conduit containing teflon-jacketed conductors, or metal-clad cable listed for use in plenums and other air-handling spaces. Risers shall be minimum 3/4-inch rigid metal conduit or electrical metallic tubing. Where risers are exposed, compression fittings shall be used.

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2002  
DCMR 12D FUEL GAS CODE**

**CHAPTER 3D GENERAL REGULATIONS**

**SECTION FG-304  
COMBUSTION, VENTILATION, AND DILUTION AIR**

*Revise Section FG-304.3 to read as follows:*

**FG-304.3 Outdoor air required.** Where normal infiltration does not provide the necessary air, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with Sections 304.11, 304.12, 304.13, or 304.14.

*Revise Section FG-304.8 to read as follows:*

**FG-304.8 Combustion air methods.** Air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases for gas utilization equipment vented by natural draft shall be obtained by application of one of the methods covered in Sections FG-304.10 through FG-304.14.

*Add new Section FG-304.13 to read as follows:*

**FG-304.13 Forced combustion air supply.** Where all combustion air and dilution air is provided by a mechanical forced-air system, the combustion air and dilution air shall be supplied at the minimum rate of 1 cfm per 2,400 Btu/h [0.00067 m<sup>3</sup>/(s kW)] of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances served. Each of the appliances served shall be electrically interlocked to the mechanical forced air system so as to prevent operation of the appliances when the mechanical system is not in operation. Where combustion air and dilution air is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the systems shall provide the specified combustion/dilution air rate in addition to the required ventilation air.

*Revise Section FG-304.13 to read as follows:*

**FG-304.14 Specially engineered installations.** As an alternative to the provisions of Sections FG-304.10, FG-304.11, FG-304.12, and FG-304.13, the necessary supply of air for combustion, ventilation and dilution of flue gases shall be provided by an approved engineered system.

*Revise Section FG-304.14 to read as follows:*

**FG-304.15 Louvers and grilles.** In calculating free area in FG-304.10, FG-304.11, and FG-304.12, the required size of openings for combustion, ventilation and dilution air shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25

percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75 percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

*Renumber Section FG-304.15 to read Section FG-304.16.*

## **SECTION FG-305 INSTALLATION**

*Add new Section FG-305.1.1 to read as follows:*

**FG-305.1.1 LISTED APPLIANCES.** Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the equipment or appliance the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

*Delete Section 305.2 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

**FG-305.2 ELEVATION OF IGNITION SOURCE.** Equipment and appliances having an ignition source shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (456 mm) above the floor in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive service stations and parking garages. For purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

**EXCEPTION:** elevation of the ignition source is not required for appliances that are listed as flammable vapor resistant and for installation without elevation.

*Add new Section FG-305.3 to read as follows:*

**FG-305.3 HAZARDOUS AREA.** Equipment and appliances having an ignition source shall not be installed in group h occupancies or control areas where open-use, handling or dispensing of combustible, flammable or explosive materials occurs.

*Renumber Section FG-305.3 to read Section FG-305.4.*

*Renumber Section FG-305.4 to read Section FG-305.5.*

## **CHAPTER 5D CHIMNEY AND VENTS**

### **SECTION FG-503 VENTING OF EQUIPMENT**

*Add new Sections FG-503.3.6 to read as follows:*

**FG-503.3.6 COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES VENTED BY EXHAUST HOODS.** Where commercial cooking appliances are vented by means of the type i or type ii kitchen exhaust hood system that serves such appliances, the appliances shall be interlocked with the exhaust hood system to prevent appliance operation when the exhaust system is not operating. Where automatically operated appliances such as water heaters are vented through natural draft kitchen exhaust hoods, dampers shall not be installed in the exhaust system.

**Exception:** an interlock between the cooking appliance and the exhaust hood shall not be required for appliances that are of the manually operated type and are factory equipped with standing pilot burner ignition systems.

*Add new Section FG-503.5.6.4 to read as follows:*

Fg-503.5.6.4 smoke test. Before being put into use, a new or existing chimney shall either be proved tight by a scented smoke test or provided with a certification of tightness by an independent licensed contractor.

## **CHAPTER 6D SPECIFIC APPLIANCES**

### **SECTION FG-622 COOKING APPLIANCES**

*Add new Sections FG-622.6 to read as follows:*

**FG-622.6 COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCE VENTING.** Commercial cooking appliances, other than those exempted by section fg-501.8, shall be vented by connecting the appliance to a vent or chimney in accordance with this code and the appliance manufacturer's instructions or the appliance shall be vented in accordance with section fg-503.3.6.

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12E MECHANICAL CODE**

**CHAPTER 4E VENTILATION**

**Section M-401 GENERAL**

*Add new Sections M-401.5.1.1 to read as follows:*

**M-401.5.1.1 HEIGHT ABOVE GRADE.** The bottom of outside air intake openings shall be a minimum of 2 feet (610mm) above adjacent grade or above the bottom of adjacent areaways. Where alleys, parking lots, loading docks, and other areas with vehicular access are located less than 10 feet (3048mm) horizontally from the outside air intake opening, such opening shall be located a minimum of 10 feet (3048mm) above the surface of those areas.

*ADD NEW SECTION M-401.5.2.1 TO READ AS FOLLOWS:*

**M-401.5.2.1 GARAGE EXHAUST.** Exhaust openings serving public garages shall be a minimum of 25 feet (7620mm) from any openable window, door, or outside air intake opening. The bottom of exhaust openings serving public garages shall be a minimum of 15 feet (4572mm) above streets alleys or other walkways. When exhaust is directed upwards, the code official is authorized to approve garage exhaust openings less than 15 feet (4572mm) above streets, alleys, or other walkways, in accordance with section m-105.

## **CHAPTER 5E EXHAUST SYSTEMS**

### **SECTION M-506 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE DUCTS AND EXHAUST EQUIPMENT**

*Delete Section M-506.3.13 in its entirety and add new paragraph to read as follows:*

M-506.3.13 Type I Exhaust duct Termination. Ducts shall run as directly to the roof as practical. The system termination shall be a minimum of 2 feet (610mm) above the roof or any part of structures within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the termination, and not less than 25 feet (7620mm) from any operable windows, intakes, doors or lot lines.

#### **Exceptions:**

On narrow lots where a 25-foot (7620 mm) distance from any operable windows, intakes, doors, or lot lines cannot be achieved, the code official is authorized to approve a smaller distance. When an approved odor and grease removal system is installed, termination is permitted in accordance with the requirements of M-401.5 and M-501.3.

*Add new Section M-514 to read as follows:*

### **SECTION M-514 LABORATORY HOODS**

**M-514.1 Laboratory Hoods.** Laboratory hoods and ventilation systems shall comply with NFPA 45-2000 listed in Chapter 15.

## **CHAPTER 8E CHIMNEYS AND VENTS**

### **SECTION M-801 GENERAL**

*Add new Section M-801.20 to read as follows:*

**M-801.20 Smoke Test.** Before being put into use, a new or existing chimney shall either be proved tight by a scented smoke test or be provided with a certification of tightness by an independent licensed contractor.



**CHAPTER 9E SPECIFIC APPLIANCES,  
FIREPLACES AND SOLID FUEL BURNING EQUIPMENT**

**SECTION M-922 KEROSENE AND OIL-FIRED STOVES**

*Delete Section M-922 in its entirety.*

## **CHAPTER 10E BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS**

### **SECTION M-1004 BOILERS**

*Revise Section M-1004.1 to read as follows.*

**M-1004.1 Standards.** Boilers and their control systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of one or more of the following standards; ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Sections I to XI (2001 Edition), ASME CSD-1 (2002), NFPA 8501, NFPA 8502, NFPA 8504, UL 726, and the National Board Inspection Code (NBIC) 2001 ANSI/NB-23.

*Add new Section M-1012 to read as follows.*

### **SECTION M-1012 INSPECTION CRITERIA**

**M-1012.1 New Construction.** The inspection of the design, construction, installation and operation of steam or hot water boilers and pressure vessels, and unfired pressure vessel in the District of Columbia, shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, the NBIC and Safety Control Device Standards as specified by the manufacturer's inspection instructions. Inspections for compliance with the D.C. local safety requirements shall be performed in accordance with the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations Criteria.

**M-1012.2 Equipment Replacement.** The inspection of boiler and pressure vessel equipment installed to replace inoperable equipment shall be performed in accordance with the inspection requirements for new construction as specified in Article M-1012.1.

**M-1012.3 Existing Equipment.** The inspection of boilers and pressure vessels installed and operating in existing facilities shall be performed at a frequency in accordance with the requirements in the NBIC, and the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations

### **SECTION M-1013 ADDITIONAL GENERAL & SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS**

**M-1013.0 General.** The intent of Sections M-1013.0 through M-1020.0 is to provide general and specific guidance to the code official and the consumer regarding the installation, maintenance and inspection of new and existing boilers, water heaters, and pressure vessels.

#### **M-1013.1 Inspection of Boilers And Unfired Pressure Vessels**

**M-1013.1.1 Permit Requirement.** A permit shall be obtained for each boiler or unfired pressure vessel installed, erected, or moved and reinstalled, or re-erected in a new location in the District of Columbia before any work in connection with the equipment is performed.

**M-1013.1.2 Inspection of Boilers.** No person shall operate, or cause to be operated, any new boiler or unfired pressure vessel which has been installed or erected, or any used boiler or unfired pressure vessel which has been reinstalled or re-erected in the District until it has been inspected by the boiler Inspector and a certificate of inspection has been issued. The certificate must be displayed in the boiler or engine room.

**M-1013.1.3 Certificate of Inspection.** No person shall operate or cause to be operated any boiler or unfired pressure vessel requiring inspection under this title without a current certificate of inspection.

**M-1013.1.4 Owner's Responsibility.** The owner or user of each boiler or unfired pressure vessel which is not covered by a current certificate of inspection shall notify the code official in writing of the following information.

1. The location of each boiler or unfired pressure vessel not covered by a current certificate of inspection;
2. The date of the last inspection, if any;
3. Whether or not that equipment is insured and inspected by an insurance company; and
4. The name of the company insuring it.

**M-1013.1.5 Operator's License Suspension/Revocation.** The license of any engineer licensed by the District of Columbia shall be subject to suspension or revocation if he/she shall operate, or cause to be operated any boiler or unfired pressure vessel under his or her supervision without a certificate of inspection or with a certificate which has expired.

**M-1013.1.6 Operating Pressure.** No person shall operate or cause to be operated any boiler or unfired pressure vessel at a pressure in excess of the allowable pressure as stated on the certificate of inspection.

**M-1013.1.7 Safety Devices.** Boilers and unfired pressure vessels shall be equipped with all safety appliances and piping as prescribed in the ASME Code. No person shall operate or cause a boiler or unfired pressure vessel to be operated unless equipped with the prescribed safety appliances and piping, and no person shall remove or tamper with any safety appliance or piping, except for the purpose of making repairs. Any adjustments to safety valves shall be made only by direction of an inspector.

**M-1013.1.7.1 Tests.** When in the judgment of the boiler Inspector, it is considered advisable to test the safety-valve capacity of a boiler, an accumulation test shall be made by shutting off all other steam-discharge outlets from the boiler, and operating the fuel-burning equipment to produce the maximum steaming capacity of the boiler.

**M-1013.1.7.2 Safety-Valve.** The safety-valve equipment shall be sufficient to prevent the pressure from rising more than (a) six (6) percent above the maximum allowable working pressures for power boilers, and (b) five (5) pounds per square inch (psi) above the maximum allowable working pressures for heating boilers. Provision shall be made for piping the safety valve discharge out of the boiler room during a test pursuant to Article M-1013.1.7.1.

**M-1013.1.8 Portable Boiler/Unfired Pressure Vessel.** No portable temporary boiler or unfired pressure vessel shall be used until it has been inspected by an authorized boiler Inspector and a certificate of inspection issued. Each owner or user of portable boilers or unfired pressure vessels shall furnish in writing to the code official, on or before the effective date of this title and yearly thereafter, the following information.

1. A list of his or her portable boilers and unfired pressure vessels;
2. A list of the location of each portable boiler and unfired pressure vessel; and
3. A statement indicating whether the portable boiler and unfired pressure vessel is insured and inspected by an insurance company.

## **M-1013.2 Annual Boiler Inspection Requirements**

**M-1013.2.1 Annual Inspection.** All steam boiler including hot water boilers shall be inspected annually by the boiler Inspector, an assistant boiler Inspector, or by an Inspector of an insurance company.

**M-1013.2.1.1 Steel Steam and Hot Water Boilers.** The annual inspection of steel steam and hot water boilers shall consist of an internal inspection.

**M-1013.2.1.2 Internal Inspection.** The internal inspection shall consist of a thorough examination of all tubes, seams, rivets, drums, stay bolts, and other parts to insure that the boiler is in safe operating condition and able to carry the pressure allowed.

**M-1013.2.1.3 External Inspection.** The external inspection to determine the general condition of the boiler and its appurtenances as well as the adequacy of safety valves, pressure gages, apparatus for determining water level, and other appliances shall be made under normal operating conditions at which time the steam pressure carried shall be observed and the operation of all valves, gages, safety devices, or other appliances shall be checked to insure that they are in proper working order.

**M-1013.2.1.4 Hydrostatic Test.** A hydrostatic test shall be required when, in the judgment of the Inspector, it is considered necessary in the interest of safety.

### **M-1013.3 Preparation of Boiler for Inspection**

**M-1013.3.1 Boiler Preparation.** A steam or hot water boiler shall be prepared for internal inspection by the owner or user on a date specified by the inspector. Insofar as practicable the internal inspection shall be made within fifteen (15) days prior to the expiration of the certificate of inspection. In no case shall the internal inspection be deferred more than thirty (30) days after date of expiration of the current certificate of inspection. A steam boiler (or hot water) may be ordered discontinued from service until the inspection is made.

**M-1013.3.2 Inspection Procedure.** Preparation for internal inspection shall be made in the following manner.

1. Water shall be drawn off and the boiler thoroughly washed out;
2. All manhole and handhole plates, washout plugs and the water column connection plugs shall be removed and the furnace and combustion chambers thoroughly cooled and cleaned;
3. All grates or stoker dead plates of internally-fired boilers shall be removed; and
4. All leaks of steam or hot water into the boiler shall be stopped. The Inspector may also require the removal of brickwork and of insulation covering the seams of shell, drums or domes, sufficient to determine the size and pitch or rivets, their condition, and any other information as may be necessary to definitely determine the condition of the boiler and its fitness for safe operation.

**M-1013.3.2.1 Hydrostatic Test.** A steam or hot water boiler shall be prepared for hydrostatic test by the owner or user, when required by the Inspector, by filling the boiler with water to the stop valve and blanking off the connections of the boiler to other boilers when that boiler is connected to other boilers that are under steam pressure. Arrangements shall be made with the Inspector for the protection of the safety valve and under no circumstances shall the safety valve spring be screwed down for making hydrostatic tests.

### **M-1013.4 Unfired Pressure Vessels Requiring Annual Inspection**

**M-1013.4.1 General.** Each unfired pressure vessel operating at a pressure in excess of sixty (60) pounds per square inch and having a capacity in excess of fifteen (15) gallons shall be inspected annually by the boiler Inspector, an assistant boiler Inspector, or by an insurance company Inspector. Any unfired pressure vessel as described herein shall be subjected to inspection if it is connected to a source of supply.

**M-1013.4.2 Type of Inspection.** The annual inspection of unfired pressure vessels shall consist of an external inspection including safety devices, and other appurtenances. When a vessel is provided with manholes an internal inspection shall also be made.

**M-1013.4.2.1 Hydrostatic Test.** A hydrostatic test may be required when, in the judgment of the Inspector, it is considered necessary in the interest of safety. This test shall consist of applying a pressure of one and one-half times the allowable pressure to the vessel to be prepared for inspection by the owner or user as directed by the Inspector.

## **M-1013.5 Annual Inspection by Insurance Companies**

**M-1013.5.1 General.** Any steam or hot water boiler or unfired pressure vessel which is insured and inspected at least once annually by an insurance company licensed to operate in the District shall be exempt from inspection by the Department if the requirements of this section are satisfied.

**M-1013.5.1.1 ASME Code.** The insurance company shall apply the inspection provisions in Section I, Part PG, paragraph PG-90, "Inspection and Tests - General" in the ASME Boiler and pressure vessel code.

**M-1013.5.1.2 Qualifications.** Insurance company inspectors shall hold certificates of competency issued by the District of Columbia.

**M-1013.5.2 Reports.** Reports of inspections and other data relating to an insured boiler or unfired pressure vessel as may be required shall be filed with the Department within thirty (30) days after the inspection on the standard forms and in the manner as required; provided, that the internal-inspection report shall be filed in time to prevent the certificate of inspection from becoming more than thirty (30) days overdue. Each report shall be typewritten and signed in ink, and shall state definitely whether or not the certificate of inspection shall be issued, and the pressure allowed.

**M-1013.5.2.1 Internal Inspection.** Each annual internal-inspection report shall state the nature of all changes or repairs ordered or recommended. If the certificate of inspection is withheld because changes or repairs have been ordered or recommended, an additional report shall be filed within thirty (30) days stating whether the changes or repairs have been completed.

**M-1013.5.3 Insurance Company Report.** The insurance company shall immediately report to the Department the name of the owner or user and the location of every steam boiler and unfired pressure vessel on which insurance is refused, canceled, or discontinued and the reason therefore and also for each new object upon which the coverage is taken. Each insurance company report shall state the names of the licensed engineers working on all watches. The report shall state the grade of license held, and if there is none, the reports shall so state.

**M-1013.5.4 Fees.** The fee of fifty dollars (\$50.00) required to be paid by the owner or user for the issuance of a certificate of inspection shall be forwarded with the inspection report to the Department with a check made payable to the D.C. Treasurer.

**M-1013.5.5 Licensed Engineer.** The Inspector shall inform the owner or operator that licensed engineers are required by law and that the licenses must be posted under glass in the boiler or engine room.

#### **M-1013.6 Certificates or Competency For Insurance Company Inspectors**

**M-1013.6.1 Certificate of Competency.** Inspectors of insurance companies authorized by the code official to inspect and insure steam boilers, hot water boilers unfired pressure vessels shall hold a Certificate of Competency issued by the Chief Boiler Inspector. The Certificate of Competency shall be for a period of two (2) years and may be renewed without further examination for an additional two (2) year period upon request. The fee for each period shall be two hundred dollars (\$200.00).

**M-1013.6.1.1 Application.** Application for examination of insurance company inspectors for Certificates of Competency shall be made by the insurance company in writing to the Chief Boiler Inspector. The application shall state the name, age, qualifications, experience, and local address of each of the Inspectors proposed to be employed by the company in the inspection of steam boilers and unfired pressure vessels in the District of Columbia.

**M-1013.6.1.2 National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel.** A certificate issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors may be accepted upon proper substantiation and a Certificate of Competency issued therefore.

**M-1013.6.1.3 Cancellation.** Whenever an Inspector holding a Certificate of Competency from the District shall leave the employ of an insurance company, the company shall give prompt written notice of the facts and the reasons for the Inspector leaving, to the Chief Boiler Inspector, who shall cause the Inspector's Certificate of Competency to be canceled.

#### **M-1013.7 Certificates of Inspection**

**M-1013.7.1 General.** No person shall use or cause to be used any steam boiler or unfired pressure vessel until a certificate of inspection has been issued and posted as required in this title.

**M-1013.7.2 Certificate of Inspection.** The certificate of inspection shall not be issued until it is determined that the boiler or unfired pressure vessel is in condition and in conformity with the boiler code of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, and this title, the Rules and Regulations Governing the Installation of Fuel Burning Equipment, and the Rules and Regulations Governing the Operation of Engines and Steam Boilers and the Machinery in and for the District of Columbia. A separate certificate of inspection shall be issued for each object inspected. Each certificate shall be enclosed in a glass covered frame to be supplied by the owner and shall be

prominently displayed in the boiler or engine room near the equipment to which it pertains. Certificates for portable equipment shall be kept with the equipment at all times.

**M-1013.7.2.1 Internal Inspection.** In the case of boilers which can be internally inspected, certificates shall not be issued until after that inspection has been made.

**M-1013.7.3 Installations.** On all installations for which a permit has been issued, the contractor or person making the installation shall be responsible for notifying the Chief Boiler Inspector, in sufficient time so that the necessary inspections can be made.

**M-1013.7.4 Operation.** The contractor or person making the installation shall be responsible that no boiler or unfired pressure vessel shall be operated until final inspection has been made and permission given to operate the equipment. A licensed engineer shall be in-charge of the boiler if it is operated prior to being turned over to the owner.

#### **M-1013.8 Notice to Make Repairs or Alterations**

**M-1013.8.1 General.** If upon inspection it is found that repairs, alterations, or cleaning are necessary to insure the safe operation of a steam boiler or unfired pressure vessel, and its conformity to the ASME Code and this title, a written notice stating the work required to be done and time of completion shall be sent to the owner or user.

**M-1013.8.1.1 Repairs, Alterations, or Cleaning.** Any repairs, alterations, or cleaning, shall be made as directed. Upon completion of the work ordered, the Chief Boiler Inspector, shall be notified. If the work has not been completed within the time allowed, operation of the equipment may be ordered discontinued.

#### **M-1013.9 Condemnation of Defective or Unsafe Equipment**

**M-1013.9.1 General.** Whenever the boiler inspector finds that a boiler or unfired pressure vessel, or its necessary appurtenances, is in such a defective or unsafe condition that life or property is endangered, he or she shall immediately order its further use and operation discontinued. If, in his or her opinion, it cannot be repaired and made safe, he or she shall condemn it.

**M-1013.9.2 Revocation/Suspension.** The boiler inspector shall revoke or suspend the certificate of inspection pertaining to any boiler or unfired pressure vessel discontinued or condemned pursuant to Section M-1013.9.1, making a written report of the action taken with the reasons therefore to the Chief Boiler Inspector. The report shall contain a detailed description of the unsafe condition of the boiler or unfired pressure vessel.

**M-1013.9.3 Notification.** A written notice of the revocation or suspension of certificate of inspection and the reasons therefore shall be served on the owner or user. In the case of



an insured boiler or unfired pressure vessel where the certificate of inspection was issued on the certification of an insurance company, the notice shall be sent to the company.

**M-1013.9.4 Unsafe Conditions.** No person shall again operate or cause to be operated any boiler or unfired pressure vessel, which has been condemned by the boiler inspector, nor shall any person operate or cause to be operated, any boiler or unfired pressure vessel, the further use and operation of which has been ordered discontinued by the boiler inspector, or where the certificate of inspection has been suspended, until the defective or unsafe condition which was the reason for that action has been corrected and a new certificate of inspection issued. A boiler or unfired pressure vessel which has been condemned by an inspector shall be distinctly labeled by the D.C. Boiler Inspector's Office. Numbers on condemned boilers shall not be reassigned.

#### **M-1013.10 Numbering Boilers and Unfired Pressure Vessels**

**M-1013.10.1 General.** Every boiler and unfired pressure vessel shall be given a District of Columbia number. Numbers assigned to cast-iron boilers shall be of metal not less than one inch (1") in height and shall be securely attached to a metal plate which in turn shall be securely attached to the front of the boiler. Miniature boilers shall have sufficient space provided so that the District of Columbia numbers can be stamped on the shell and be clearly visible when the insulating jacket is in place.

### **SECTION M-1014 CONSTRUCTION, INSTALLATION, AND OPERATION OF BOILERS AND UNFIRED PRESSURE VESSELS**

**M-1014.1 General Provisions.** All steam boilers, except boilers which are exempted by Section 8 of the Boiler Inspection Act of June 25, 1936, shall bear the following information.

1. The ASME symbol;
2. The name of the manufacturer;
3. The maximum allowable working pressure;
4. The serial number and National Board Number;
5. The year built; and
6. Any other required data to indicate that it has been built in accordance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

**M-1014.1.1 Identification Number.** All boilers, except Low Pressure Heating Boilers and unfired pressure vessel as described in Article M-1014.1 shall bear a National Board Number to indicate that it has been inspected by an inspector holding a National Board Commission.

**M-1014.1.2 Operating Pressure and Capacity.** All unfired pressure vessel operated at a pressure in excess of sixty (60) pounds per square inch and having a capacity in excess of fifteen (15) gallons, shall bear the following information.

1. The ASME symbol;
2. The name of the manufacturer;
3. The maximum allowable working pressure;
4. The serial number and National Board Numbers;
5. The year built; and
6. Any other required data to indicate that it has been built in accordance with the provisions of Section VIII in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

#### **M-1014.2 Permits Required for Installation**

**M-1014.2.1 General.** No person shall erect, install, re-erect, or reinstall or cause to be erected, installed, re-erected or any steam or hot water boiler or unfired pressure vessel until he or she shall have made application on the form provided and obtained an installation permit.

**M-1014.2.2 Permit Applications.** Applications for permits shall be accompanied by a form known as "Manufacturer's Data Report," properly filled out and signed by an Inspector licensed to insure Vessel Inspectors, showing that the boiler or unfired pressures vessel has been constructed and inspected in accordance with the requirements of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers Boiler and Unfired Pressure Vessel Code. When an application is made to install a used boiler or unfired pressure vessel definite information shall be furnished showing that the boiler or unfired pressure vessel has been built in accordance with all the requirements of the ASME Code and is so stamped. Upon approval of the application and the accompanying data a Permit for the installation, erection, reinstallation, or re-erection shall be issued by the Permit Branch, Licenses and Permit Division, after payment of the required fee to the D.C. Treasurer.

**M-1014.2.3 Installation Permit.** Before an installation permit for a used boiler or unfired pressure vessel shall be issued, the boiler Inspector shall carefully inspect the boiler or unfired pressure vessel in order to determine whether it is safe to operate, and any repairs or changes that may be necessary. The fee for that inspection shall be the same as called for under annual inspection.

**M-1014.2.4 Notification.** When notification has been given to prepare a boiler or unfired pressure vessel for inspection or hydrostatic test on a definite date, or when a definite appointment for an inspection cannot be made by reason of the boiler or unfired pressure vessel not being properly prepared for inspection, so that an additional call or

calls are thereby made necessary; or when additional inspections are required in order to secure compliance with orders previously issued, each additional call or inspection may be charged for at the same fee as prescribed under Annual Inspection Fees.

**M-1014.2.5 Unscheduled Inspection.** For an inspection made upon request or to determine the safety of an object not regularly inspected, the fee shall be as prescribed under Annual Inspection Fees.

**M-1014.2.6 Inspection Fees.** For the inspection of a boiler being retubed in a shop, the fee shall be the same as for the annual inspection. For an inspection to determine whether the condition of a boiler or unfired pressure vessel is such that it can be installed in the District, the fee shall be the same as prescribed under Annual Inspection Fees.

**M-1014.2.7 Welding Fee.** Fee for welding qualification test shall be one-hundred dollars (\$100.00). For the inspection of pipe or boiler welding the fee shall be one-hundred dollars (\$100.00) per day.

**M-1014.2.8 Certification Fee.** The fee for certificate of competency for insurance company Inspectors for a two (2) year period shall be two hundred dollars (\$200.00).

### **M-1014.3 Payment of Fees**

**M-1014.3.1 General.** All fees shall be paid to the D.C. Treasurer, who shall issue a receipt for the payment of the following fees.

1. Fees for the installation permit and subsequent inspection of a boiler or unfired pressure vessel shall be paid prior to the issuance of a permit and before any work is started.
2. All fees for the inspection of boilers or unfired pressure vessels shall become due and payable immediately upon the making of the inspection and the certificate of inspection shall not be issued while there are any unpaid fees outstanding.

### **M-1014.4 Requirements for Power Boilers**

**M-1014.4.1 Steel Platform.** On the top of every power boiler setting, a steel platform reached by means of a stationary steel stairway or ladder shall be provided. The platform shall be provided with a four inch (4") toe guard, a steel railing not less than thirty-six inches (36") inches in height, and shall have a runway made of steel grating not less than thirty inches (30") in width.

**M-1014.4.2 Platform Access.** The stairway or ladder shall not be less than sixteen (16") inches in width and shall provide easy access to and from the platform. Where there is more than one boiler or where otherwise necessary a second stairway or ladder remote from the other shall be provided.

**M-1014.4.2.1 Means of Egress.** Two unobstructed and accessible exits remote from each other shall be provided in every room housing power boilers of seventy-five (75) horsepower total capacity and over and heating boilers having a total capacity of 2,400,000 BTU and over. Blow off pits, ash pits, alleyways, steam pipe tunnels, and other places where there would be danger of men being trapped shall have adequate ventilation, lighting, and a sufficient number of adequate means of egress.

**M-1014.4.3 Blow-off Pits.** Blow-off piping from power boilers shall not discharge directly into a sewer. A blow-off tank or sump shall be used where conditions do not provide an adequate and safe open discharge.

**M-1014.4.4 Blow-off Tanks.** Blow-off tanks shall be designed for at least fifty percent (50%) of the working steam pressure of the boiler to which it is connected and shall be built in accordance with the Unfired Pressure Vessel Code. The tanks shall have a discharge connection at least six inches (6") above the maximum water level with a water seal, a vent from the top of the tank, and a cold-water connection to the top of the tank. The vent shall be routed to a safe point of discharge which shall be above the roof of the building of which it is a part or any adjoining building to which it may not constitute a hazard or nuisance, and shall be substantially supported and drained. The design of each tank and piping shall be submitted to the Department for approval. Sizes shall not be less than indicated in Table M-1014-1.

#### **M-1014.5 Installation of Low Pressure Heating Boilers**

**M-1014.5.1 General.** The return water connection to every low pressure steam or hot water heating boiler shall be arranged to form what is known as the "Hartford Loop" so that the water cannot be forced out of the boiler below the safe water level. This connection shall be installed on each boiler, with the inside bottom of the return pipe close nipple where it enters the equalizing loop being at the same level as the top of the bottom nut of the water gage glass.

**M-1014.5.2 Equalizer Pipe.** Each boiler shall have a separate equalizer pipe installed between the bottom opening of the boiler and the boiler stop valve, when used. The equalizer pipe shall not have a valve in it at any point and shall not be used as a means to connect two or more boilers together below the water line. Equalizer pipe sizes shall not be less than the schedules indicated in Table M-1014-2.

**M-1014.5.3 Stop Valve.** When a stop valve is used in the return line of the loop it shall be located within six (6) feet of the floor. A drain valve shall be provided at the lower point of the return line. Galvanized pipe and fittings shall not be used in any part of the equalizer pipe or return.

**M-1014.5.4 City Water Feed.** Each boiler shall be provided with a city water feed line which shall not discharge directly into any part of a boiler exposed to the direct radiant heat from the fire. It shall be connected into the equalizing line between the boiler and

the condensate return connection and shall have a check valve in the line as close to the boiler as possible.

**M-1014.5.5 Boiler Feed Line.** The boiler feed line shall be adequate to take care of the maximum demand of the boiler.

**M-1014.5.6 City Water Shut-off Valve.** All connections from the city water shut-off valve shall be made of brass pipe with screwed fittings. Tubing shall not be used.

**M-1014.5.7 Condensate Return Pump.** A condensate return pump shall have capacity to supply the boiler or boilers with sufficient water to maintain a normal water level when the boilers are operating at maximum capacity. When more than one boiler is installed the condensate return line shall be arranged to supply all boilers equally.

**M-1014.5.8 Stop Valve.** A stop valve shall be installed in each supply and return connection of two or more boilers connected to a common system. When a stop valve is used in the supply pipe connection of a single boiler, there shall be one used in the return pipe connection or vice versa. If there are multiple branch connections each one shall be valved. When stop valves over two inches (2") in size are used they shall be of the outside screw-and-yoke type.

**M-1014.5.8.1 Stop Valve Location.** Stop valves shall be located as close to the boiler as possible and when over seven feet (7') above the floor shall be made accessible for operation by means of a permanent steel ladder and platform or by a chain or motor operated mechanism.

**M-1014.5.9 Blow-off Connections.** Each boiler shall have one or more blow-off connections fitted with straightway valves connected directly with the lowest water space. Plug or bob cocks shall not be used. A discharge pipe shall be run to the floor full size with an ell at the bottom to direct the water away from the operator or to a blow-off tank. A "tee" fitting shall be used at the boiler in order to provide for cleaning the line. Blow-off valves shall not be smaller than the schedule indicated in Table M-1014-3. If a surface blow down is used, it shall be run full size to the floor with an ell at the bottom or to a common drain.

**M-1014.5.10 Wash-out and Hand-hole Openings.** All wash-out and hand-hole openings shall be accessible and shall not be obstructed or blocked by pipe or other obstacle. Capped pipe nipples and plugs shall be installed in wash-out openings.

**M-1014.5.11 Cross Connections.** There shall be no cross connection below the water line for any purpose between two or more boilers.

## **M-1014.6 Boiler Controls**

**M-1014.6.1 Steam Limit Control.** Every steam boiler, when mechanically fired, shall be provided with a steam limit control (pressure regulator) which shall operate to prevent

the steam pressure from rising above the allowable working pressure of the boiler. All connections shall be on non-ferrous pipe with screwed fittings. There shall not be any valve between the boiler and the control.

**M-1014.6.2 Master Limit Control.** When two or more boilers are connected to a common header, a master limit control connected into the main steam header shall be provided to control all boilers simultaneously.

**M-1014.6.3 Low-Water Fuel Cut-Off.** Each steam boiler, when mechanically fired, shall be equipped with an approved low-water fuel cut-off, so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply in case the water-gage glass indicates low-water level; provided that this requirement shall not apply to gas-fired miniature boilers.

**M-1014.6.3.1 Cut-Off Operational Independence.** The operation of the low-water fuel cut-off shall not be dependent upon the functioning of another device.

**M-1014.6.3.2 Burner Cut-Off Location.** When an oil burner is manually operated, the cut-off valve shall be located in the oil line close to the burner and shall have a manual re-set.

**M-1014.6.3.3 Valve Location Restriction.** No valves shall be permitted between the low-water fuel cut-off and the boiler.

**M-1014.6.4 Water-Gage Glass Controls.** Each steam boiler shall have one or more water-gage glasses attached to the water column or directly to the boiler by means of valved fittings, with the lower fitting provided with a drain valve of the straightway type with opening not less than one quarter inch (1/4") diameter. The gage glass shall be visible from the operating floor and without the removal of any cover or casing. There shall be no obstruction to interfere with visibility of the gage glass.

**M-1014.6.5 Operating Elevated Gage Glass Controls.** When gage cocks or gage glass shut off cocks are located seventy-eight inches (78") or more above the operating floor, they shall be of the quick opening type with chains or rods attached for operation from the floor. The gage glass and pressure gage shall be illuminated by a light with an approved type of reflector so that they can be easily read.

**M-1014.6.6 Automatic Water Feeder.** An automatic water feeder shall be installed on each mechanically fired steam heating boiler. It shall have sufficient capacity to take care of the maximum boiler output.

**M-1014.6.7 Feed Pump Capacity.** A boiler feed pump, when used, shall have capacity to supply sufficient water to all boilers to maintain a normal water level when the boiler or boilers are operating at maximum capacity.

**M-1014.6.8 City Water By-Pass.** A city water by-pass valve, with the valve accessible from the floor, shall be installed around a feeder and shall have valved drain run to within six inches (6") of the floor.

**M-1014.6.9 Feed-Water Level.** A water feeder shall be installed so that it will not maintain the water level above the normal operating level as specified by the manufacturer of the boiler.

**M-1014.6.10 Minimum Boiler Water Level.** On low-pressure steam heating boilers, the water gage glass shall be located so that the lowest permissible water level in the glass shall be as follows.

**M-1014.6.10.1 Multiple Fire-Tube Boilers.** For multiple fire-tube boilers at least one half inch ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ") of water shall be maintained over the top row of tubes or the fusible plug, if issued, whichever is higher.

**M-1014.6.10.2 Scotch Marine Boilers.** For package type Scotch Marine boilers at least one half inch ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ") of water shall be maintained over the top row of tubes or the fusible plug, if used, whichever is the higher.

**M-1014.6.10.3 Horizontal Tube Boilers.** For fire-box, horizontal water tube boilers at least one inch (1") of water shall be maintained over the highest point of the crown sheet.

**M-1014.6.10.4 Miscellaneous Boilers.** For any other type boiler the minimum water level shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations.

**M-1014.6.11 Multiple Boiler Water Level.** Two or more boilers shall be arranged so that the low water line of all boilers are at the same level; provided, that when each boiler is provided with an individual pump control and an automatically operated feed water control valve they may be approved for operation with different water levels.

**M-1014.6.12 Boiler Pressure Gage.** Every boiler shall have a pressure gage connected to its steam space, or to its water column, or to its steam connection by means of a siphon or equivalent device exterior to the boiler, and of sufficient capacity to keep the gage tube filled with water. The pressure gage shall be arranged so that the gage cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock with a "tee" or lever handle installed in the pipe near the gage.

**M-1014.6.13 Cock Handle Position.** The handle of the cock for the pressure gage shall be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open.

**M-1014.6.14 Gage Scale Graduations.** The scale on the dial of a gage on a low pressure boiler shall be graduated to not less than thirty (30 psi) in five (5 psi) graduations. Connections to steam gage siphons shall be of non-ferrous pipe. The gage

shall be visible at all times without the removal of any cover or casing, and shall be of such size and so located as to be easily readable from the operating floor.

**M-1014.6.15 Independent Controls.** When two or more mechanically fired steam boilers are connected to the same system, each boiler shall have independent low-water fuel cut-offs, pressure controls, pressure gages and water feeders.

**M-1014.6.16 Non-Ferrous Pipe and Fittings.** All of the connections for the water column, water feeder, low-water fuel cut-out and make up water line to the boiler, shall be of non-ferrous pipe and screwed fittings, with a cross at each right angle turn and with a check valve in the feed line as close to the boiler as possible. High pressure boilers shall have a valve between the boiler and the check valve. Tubing shall not be permitted on boiler piping or fittings. All piping shall be firmly braced and supported.

**M-1014.6.17 Drain Locations.** Drains shall be located so that the discharge will not impinge on the boiler setting or electrical equipment. Water column, water feeder and low-water fuel cut-out shall have separate full size straight-way valve drains run to within six inches (6") from the floor or to a common visible drain, with the valves located to be conveniently accessible for operation. Plug cocks shall not be used.

## **M-1014.7 Safety Valves**

**M-1014.7.1 General.** Each steam boiler shall be provided with one or more safety valves of the spring-pop type and having side outlet discharge, adjusted and sealed to discharge at a pressure not to exceed fifteen (15) pounds per square inch. Seals shall be attached in a manner to prevent the valve from being taken apart or re-set to relieve at a higher pressure without breaking the seal.

**M-1014.7.2 Lever-Lifting Device.** Each valve shall have a substantial lever-lifting device which will positively lift the disk from its seat at least one-sixteenth inch (1/16") when there is no pressure on the boiler. Where the lever is more than seventy-eight inches (78") from the floor a flexible chain or cable operating over a pulley, shall be provided so that the valve can be tested.

**M-1014.7.3 Identification.** Each steam safety valve shall bear the ASME symbol to indicate that it complies with the requirements of the ASME Boiler Code in regard to construction, testing and rating, and shall be plainly and permanently marked by the manufacturer in such a way that the marking will be readable when the valve is installed and will not be obliterated in service.

**M-1014.7.3.1 Marking.** The marking shall include the following information.

1. The manufacturer's name;
2. The type and catalog number;



3. The pressure at which it is set to blow; and
4. The capacity in pounds of steam per hour as certified by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

**M-1014.7.4 Operating Capacity.** The steam safety valve capacity for each steam boiler shall be such that with the fuel burning equipment installed and operating at maximum capacity, the pressure cannot rise more than five (5) psi above the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

**M-1014.7.5 Operating Conditions.** When operating conditions are changed, such as when there is no stamping on a valve or it is not legible, or when a safety valve does not function properly, then a new safety valve or valves as required in this section shall be installed.

**M-1014.7.6 Installation.** It shall be the responsibility of the contractor making the installation or the changes, to provide and install the necessary safety valves.

**M-1014.7.7 Test.** In case of dispute over the safety valve capacity or when, in judgment of the Inspector, it is considered advisable to test the capacity of the safety valves, an accumulation test shall be made by the contractor or owner in the presence of the Inspector.

**M-1014.7.7.1 Test Procedure.** This test shall be made by closing off all other discharge outlets from the boiler and operating the fuel burning equipment at maximum capacity. The safety valves shall be sufficient to prevent the pressure from rising more than five (5) psi above the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler. Provision shall be made for piping the steam discharge from the boiler room during the test.

**M-1014.7.8 Minimum Capacity.** The minimum capacity of the safety valve or valves in pounds of steam per hour shall be determined as follows:

1. For steel or cast iron boilers, multiply the square feet of heating surface, if available, by five (5) or use the maximum rating output of the boiler as given by the manufacturer, whichever is greater.
2. If the fuel burning equipment installed will produce a greater output than the minimum specified in paragraph M-1014.7.8(1), the capacity of the safety valve or valves shall be based on the maximum output obtainable. In any event the requirements of Section M-1014.7 shall be met.

**M-1014.7.9 Safety Valves Connection.** Safety valves shall be connected to boilers with the spindle in a vertical position in any one of the following ways:

1. Either directly to a tapped or flanged opening in the boiler;

2. To a fitting connected to the boiler by a close nipple;
3. To a Y-base;
4. To a valveless steam pipe between the adjacent boilers; or
5. To a valveless header connecting steam outlets on the same boiler.

**M-1014.7.9.1 Y-base Connection.** When a Y-base is used pursuant to paragraph M-1014.7.9(3) above, the inlet area shall not be less than the combined outlet areas.

**M-1014.7.9.2 Clearance.** There shall be sufficient clearance above and around safety valves so that they can be removed and replaced without dismantling. The identification plate shall be located so as to be readable.

**M-1014.7.10 Shut-off.** No shut-off or connection of any description shall be placed between a safety valve and the boiler, nor on the discharge pipe between such valve and the atmosphere. A safety valve shall not be connected to an internal pipe in the boiler. Tubing or galvanized pipe shall not be used between the valve and boiler.

**M-1014.7.11 Discharge Pipe.** A discharge pipe shall not be used on safety valves on low pressure except where a boiler is located in a restricted space or where the discharge from the valve might constitute a hazard to persons or to equipment. A discharge opening of a single valve or the aggregate area of all valves based on the nominal diameter of the discharge openings of the valves with which it connects.

**M-1014.7.11.1 Discharge Pipe Installation.** The discharge pipe shall be fitted with an open drain to prevent water from lodging in the upper part of the valve or in the pipe. When an elbow is placed on a safety valve discharge pipe, it shall be located close to valve outlet. The pipe shall be supported so that no strain is placed on valve body. The discharge shall be arranged so there will be no danger of scalding attendants. A safety valve shall not be installed to discharge inside the casing of a self-contained boiler.

**M-1014.7.11.2 Discharge Pipe Location.** The safety valve or valves of each high-pressure boiler shall be provided with a full size discharge pipe leading to a safe point of discharge which shall be above the roof of the building of which it is a part, or any adjoining building to which it may constitute a hazard or nuisance. Any discharge pipe shall be braced and supported so that there is no weight or strain on the safety valve body. The area of the discharge pipe shall be equal to the area of all of the safety valves discharging into it and forty-five (45) degree turns, shall be used. Visible, non-valved drains shall be provided for that piping.

**M-1014.7.11.3 Discharge Pipes not Required.** Boilers of twenty-five (25) horsepower or less shall not be required to have discharge pipes if the discharge from the safety valve will not constitute a hazard.

**M-1014.7.12 Connection of Two or More Boilers.** When two or more boilers which are allowed different pressures are connected to a common steam main, all safety valves shall be set at a pressure exceeding the lowest pressure allowed, provided that when two or more boilers which are allowed different pressures are connected to a common steam main and all safety valves are set at a pressure not exceeding the lowest pressure allowed, the boiler allowed the lowest pressure shall be protected by a safety valve or valves placed on the connecting pipe to the steam main.

**M-1014.7.12.1 Connecting Pipe.** The area or combined area of the safety valve or valves placed on the connecting pipe to the steam main shall not be less than the area of the connecting pipe, except when the steam main is smaller than the connecting pipe the area of the safety valve or valves placed in the connecting pipe shall not be less than the area of the steam main. Each safety valve placed on the connecting pipe shall be set at the lowest allowable pressure of any of the boilers.

#### **M-1014.8 Explosion Doors**

**M-1014.8.1 General.** Each boiler burning fuel in suspended or gaseous form shall have one or more self-closing explosion doors located in the boiler setting and breeching as required. This shall apply not only to new installations but existing installations, if changed to burn such fuel.

**M-1014.8.2 Explosion Doors.** Explosion doors, when located in the walls of the boiler setting within seven feet (7') of the firing floor or of any platform or walkway, shall be provided with substantial deflectors to divert the blast of exploding gas so that it will not constitute a hazard.

#### **M-1014.9 Installation of Miniature Boilers**

**M-1014.9.1 Miniature Boilers.** The classification "miniature" shall apply to fired pressure vessels, and fired and unfired boilers which do not exceed the following limits.

1. Sixteen(16") inches inside diameter of shell;
2. Five (5) cu. ft. gross volume, exclusive of casing and insulation;
3. Twenty (20) square feet water heating surface;
4. One-Hundred (100) pounds per square inch maximum allowable working pressure.

**M-1014.9.1.1 Limitation.** Where any one of the limits specified in Article 1014.9.1 is exceeded, the rules for power boilers shall apply.

**M-1014.9.2 Clearance.** Each boiler shall be located so that adequate space will be provided for the proper operation of the boiler and appurtenances and for the inspection of all surfaces and their necessary maintenance and repair. Each boiler shall have the following minimum clearances.

1. At least eighteen inches (18") on all sides;
2. At least three feet (3') clearance from electric meters and main-line switches; and
3. At least eighteen inches (18") clearance from all other switches and fuse boxes.
4. A boiler shall not be located closer than three feet (3') horizontally from any gas meter.

**M-1014.9.3 Feed Pump.** Each boiler operating at a pressure in excess of twenty-five (25) pounds per square inch shall be provided with at least one feed pump or other approved feeding device except where the steam generator is operated with no extraction of steam (closed system).

**M-1014.9.4 Blow-off Connection.** Each boiler shall be provided with a blow-off connection which shall not be reduced in size and shall be led to a safe point of discharge. Whenever, in the judgment of the boiler inspector a safe place of discharge cannot be provided, a blow-down tank shall be installed, and a one inch (1") vent leading to a safe point of discharge shall be provided on each of those tanks. The blow-off shall be fitted with a valve or cock in direct connection with the lowest water space practicable.

**M-1014.9.5 Mechanically Fired Boilers.** All boilers mechanically fired other than by gas shall be provided with an automatic low-water fuel cut-out so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply in case the water level falls to a point not lower than the bottom of the water glass.

**M-1014.9.6 Gas-Fired Boilers.** Where boilers are gas-fired, the burners used shall conform to the requirements of the Fuel Gas Code. The burner shall be equipped with a fuel-regulating governor which shall be automatic and regulated by the steam pressure. This governor shall be so constructed that in the event of its failure, there shall be no possibility of steam from the boiler entering the gas chamber or supply pipe. A manual stop or throttle valve shall be located in the inlet pipe ahead of the fuel-regulating governor. All requirements of the International Fuel Gas Code shall be satisfied.

**M-1014.9.7 Boiler Vent Installations.** Each gas-fired boiler shall be connected to a vent or flue, or to a chimney, extended to an approved location outside of the building, all to be of approved design, and in accordance with the boiler manufacturers' installation instructions.

## **M-1014.10 Installation of Unfired Pressure Vessels**

**M-1014.10.1 General.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall be installed so that it is available for complete external inspection of shell and heads and shall be located so that wherever possible, there will be not less than twelve inches (12") between any floor, wall, ceiling, or other obstruction. There shall be no piping or other obstructions to prevent proper access; any manhole or inspection opening shall be located so that it is readily accessible. All stamping and longitudinal welded or riveted joints shall be located in a position as to be readily visible to the inspector. Where necessary to install a vessel underground, it shall be enclosed in a concrete or brick pit with a removable cover so that inspection of the entire shell and heads of the vessel can be made.

**M-1014.10.2 Structural Supports.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall be supported by masonry or structural supports of sufficient strength and rigidity to safely support the vessel and its contents. There shall be no vibration in either the vessel or its connecting piping.

**M-1014.10.3 Piping and Connections.** All piping and connections to an unfired pressure vessel shall be supported in a substantial and safe manner so that there is no strain placed upon the vessel. Provision shall be made for expansion, contraction, and drainage.

**M-1014.10.4 Protection.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall be painted with two coats of approved paint, so that it is protected from rust or corrosion. It shall not be in contact with any corrosive material or moisture.

**M-1014.10.5 Drip Pipe.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall have bottom drip pipe fitted with a valve or cock in direct connection with the lowest space practicable. The minimum size of pipe and fittings shall be three quarters of an inch (3/4") except for tanks twenty inches (20") in diameter or less in which the minimum of the pipe and fitting shall be one-quarter inch (1/4"). If a plug cock is used, the plug shall be held in place with a guard or gland. Globe valves and cocks shall not be used.

**M-1014.10.6 Pressure Gage.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall have a pressure gage connected in a manner that the gage cannot be shut off from the vessel, except by a cock with a "T" or lever handle which shall be placed on the pipe near the gage. Connections to gages shall be placed on the pipe near the gage. Connections to gages shall be made of non-ferrous pipe and fittings from the tank to the gage. Tubing shall not be used. The dial of the gage shall be graduated to not less than one and one-half times the maximum pressures allowed for the vessel. A one-quarter inch (1/4") test gage connection shall be provided for attaching the inspector's test gage.

## **M-1014.11 Safety Valves for Unfired Pressure Vessels**

**M-1014.11.1 General.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall be protected by safety and relief valves and indicating and controlling devices to insure its safe operation. These valves and devices shall be so constructed, located, and installed that they cannot readily be rendered inoperative.

**M-1014.11.2 Safety Valves.** The relieving capacity of safety valves shall be such as to prevent a rise of pressure in the vessel of more than ten (10) percent above the maximum allowable working pressure, taking into account the effect of static head. Safety valve discharge shall be carried to a safe place.

**M-1014.11.3 Type of Safety Valve.** Each safety valve shall be of the direct spring-loaded type having a substantial lever-lifting device so that the disk can be lifted from its seat by the spindle not less than one-eighth (1/8th) the diameter of the valve when the pressure of the vessel is seventy-five percent (75%) of that at which the safety valve is set to blow.

**M-1014.11.4 Marking.** Every such valve shall be marked "ASME or National Board Standard," and shall give the following information.

1. The name or identifying mark of the manufacturer;
2. The pipe size of valve inlet;
3. The pressures of which the valve is set to blow; and
4. The relieving capacity.

**M-1014.11.5 Prohibit & Safety Valves.** Safety valves having either the seat or disk of cast iron shall not be used.

**M-1014.11.6 Multiple Safety Valves.** If more than one safety valve is used, the discharge capacity shall be taken as the combined capacity of all valves.

**M-1014.11.7 Pressure Relief in Unfired Pressure Vessels.** For vessels in which pressure is not generated but is derived from an outside source, each safety valve shall be so connected to the vessel, vessels, or system which it protects as to prevent a rise in pressures beyond the maximum allowable pressure in any vessel protected by the safety valve.

**M-1014.11.8 Pressure Relief In.** For vessels in which pressure may be generated, the safety valve or valves shall be connected directly to the vessel which is to be protected or to a pipe line leading to the vessel. The internal cross-sectional area of the pipe line shall be not less than the nominal area of the safety valve or valves used, and without any intervening valve between the vessel and the safety valve or valves protecting it.

**M-1014.11.9 Pressure Relief Escape Pipe.** When an escape pipe is used, it shall be full-sized and fitted with an open drain to prevent liquid from lodging in the upper part of the-safety valve, and no valve of any description shall be placed on the escape pipe between the safety valve and the atmosphere.

**M-1014.11.10 Escape Pipe Fittings.** When an elbow is placed on an escape pipe, it shall be located close to the safety valve outlet or the escape pipe shall be securely anchored and supported. When two or more safety valves are placed on one connection, this connection shall have a cross-sectional area at least equal to the combined area of these safety valves.

**M-1014.11.11 Freeze Protection.** Each safety valve which is exposed to a temperature of thirty-two (32) degree F. or less shall have a drain at least three-eighths inch (3/8") in diameter at the lowest point where water can collect; provided, that safety valves three-quarters inch (3/4") in size and less may have drain holes as large as possible but not less than three-eighths inch (3/8") diameter.

**M-1014.11.12 Spring Adjustment.** Safety-valve springs shall not be adjusted to carry more than ten (10) percent greater pressure than that for which the springs were made.

**M-1014.11.13 Valve Testing.** Each safety valve shall be tested once every day or more often by raising the disk from its seat.

**M-1014.11.14 Valve Sizing.** Safety valves for compressed air tanks shall not exceed three inches (3") in diameter and shall be proportioned for the maximum number of cubic feet of free air that can be supplied per minute as determined in Section VIII, Division 1, Part UG, paragraph UG-133, "Determination of Pressure Relief Requirements" in the ASME Code.

**M-1014.11.15 Use of Rupture Disks.** Rupture disks or heads may be used for additional protection of pressure vessels but they shall be designed to fail at a pressure above the safety or relief valve setting.

**M-1014.11.16 Multiple Vessels.** When two or more unfired pressure vessels which are allowed different pressures are connected to a common source of pressure, all safety valves shall be set at pressure not exceeding the lowest pressure allowed.

**M-1014.12 Penalties for Code Violations.** Any person who violates or fails to comply with any one or more of the provisions of this chapter, shall upon conviction thereof in the police court of the District of Columbia, on information filed by the Office of the Corporation Counsel, be subject to a fine of not to exceed five hundred dollars (\$500.00) or to imprisonment for not more than 90 days, or both, for each and every violation thereof and each violation shall constitute a separate offense.

#### **TABLE M-1014-1**

**REQUIREMENTS FOR POWER BOILERS  
(see M-1014.4.4)**

BOILER RATING	SIZE TANK	OUTLET	V E N T
2 to 25 horsepower	24 in. diameter by 36 in. deep	2	2
26 to 75 horsepower	30 in. diameter by 48 in. deep	3	3
76 to 150 horsepower	36 in. diameter by 54 in. deep	5	4
151 to 250 horsepower	36 in. diameter by 60 in. deep	5	5
251 to 600 horsepower	42 in. diameter by 66 in. deep	5	6
601 to 1,000 horsepower	48 in. diameter by 72 in. deep	6	6

**TABLE M-1014-2  
EQUALIZER PIPE SIZES  
(see M-1014.5.2)**

GRATE AREA (square feet)	S.V.R.C. (pounds per hour)	PIPE SIZE (inches)
Under 4	250 or less	1 ½
4 to 15	251 or 2000	2 ½
Over 15	2001 or over	4

\*Note. Safety Valve Relieving Capacity for this purpose shall be the capacity as stamped on a steel boiler or on the name plate of a cast iron boiler.

**TABLE M-1014-3  
BLOW-OFF VALVES  
(see M-1014.5.9)**

BOILER RATING (square feet E.D.R.)	Pipe Size (inches)
Under 1000	¾
1001 to 3500	1



3501 to 8500	1 ½
8501 to over	2

## **SECTION M-1015 WATER STORAGE TANKS, WATER HEATERS, HYDRO-PNEUMATIC TANKS**

**M-1015.1 General.** Each hot water storage tank, range boiler, or automatic storage water heater, having a nominal water-containing capacity of one-hundred twenty (120) gallons or less shall be built for a minimum working pressure of one-hundred twenty-five (125) pounds per square inch and shall be tested hydrostatically to three-hundred (300) pounds per square inch. Each tank shall have clearly and indelibly stamped or stenciled thereon the name of the manufacturer, the maximum allowable working pressure for which it is built, and the test pressure.

**M-1015.1.1 Tank Label.** Each hot water tank shall be stamped with the ASME symbol to indicate that it is constructed in accordance with the Unfired Pressure Vessel Code of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers. It shall also be stamped with the name of the manufacturer, the maximum allowable working pressure, the year built, and the identifying number of the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

**M-1015.1.2 Permit Application.** Applications for permits for hot water storage tanks as described in Article 1015.1 shall be accompanied by the Manufacturers' Data Report which shall be signed by an Inspector licensed to inspect boilers and pressure vessels by the National Board.

**M-1015.1.3 Gas-fired Automatic Storage Water Heaters.** Gas fired automatic storage water heaters shall bear a label indicating approval and listing in accordance with the Fuel Gas Code.

**M-1015.1.4 Oil Fired or Electrically Heated Water Heaters.** Oil fired or electrically heated automatic storage water heaters shall bear the U.L. label to indicate listing by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

**M-1015.1.5 Storage Water Heater Label.** Each storage water heater shall bear the manufacturer's trade name, if any, the catalog number, the firing rate (input), the output in gallons per hour at one-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (100 deg F.) rise in temperature, and the nominal capacity in gallons of the storage tank.

**M-1015.1.6 Storage Tank Construction.** Storage tanks shall be supported upon metal supports of pipe or structural steel resting upon the floor, or they may be hung from supports attached to structural steel or concrete beams, provided the beams have been determined to be of sufficient strength to support the additional weight; or they may be installed upon concrete saddles. Provision shall be made to take care of expansion. Tanks shall not be supported by their piping system. Manhole openings shall be kept clear of all walls, pipes, or other obstructions.

**M-1015.1.7 Installation-Gas-Fired Water Heaters.** Each gas-fired water heater shall be provided with an approved draft diverter installed in accordance with the manufacturer's design, and shall be connected to an effective chimney shall be above the entrance of other vent connectors or breechings.

**M-1015.1.8 Commercial and Industrial Installation.** In commercial and industrial establishments when a connection to a chimney is impracticable, the installation of an automatic water heater may be approved by the Director if the following requirements are met. The maximum flow of gas shall be limited by fixed orifices to values in relation to the net cubical contents of the space in which the heater is located as specified in Table M-1015; In no case shall the maximum input rate exceed 10,000 BTU per hour; and the heater shall otherwise conform to these regulations.

**M-1015.1.9 Prohibited Use.** No water from a hot water supply boiler, automatic water heater coil or tank shall be used for building heating, except that water to be used for auxiliary space heating may be by-passed from any such boiler or heater, provided there is no actual withdrawal or possible leakage of water from the unit, and that all surfaces and connections in contact with the water are of copper or other approved corrosion resistant material.

**M-1015.1.10 Existing Tanks.** A tank currently in use shall not be painted, lined or repaired on the inside with any material or in any manner that will affect either the color or taste of the water supply after the tank is put into service. Any material intended for use as a lining or protective coating for the interior of tanks shall be submitted for approval.

**M-1015.1.11 Tank Maintenance and Repair.** The water supply connections to and from the tank shall be disconnected or plugged while the tank is being cleaned, painted, lined or repaired, to prevent any foreign fluid or substance from entering the distribution piping. Adequate measures shall be taken for the protection of workmen in the tank.

**M-1015.1.12 Welding Repair.** Any repair by welding on a tank shall be done by a welder qualified and licensed by the Department and the work shall be done under the supervision of a D.C. Boiler Inspector or an insurance company.

**M-1015.1.13 Modification or Additions.** When any changes or additions are made to an existing hot water supply system or when a storage tank is replaced or moved, compliance with this title shall be required; provided, that when there is no available opening in the top of an automatic storage water heater having a nominal water containing capacity of one-hundred twenty (120) gallons or less, the valve shall be installed in the outlet header from the heater with only one fitting between the relief valve and the tank.

## **M-1015.2 Hydro-pneumatic Tanks**

**M-1015.2.1 Construction.** Each hydro-pneumatic tank shall be constructed for a minimum working pressure of one-hundred fifty (150) pounds per square inch.

**M-1015.2.2 Label.** Each hydro-pneumatic tank shall be stamped with the following information.

The ASME symbol to indicate that it is constructed in accordance with the Unfired Pressure Vessel Code of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers;

1. The name of the manufacturer;
2. The maximum allowable working pressure;
3. The year built; and
4. The identifying number of the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspector.

**M-1015.2.3 Permit Applications.** Applications for permits shall be accompanied by the Manufacturers Data Report which shall be signed by an Inspector licensed to inspect boilers and pressure vessels by the National Board.

**M-1015.2.4 Gage-Glass.** Each hydro-pneumatic tank shall be provided with a gage-glass to show the level of the water in the upper section of the tank and a pressure gage. It shall also be provided with an eleven inch (11") manhole opening which shall be kept clear of all walls, pipes, or other obstructions.

**M-1015.2.5 Safety Valves.** Each hydro-pneumatic shall be equipped with a lever lifting safety valve bearing the ASME symbol suitable for use with air, installed in a vertical position on the top of the tank and set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the tank. The valve shall be sealed to prevent tampering and there shall be no shut-off valve between the tank and the relief valve.

**M-1015.2.6 Pressure Gage.** Each tank shall be provided with a pressure gage not less than four inches (4") in diameter connected directly to the tank by means of non-ferrous pipe. A cock with a tee handle shall be placed in the pipe near the gage. The gage shall be graduated to not less than one and one-half (1.5) times the maximum allowable working pressure of the tank.

**M-1015.2.7 Valve By-Pass.** Each hydro-pneumatic tank shall be piped to include a full-size valved by-pass so that city water can be used in the building when the tank is not in service.

**M-1015.2.8 Vacuum Relieving Device.** Each hydro-pneumatic tank shall be provided with a vacuum relieving device located on the top of the tank and a horizontal swing check valve in the water supply line from the pump to the tank, and in the District water

supply by-pass line to the tank. A valved sludge drain pipe shall be installed at the bottom of the tank and shall discharge through an open connection into the drainage system of the building.

### **M-1015.3 Relief Valves, Gages, and Safety Controls**

**M-1015.3.1 General.** Each hot water storage tank and automatic water heater shall be equipped with safety controls, which shall prevent the temperature of the water in the tank from exceeding two-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (200 deg F.) and the pressure from exceeding the maximum allowable working pressure for which the tank is built. Each such unit shall be equipped with the following.

1. A pressure relief valve and a separate temperature relief valve of the spillage type;
2. A combined temperature-pressure relief valve of the spillage type; or

In the case of automatic water heaters manufactured as a unit, a thermostat and pressure relief valve.

**M-1015.3.2 Pressure Relief Valve.** Each pressure relief valve shall be of the lever lifting, spring-loaded type without disk on the pressure side of the valve. The valves shall be set to relieve at a pressure at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the tank and shall be so arranged that they cannot be reset to relieve at a higher pressure than stamped thereon.

**M-1015.3.3 Relief Valve Capacity.** The valve or valves shall have sufficient capacity to prevent the pressure in the tank from rising more than ten percent (10%) above the maximum allowable working pressure. The rate capacity of the valve, or valves shall be equal to the maximum gross output of the heating unit installed. The gross output shall be determined from the data supplied on the manufacturer's name plate, catalog data, or from the fuel input.

**M-1015.3.4 Label.** Pressure relief valves shall bear the ASME symbol to indicate that they comply with the requirements of the ASME Low Pressure Heating Boiler Code in regard to construction, testing, and rating, and shall be plainly and permanently marked by the manufacturer in a way that the marking will be readable when the valve is installed and will not be obliterated in service. Pressure relief valves used on non-ASME approved, gas-fired equipment shall bear the symbol to indicate listing under the requirements of an approved testing agency, and shall bear the ASME symbol for equipment using other fuels. The marking on pressure relief valves shall include the following information.

1. The manufacturer's name;
2. The type and catalog number;

3. The pressure at which it is set to blow; and
4. The capacity in pounds of steam or BTU per hour as certified by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

**M-1015.3.5 Valve Size.** No pressure relief valve shall be less than three-quarter inch (3/4") standard pipe size.

**M-1015.3.6 Installation.** Each pressure relief valve shall be installed in a vertical position directly on the top of the tank, or if there is no opening available, to a fitting in the hot water service line within two inches (2") from the tank. Each pressure relief valve shall have a full size discharge pipe of non-ferrous metal, with an unthreaded open end, run to an approved plumbing fixture or if none is available to within six inches (6") of the floor. When the discharge pipe is over one inch (1") in diameter it shall be supported and braced to prevent any strain being placed on the valve.

**M-1015.3.7 Multiple Valve Use.** If more than one valve is used, they may be connected to a manifold whose inlet pipe area shall be equal to the area of the inlet openings of all the valves. There shall be no restriction in size on either the inlet or discharge side of the valve or valves, and there shall be no shut-off valve or check valve between the relief valve and the tank.

**M-1015.3.8 Temperature Relief Valve.** Each temperature relief valve shall bear a label indicating approval and listing by ASME, and shall be submitted for approval to the Department.

**M-1015.3.8.1 Valve Type and Design.** Each temperature relief valve shall be of the automatic self-closing type with a test lever and shall be designed to open at two-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (200 degrees F.) or lower and be of sufficient capacity to limit the temperature to not over two-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (200 degrees F.). The valve shall be non-adjustable and shall not be less than three-quarter inch (3/4") standard pipe size.

**M-1015.3.8.2. Label.** Each temperature relief valve shall bear a plate permanently attached, giving the following information.

1. The name of the manufacturer;
2. The model or type number of the valve;
3. The temperature at which the valve will deliver its rated capacity; and
4. The rated capacity in BTU.

**M-1015.3.8.3 Installation.** Each temperature relief valve shall be installed in a vertical position on the top of the tank. Valves shall be screwed directly into the

tank without intervening fittings unless the dip tube extension type is used, in which case the tube shall project into the tank. If a fitting is used, it shall be of non-ferrous material. Each valve shall have a full size discharge pipe with an unthreaded open end, run to within six inches (6") of the floor or to a suitable fixture. There shall be no restrictions in size on either the inlet or discharge side of the valve, and there shall be no shut-off or check valve between the relief valve and the tank.

**M-1015.3.9 Combined Temperature and Pressure Valve.** When a combination temperature-pressure relief valve is used, it shall conform with and be installed similarly to the requirements for pressure relief valves and for temperature relief valves. It shall bear both the ASME symbol and required stamping in addition to the symbol of the AGA for the temperature relief element.

**M-1015.3.10 Aquastat.** Each aquastat used on an automatic gas water heater unless provided as part of a complete AGA approved unit, shall be listed by AGA and shall operate to shut off the gas supply to limit the temperature of the heated water to not over two-hundred ten degrees Fahrenheit (210 deg F.).

**M-1015.3.11 Hot Water Heating Systems.** Hot water supply boilers, tankless heaters, electric heaters, immersion heating coils in boilers and any other type of heater shall be protected against excessive pressure, as provided herein.

**M-1015.3.11.1 Pressure Gage.** Each hot water supply boiler and hot water storage tank shall be provided with a pressure gage connected directly to the boiler or tank by means of non-ferrous pipe. A cock with a tee handle shall be placed in the pipe near the gage. The gage shall have a dial not less than four inches (4") in diameter and be so located that it can be easily read from the floor. It shall be graduated to not less than one and one-half (1.5) times the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler or tank. Gages shall not be required for range boilers and domestic type water heaters.

**M-1015.3.11.2 Thermometer.** Each hot water supply boiler, hot water storage tank, tankless heater, immersion type heater or any other type of heater shall be provided with a thermometer reading up to three-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (300 degrees F.), of a size and so located that it can be easily read from the floor. It shall be located in a well so that it will indicate the temperature of the water at or near the outlet and shall be accurate within two percent (2%). Thermometers shall not be required for range boilers or domestic type water heaters.

**M-1015.3.11.3 Water Mixing Valve.** When hot water is used by the general public or by persons not in control of the heating equipment, an approved water mixing valve shall be installed to limit the temperature of the water at the fixture to not over one-hundred forty degrees Fahrenheit (140 degrees F.). A thermometer shall be installed on the discharge side of the mixing valve and be of a size and so located as to be easily read.

**TABLE M-1015**  
**MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE FLOW FOR UNVENTED COMMERCIAL AND**  
**INDUSTRIAL WATER HEATERS**  
**(see M-1015.1.8)**

Net Cubical Contents of Room or Space (in cubic feet)	PERMISSIBLE MAXIMUM GAS FLOW IN CUBIC FEET PER HOUR	
	COLUMN NO. 1 (a)	COLUMN NO. 2 (b)
1000 to 1500	2	3
1500 to 2000	3	4
2000 to 2500	4	5
2500 to 3000	5	6
3000 to 3500	6	7
3500 to 4000	7	8
Over 4000	8	8

NOTE A. COLUMN NO.1 APPLIES TO APPLIANCES WHEN LOCATED IN AREAS, WHICH DO NOT HAVE OPENINGS TO OTHER AREAS.

Note b. Column No. 2 applies to appliances when located in areas, which have permanent openings of at least 15 sq. ft. leading to another area of equal or greater cubical content.

## **SECTION M-1016 WELDING ON BOILERS AND UNFIRED PRESSURE VESSELS**

**M-1016.1 General Rules for Welding.** The construction, installation, repair or alteration of a boiler or unfired pressure vessel by welding shall be made in accordance with Section IX, Part QW, "Welding" in the ASME Code governing the particular kind of vessel or work to be done.

**M-1016.1.1 Welding Procedure.** A contractor desiring to make repairs shall have a written welding procedure specification that shall be prepared and qualified in accordance with the Welding Qualification of Section IX, Article II, "Welding Procedure Qualifications" in the ASME Code, or the contractor may use the standard D.C. welding procedure specification. This procedure shall then be used for qualifying each welders and shall be strictly adhered to in making repairs under this chapter. A welder shall be limited to the type of steel and thickness of plate for which he or she was qualified.

**M-1016.1.2 Qualification Test.** Each welder shall pass satisfactory qualification tests as required by Section IX, Article III, "Welding Performance Qualifications"

in the ASME Code, NBIC and the D.C. Welding Standard. The qualification test for individual welders shall be made in accordance with the ASME Code. The test shall be made in the presence of the boiler inspector or an assistant boiler inspector who shall stamp the specimens with a D.C. identifying number. A welder may be accepted without further examination provided that he submits a satisfactory welding procedure and operator qualification test, made in accordance with the ASME Code and these regulations, for approval prior to any welding. The qualification test does qualify a welder to do welding on pressure piping.

**M-1016.1.3 Test Specimens.** After the specimens have been prepared as required by Section IX, Part QW, paragraph QW-310, "Qualification Test Coupons" in the ASME Code, they shall be tested by the D.C. Boiler Inspector, or they may be submitted to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) for test. The test shall be made in accordance with the guided-bend jig test as described Section IX, Part QW, paragraph QW-160, "Guided-Bend Tests" in the ASME Code. A report shall be made on a form similar to data recording forms in Section IX, Appendix-B, "Non-mandatory Welding and Brazing Forms" in the ASME Code. If the report indicates that the welder has passed the test, a card authorizing him or her to do welding on boilers or unfired pressure vessels in the District of Columbia for a period of two (2) years from the date of the test, shall be issued.

**M-1016.1.4 Fees.** The fee for witnessing the welding and making the tests shall be sixty-five dollars (\$65.00). The fee for the NIST test is additional. All fees are payable in advance.

**M-1016.2 Qualification Retest.** A welder who fails to meet the requirements for one or more of the test specimens may be retested under the following conditions.

1. When an immediate retest is made, the welder shall make two test welds of each type for each position on which he has failed, all of which shall pass the test examination; or
2. If, in the judgment of the inspector, the welder requires further training or practice, a complete retest of the welder shall be made after he has completed his additional training or practice.

**M-1016.3 Inspector's Authority.** Notwithstanding the issuance of a qualification card, the inspector may request a new test under the following circumstances.

1. When a welder has not welded under the procedure specification for a period of three (3) months or more;
2. When there is a specific reason to question his ability to make welds that meet the specification; and
3. At the expiration of his two (2) year qualification period.



**M-1016.3.1 Welding Defects.** If any question should arise as to the quality of a weld, the inspector may call for test specimens to be trepanned from the welds. Preparation of the specimens and examination shall be done by the NIST and the contractor shall stand all expense incidental to this testing.

**M-1016.3.2 Welding Inspection.** No welding on any boiler or unfired pressure vessel shall be done before an inspection has been made by the boiler Inspector, an assistant boiler Inspector, or an insurance company Inspector, and the method of welding sanctioned by that Inspector. If, in the opinion of the Inspector, a hydrostatic test is necessary, that test shall be applied after the repairs have been completed.

**M-1016.4 Repairs of Boilers or Unfired Pressure Vessels.** Before repairs are started, it shall be the duty of the Inspector to satisfy himself or herself, by examination of the written welding procedure and records of qualification tests, that procedures and welders have been properly tested and qualified. Welding repairs or alterations on boilers or unfired pressure vessels and connections by unqualified contractors or welding operators will not be accepted for either new or existing installations.

**M-1016.4.1 Inspector's Report.** A report shall be made of every welded repair by the Inspector who authorized and witnessed the repair.

#### **M-1016.5 Rules for Welding on Boilers and Unfired Pressure Vessels**

**M-1016.5.1 Welding Rule.** The construction, installation, repair or alteration of a boiler or unfired pressure vessel by welding shall be made in accordance with the section of the ASME Code governing the particular kind of vessel or work to be done or by the specific requirements in this section for welded repairs.

**M-1016.5.2 Qualified Welding Procedure.** A contractor desiring to make repairs shall have a written welding procedure specification that shall be prepared and qualified in accordance with the Welding Qualification in Section IX of the ASME code, or the contractor may use the standard D.C. welding procedure specification. This procedure shall then be used for qualifying each welders and shall be strictly adhered to in making repairs under this chapter. A welder shall be limited to the type of steel and thickness of plate for which he or she was qualified.

**M-1016.5.3 Welder Qualifications.** Each welder shall pass satisfactory qualification tests as required by the ASME Code.

**M-1016.5.4 Qualification Standard.** The qualification test for individual welders shall be made in accordance with the ASME Code. The test shall be made in the presence of the boiler inspector or an assistant boiler inspector who shall stamp the specimens with a D.C. identifying number. A welder may be accepted without further examination provided that he submits a satisfactory welding procedure and operator qualification test, made in accordance with the ASME Code and these regulations for approval prior to any welding.

**M-1016.5.5 Specimen Test.** After the specimens have been prepared as required by the ASME Code, they shall be tested by the D.C. Boiler Inspector or they may be submitted to the NIST for test. The test shall be made in accordance with the guided-bend jig test as described in the ASME Code. A report shall be made on a form similar to the data recording forms in Section IX, Appendix-B in the ASME Code.

**M-1016.5.6 Welding Fees.** The fee for witnessing the welding and making the tests shall be twenty-five dollars (\$25). The fee for the NIST test is additional. All fees are payable in advance.

**M-1016.5.7 Authorization Card.** If the report indicates that the welder has passed the test, a card authorizing him or her to do welding on boilers or unfired pressure vessels in the District of Columbia for a period of two (2) years from the date of the test, shall be issued.

**M-1016.5.8 Welder Qualification Limit.** The qualification test does not qualify a welder to do welding on pressure piping.

**M-1016.5.9 Welder Re-Test.** A welder who fails to meet the requirements for one or more of the test specimens may be retested under the following conditions.

1. When an immediate retest is made, the welder shall make two test welds of each type for each position on which he has failed, all of which shall pass the test examination; or
2. If, in the judgment of the inspector, the welder requires further training or practice, a complete retest of the welder shall be made after he has completed this additional training or practice.

**M-1016.5.10 Welder Re-Test Performance.** Notwithstanding the issuance of a qualification card, the inspector may request a new test under the following circumstances.

1. When a welder has not welded under the procedure specification for a period of three (3) months or more;
2. When there is a specific reason to question his ability to make welds that meet the specification; and
3. At the expiration of the two (2) year qualification period.

**M-1016.5.11 Trepanned Specimen.** If any question should arise as to the quality of a weld, the inspector may call for test specimens to be trepanned from the welds. Preparation of the specimens and examination shall be done by the NIST and the contractor shall stand all expense incidental to this testing.

**M-1016.5.12 Inspection Requirements.** No welding on any boiler or unfired pressure vessel shall be done before an inspection has been made by the boiler inspector, an assistant boiler inspector, or an insurance company inspector, and the method of welding sanctioned by that inspector. If, in the opinion of the inspector, a hydrostatic test is necessary, that test shall be applied after the repairs have been completed.

**M-1016.5.13 Inspector Examination.** Before repairs are started, it shall be the duty of the inspector to satisfy himself or herself, by examination of the written welding procedures and records of qualification tests, that procedures and welders have been properly tested and qualified.

**M-1016.5.14 Weld Rejection.** Welding repairs or alterations on boilers or unfired pressure vessels and connections by unqualified contractors or welding operators will not be accepted for either new or existing installations.

**M-1016.5.15 Inspector's Report.** A report shall be made on every welded repair by the inspector who authorized and witnessed the repair.

## **M-1016.6 Method of Conducting Tests**

**M-1016.6.1 Welder Qualification Tests.** The qualification tests described shall be specially devised tests to determine a welder's ability to produce sound welds. In order to determine the welder's ability to make groove welds in various positions in plate, the following three positions for tests are required.

1. Test Position I – Plates placed in a vertical position with the welding groove in a horizontal plane. This test shall qualify the welder to make flat and horizontal welds.
2. Test Position II – Plates placed in a vertical position with the axis of the weld vertical. The test shall qualify the welder to make flat and vertical welds.
3. Test Position III – Plates placed in a horizontal position with the weld metal deposited from the underside of the plate. This test shall qualify the welder to make flat welds in the overhead position.

**M-1016.6.2 Weld Plate Specifications.** The base material of the plates to be welded shall be of flange or firebox steel quality three-eighths inch (3/8") thick and having a tensile strength of not less than fifty-five thousand (55,000) pounds per square inch. The plates shall be five inches (5") long by six inches (6") wide, and shall be prepared for a single "V" groove butt joint.

**M-1016.6.3 Preparing Test Specimens.** The method of preparing test specimens shall be as follows:

1. When the welding has been completed, specimens shall be removed as directed by machine or flame cutting. They shall be approximately one and one-half inches (1.5") wide.
2. The weld reinforcement shall be removed by machine or grinding, flush with the surface or the base metal.
3. The corners of the edges of all test specimens shall be rounded to a radius of not more than one-fifteenth inch (1/15").

In addition to (1), (2) and (3) above, the test specimens shall be prepared as specified in Section IX, paragraph QW-462, "Test Specimens" in the ASME Code.

**M-1016.6.4 Specimen Testing Methods.** The method of testing specimens shall be as follows:

Specimens shall be bent in a bending jig called the "guided bend test", until the curvature of the specimen is such that a one-thirty-second inch (1/32") wire cannot be passed between the curve portion of the plunger and the specimen. Face bend specimens shall be placed with the face of the weld toward the gap in the jig; root bend specimens shall be placed with the root of the weld toward the gap.

After removal from the jig, the convex surface of the specimens shall be examined for the appearance of cracks or other open defects. Any specimen in which a crack or other open defect is present after the bending exceeding one-eighth inch (1/8") measured in any direction, shall be cause for failure to pass the test.

#### **M-1016.7 Repairs by Welding**

**M-1016.7.1 Repairs Limited to Steels.** The repairs that may be made under these rules are limited to steels having known weldable quality and are further limited to carbon steels having a carbon content of not more than thirty-five hundredths percent (0.35%) and low alloy steels having a carbon content of not more than twenty-five hundredths (0.25%) percent. A welder shall not make repairs in a plate thickness in excess of that permitted under the qualification tests in the ASME Code, or on a material, or in a thickness of plate that is not permitted within the welder's qualification tests.

**M-1016.7.2 Groove Welding.** Groove welds shall completely penetrate the material being welded. If possible, welding shall be applied from both sides of the plate, or a backing strip or ring may be used to insure complete penetration. Welds shall have a convex surface on both sides if applied on both sides of the plates being joined; or on one side if welding is applied from one side only. No valleys or undercutting at edges or welded joints shall be permitted. The reinforcement may be chipped, ground or machined off flush with the base metal, if so desired, after the welding has been completed.

**M-1016.7.3 Defective Weld Repair.** In making a repair to a weld that has failed in service, the defective weld material shall be removed by chipping or grinding until sound metal is reached on all sides. The resulting groove shall be filled as required by the applicable welding procedure.

**M-1016.7.4 Carbon Steel Stress-Relieving.** In the repair of carbon or low alloy steels, when required by these rules and when considered necessary by the authorized inspector, thermal stress-relieving shall be applied to the completed work. The heat may be applied by any means that will raise the temperature of the material gradually and uniformly to approximate twelve-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (1200 deg. F.). In the absence of more accurate means of determining temperature, a dull “red glow” in daylight will suffice. This temperature shall be maintained for a period of one hour per inch of thickness of material.

**M-1016.7.4.1 Circumferential Joints.** For circumferential joints, the area heated shall comprise a band extending completely around the cylinder and having a width on each side of the center line of the weld not less than three times the greatest width of the finished weld.

**M-1016.7.4.2 Nozzles.** For nozzles, the heated area shall comprise a circumferential band extending around the entire vessel, including the nozzle of welded attachment, and shall extend at least six times the plate thickness beyond the welding which connects the nozzle or other attachment to the vessel.

**M-1016.7.5 Stress-Relieve Cooldown Procedure.** Upon completion of the stress-relieving operation, the plate shall be allowed to cool at a rate not greater than five-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (500 deg. F.) per hour divided by the maximum thickness of the welded part in inches, but in no case more than five-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (500 deg. F.) is reached, after which normal cooling by exposure in a still atmosphere may be permitted.

**M-1016.7.6 Thermal Stress-Relief Alternatives.** It should be noted that under certain conditions, thermal stress relieving as outlined above may be inadvisable. In such cases any other method of stress-relieving acceptable to the authorized inspector may be used. Under certain conditions preheating may be necessary.

## **M-1016.8 Welded Repairs on Boilers and Unfired Pressure Vessels**

**M-1016.8.1 Crack Repair in Stayed Areas.** Cracks in stayed areas may be repaired by welding, provided that no multiple or star cracks radiating from rivet or stay bolt holes shall be welded.

**M-1016.8.2 Crack Repair in Unstayed Shells.** Cracks in unstayed shells, drums or headers of boilers or pressure vessels may be repaired by welding, provided that the cracks do not extend between rivet holes in a longitude seam or parallel to a longitudinal riveted seam within eight inches (8”), measured from the nearest caulking edge. The

total length of any one such crack shall not exceed eight inches (8"). A crack of greater length may be welded provided the complete repair is radiographed and stress-relieved. Any crack that may be welded shall be properly prepared to permit fusion through the entire plate.

**M-1016.8.3 Crack Repair in Unstayed Furnaces.** Cracks of any length in unstayed furnaces may be welded, provided that the welds are thermally stress relieved. Welds shall be applied from both sides of the plate wherever possible. Welds applied from one side only may be used if expressly permitted by the inspector. Repair of cracks at the knuckle or turn of flange of furnace openings shall be prohibited except upon special approval by the Inspector.

**M-1016.8.4 Corrosion Repair in Stayed Furnaces.** Corroded areas in stayed furnaces may be built up by welding, provided that the remaining plate has an average thickness of not less than fifty percent (50%) of the original thickness, and further provided that the areas so affected are not sufficiently extensive to impair the safety of the object. In those cases the stays and stay bolts shall come completely through the reinforcing metal and the original ends of the stay bolts shall be plainly visible to the Inspector.

**M-1016.8.5 Corrosion Repair Around Manholes.** Corroded areas around manholes or handhole openings, in either stayed or unstayed plates, may be built up by welding, provided that the average loss of thickness does not exceed fifty percent (50%) of the original plate thickness and the area to be repaired does not extend more than three inches (3") from the edge of the hole.

**M-1016.8.6 Corrosion Repair in Unstayed Shells.** Corroded areas in unstayed shells, drums or of the object has not been impaired.

**M-1016.8.7 Repairing Connector Areas.** Edges of butt straps, of plate laps and nozzles, or of connections, attached by riveting may be restored to their original thickness by welding. No seal welding shall be used except upon special approval of the Inspector, and in no case where cracks are present in riveted areas.

**M-1016.8.8 Welding Tube Ends.** The ends of tubes in fire-tube and water-tube boilers may be welded, provided that they have not been reduced more than ten percent (10%) percent in thickness and comply with the requirements of paragraphs PWT-11 and PFT-12 in Section I, Parts PWT and PFT in the ASME Power Boiler Code.

**M-1016.8.9 Re-ending Tubes, Pipes.** Re-ending of piecing tubes or pipes in either fire-tube or water-tube boilers shall be permitted, provided that the thickness of the tube or pipe has not been reduced by more than ten percent (10%) from the thickness required by the ASME Code for the pressure approved. In all cases they shall comply with the requirements in Section I, Part PWT, paragraph PWT-10, "Tube Wall Thickness" in the ASME Power Boiler Code.

**M-1016.8.10 Patch Material.** The material used for patches shall be of the same general quality and have at least the minimum physical properties of the plate to be patched. The thickness of any patch shall be at least equal to, but not more than one-third inch (1/3") greater than the plate being patched.

**M-1016.8.11 Patches Permitted.** Flush or butt-welded patches or new sections may be applied to stayed plates without limitation of size or plate thickness. Lapped or fillet-welded patches may be applied to stayed plates, provided that they are not exposed to radiant heat. Lapped and fillet-welded patches may be applied on the pressure side of the sheet in unstayed areas, provided that the maximum diameter of the opening so repaired does not exceed sixteen (16) times the thickness of the plate, but in no case larger than eight inches (8") in diameter.

**M-1016.8.12 Patches Not Permitted.** No flush or butt-welded patches in unstayed shells, drums or headers shall be permitted.

**M-1016.8.13 Threaded to Weld-in Stays.** Threaded stays may be replaced by welded-in stays, provided that in the judgment of the Inspector, the plate adjacent to the stay bolt has not been materially weakened by deterioration or wastage. All requirements of the applicable sections of the ASME Code governing welded-in stays, including Section I, Part PW, paragraph PW-19, "Welded-in Stays" shall be complied with.

## **SECTION M-1017 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS. POWER BOILERS**

**M-1017.1 Maximum Allowable Working Pressure.** The maximum allowable working pressure on the shell or drum of a power boiler shall be determined by the strength of the weakest section of the structure, computed from the following information.

1. The thickness of the plate;
2. The tensile strength of the plate;
3. The efficiency of the longitudinal joint, or tube ligaments (whichever is least);
4. The inside diameter of the course; and
5. The factor of safety allowed by this chapter.

**M-1017.1.1 Computation.** The maximum allowable working pressure computation shall be as follows:

$\frac{TS}{x t} \times \frac{E}{R} \times FS$	=	Maximum allowable working pressure in pounds per square inch
---	---	--

TS	=	ultimate tensile strength of shell plates, pound per square inch
t	=	minimum thickness of shell plate in weakest course in inches
E	=	efficiency of longitudinal joint. (See Section VIII, Division 1, Part UW, paragraph UW-12 in ASME Code)
R	=	inside radius of the weakest course of the shell or drum in inches.
FS	=	factor of safety allowed by these rules.

**M-1017.2 Factors of Safety.** The factor of safety for boilers of nonstandard construction, the longitudinal joints of which are of butt and double strap construction, shall be not less than the following:

1. Four and one-half (4.5) for boilers not over 20 years old;
2. Five (5) for boilers over 20, but not more than 25 years old;
3. Five and one-half (5.5) for boilers over 25, but not more than 30 years old;

At the beginning of each five (5) year period thereafter, the factor of safety shall be increased by not less than five-tenths (0.5).

**M-1017.2.1 Maximum Allowable Working Pressure Limit.** In no case shall the maximum allowable working pressure on old boilers be increased unless they are being operated at a lesser pressure than would be allowable for new boilers, in which case the changed pressure shall not exceed that allowable for new boilers of the same construction.

**M-1017.2.2 Conditional Factor of Safety Limits.** The factor of safety for all standard boilers, the longitudinal joints of which are of butt and double strap construction shall be five (5) for boilers not more than twenty-five (25) years old, and at the beginning of each five (5) year period thereafter, the factor of safety shall be increased by not less than five-tenths (0.5), provided that after a thorough internal and external inspection and a hydrostatic pressure test to one and one-half times the pressure allowed during which no distress or leakage develops, the pressure allowed may be continued at a factor of safety of five (5).

**M-1017.2.3 Lowest Factor of Safety.** The lowest factor of safety for boilers of the water-tube type of nonstandard construction, the longitudinal joints of which are of lap riveted construction shall be not less than the following:

1. Five (5) for boilers not over 20 years old.
2. Five and one-half (5.5) for boilers over 20, but not over 25 years old.
3. Six (6) for boilers over 25, but not over 30 years old.



4. At the beginning of each five (5) year period thereafter, the factor of safety for boilers of the water-tube type of nonstandard construction, the longitudinal joints of which are of lap riveted construction, shall be increased by not less than five-tenths (0.5).

**M-1017.2.3.1 Lowest Factor of Safety.** The lowest factor of safety for all fire tube, flue and cylinder boilers of nonstandard construction, the shells of which are exposed to the products of combustion and which have continuous longitudinal joints of lap-riveted construction exceeding twelve feet (12ft) in length, shall be not less than the following:

1. Six (6) for boilers not over 10 years old.
2. Six and one-half (6.5) for boilers over 10, but not over 15 years old.
3. Seven (7) for boilers over 15, but not over 20 years old.
4. At the beginning of each five (5) year period thereafter, the factor of safety for boilers as specified in 1, 2 and 3 above, shall be increased by not less than five-tenths (0.5). This type of boiler when removed from an existing setting shall not be reinstalled for a pressure in excess of fifteen (15) pounds.

**M-1017.3 Cast-Iron Headers and Mud Drum.** The maximum allowable working pressure on water-tube boilers, the tubes of which are secured to cast-iron or malleable-iron headers, or which have cast-iron mud drums, shall not exceed one-hundred sixty (160) pounds per square inch.

**M-1017.4 Tensile Strength.** When the tensile strength of steel or wrought iron shell plates is not known, it shall be taken as fifty-five thousand (55,000) pounds per square inch for steel and forty-five thousand (45,000) pounds per square inch for wrought iron.

**M-1017.5 Crushing Strength of Mild Steel.** The resistance to crushing of mild steel shall be taken at ninety-five thousand (95,000) pounds per square inch of cross-sectional area.

**M-1017.6 Rivets.** In computing the ultimate strength of rivets in shear the cross-sectional area of the rivet shank shall be used for the values in pounds per square inch based upon the requirements in Section I of the ASME Code.

**M-1017.6.1 Size of Rivets.** When the diameter of the rivet holes in the longitudinal joints on a boiler is not known, the diameter and cross-sectional area of rivets, after driving, may be selected from Table M-1017.0 or ascertained by cutting out one rivet in the body of the joint.

**M-1017.7 Inspection of Inaccessible Parts.** The heads of water tube boiler mud drums or headers which are not accessible for inspection shall have the brick work removed after the

boiler has been in service for ten (10) years and at not less than every five (5) years period thereafter. All seams and parts of fire-tube boilers that are not accessible for inspection shall be exposed whenever, in the discretion of the inspector, the general condition of the boiler appears to be such that further examination is desirable.

**M-1017.8 Safety Valves.** Each boiler shall be equipped with one or more safety valves of the spring-pop type with a lifting device, placed as close to the boiler as possible. No valve of any description shall be placed between the safety valve and the boiler nor on the escape pipe between the safety valve and the atmosphere. When an elbow is placed on a safety valve escape pipe, it shall be located close to the safety valve outlet or the escape pipe shall be securely anchored and supported. When an escape pipe is used, it shall be full sized and fitted with an open drain to prevent water lodging in the upper part of the safety valve or escape pipe. Safety valves having either the seat or disk of cast iron shall not be used. Dead weight and lever weight safety valves shall be prohibited.

**M-1017.8.1 Safety Valves Capacity.** The safety-valve capacity of each boiler shall be such that the safety valve or valves will discharge all the steam that can be generated by the boiler without allowing the pressure to rise more than six percent (6%) above the maximum allowable working pressure, or more than six percent (6%) percent above the highest pressure to which any valve is set.

**M-1017.8.2 Safety Valves Setting.** One or more safety valves on every boiler shall be set at or below the maximum allowable working pressure. The remaining valves may be set within a range of three percent (3%) above the maximum allowable working pressure, but the range of setting of all the safety valves on a boiler shall not exceed ten percent (10%) of the highest pressures to which any valve is set.

**M-1017.9 Parts and Equipment for existing installations – Power Boilers.**

**M-1017.9.1 Fire-Actuated Fusible Plugs.** Fire-actuated fusible plugs when used shall conform to the rules and regulations of the ASME Code for new construction.

**M-1017.9.2 Water Glass.** Each steam boiler shall have at least one water glass, the lowest visible part of which shall be as called for under the ASME Code for new construction.

**M-1017.9.3 Gage Cock.** Each boiler shall have three or more gage cocks located within the range of the visible length of the water glass when the maximum allowable working pressure exceeds fifteen (15) pounds per square inch except when such boiler has two water glasses with independent connections to the boiler, located on the same horizontal line and not less than two feet (2') apart.

**M-1017.9.4 Outlet Connections.** No outlet connections except for damper regulator, feed water regulator, low water fuel cut-out, drains or steam gage shall be placed on the

pipes connecting a water column to a boiler. Each water column shall have a valved drain run to within six inches (6") of the floor.

**M-1017.9.5 Steam Gage.** Each steam boiler shall have a steam gage connected to the steam space or to the steam connection to the water column. The steam gage shall be connected to a siphon or equivalent device of sufficient capacity to keep the gage tube filled with water and so arranged that the gage cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock placed near the gage and provided with a "T" or level handle arranged to be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open.

**M-1017.9.6 Low-Water Cut-Off.** Each steam boiler when mechanically fired shall be equipped with a low-water cut-off so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply when the water level falls to a point not lower than the top of the bottom nut of the water glass. Each cut-off shall have a drain run to within six inches (6") of the floor. When two or more mechanically fired boilers are connected to the same system, each boiler shall have independent low-water cut-offs, controls, and gages.

**M-1017.9.7 Stop Valve.** Each steam outlet from a high-pressure boiler (except safety-valve connections) shall be fitted with a stop valve located as close as practicable to the boiler.

**M-1017.9.8 Blow Drains.** When a stop valve is so located that water can accumulate, free blow drains shall be provided, the discharge of which shall be visible to the operator while manipulating the valve.

**M-1017.10 Blow-Off Connection.** Each boiler shall have a full-size blow-off fitted with a valve or cock in direct connection with the lowest water space practicable. When cocks are used they shall be of the gland or guard type and suitable for the pressure allowed. Globe valves are not permitted.

**M-1017.10.1 Maximum Pressure.** When the maximum allowable working pressure exceeds one-hundred (100) pounds per square inch, the blow-off shall be extra heavy from boiler to valve or valves, and shall run full size without reducers or bushings. Blow-off piping shall be of black wrought iron or black steel (not galvanized) and shall be extra heavy pipe.

**M-1017.10.2 Fittings.** All fittings, between the boiler and valve shall be steel or extra heavy fittings of bronze, brass, or malleable iron. In case of renewal of pipe or fittings in the blow-off lines, as specified in this paragraph, they shall be installed in accordance with the ASME Code for new installations.

**M-1017.10.3 Blow-off Pipe.** When the maximum allowable working pressure exceeds one-hundred (100) pounds per square inch, each bottom blow-off pipe shall be fitted with two valves or a valve and cock such valves and cocks to be of the extra heavy type. A bottom blow-off pipe when exposed to direct furnace heat shall be protected by fire-brick or other heat-resisting material, so arranged that the pipe may be inspected. An opening

in the boiler setting for a blow-off pipe shall be arranged to provide for free expansion and contraction.

**M-1017.11 Feed-Water Connections.** The feed pipe of a steam boiler shall be provided with a check valve near the boiler and a valve or cock between the check valve and the boiler, and when two or more boilers are fed from a common source, there shall also be a globe valve on the branch to each boiler between the check valve and the source of supply. When a globe valve is used on a feed pipe, the inlet shall be under the disk from the valve. In all cases where the safety valve is set above twenty-five (25) pounds, there shall be an additional means of feeding water against the maximum approved pressure.

**M-1017.12 Test Pressure.** When a hydrostatic test is applied, test pressure shall be not more than one and one-half times the maximum allowable working pressure. During a hydrostatic test of a boiler, suitable provisions shall be made so that it will not be necessary to screw down the compression screw upon the spring of the safety valve.

**M-1017.13 Repair and Replacements.** Where repairs or replacements are made or fittings or appliances renewed or attached to a boiler, they must comply with the ASME Code for new installations.

**M-1017.14 Conditions not Covered by These Rules.** If any condition not definitely covered by this chapter, the ASME Code for new installations shall apply.

**TABLE M-1017  
SIZES OF RIVETS BASED ON PLATE THICKNESS  
(see M-1017.6.1)**

	INCH	Inch	Inch	Inch	Inch	Inch
Thickness of plate	1/4	9/32	5/16	11/32	3/8	13/32
Diameter of rivet after driving	11/16	11/16	3/4	3/4	13/16	13/16
Thickness of plate	7/16	15/32	2	9/16	5/8	-
Diameter of rivet after driving	15/16	15/16	15/16	11/16	11/16	-

## **SECTION M-1018 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS - HEATING BOILERS**

**Maximum Allowable Working Pressure.** Maximum allowable working pressure of heating boilers shall be as follows.

1. Riveted Heating Boilers. The maximum allowable working pressures on the shell or drum of riveted heating boiler shall be determined in accordance with Section M-1017.0,

except that in no case shall the maximum allowable working pressure of a steam-heating boiler exceed fifteen (15) pounds per square inch.

2. **Cast Iron Heating Boilers.** The maximum allowable working pressure of a boiler composed principally of cast iron shall not exceed fifteen pounds (15 psi) unless such boiler complies with all other requirements of the rules and regulations for power boilers. The maximum allowable working pressure of a boiler having cast-iron shell or heads and steel or wrought-iron tubes shall not exceed fifteen (15 psi).

**M-1018.1.2 Low Pressure Boiler.** A radiator in which steam pressure is generated at a pressure of fifteen (15 psi) or less shall be considered a low pressure boiler.

**M-1018.1.3 Manufacturers Specification and Identification.** The maximum allowable working pressure shall in no case exceed the pressure indicated by the manufacturer's identification stenciled or cast upon the boiler or upon a plate secured to it. In the absence of a manufacturer's identification stencil or plate the maximum allowable working pressure shall not exceed that guaranteed in the manufacturer's specification or catalogs.

**M-1018.1.4 Safe Operating Pressure.** If in the judgment of an inspector, a steam-heating boiler is not safe for operation at the pressure previously approved, the pressure shall be reduced to the safe amount or proper repair shall be made or the boiler retired from service.

**M-1018.2 Safety Valves.** Each steam-heating boiler shall be provided with one or more safety valves with a total area of not less than one square inch (1 sq. in.) for each five square feet (5 sq. ft) of grate area or equivalent, if grates are not used. The steam-relieving capacity of the safety valve or valves on any boiler shall be sufficient to prevent the boiler pressure from rising more than five (5 psi) above the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

**M-1018.2.1 Capacity.** If there is any doubt as to the capacity of the safety valve, an accumulation test shall be run. No safety valve shall be smaller than three-quarter inch (3/4") in diameter or larger than four and one-half inches (4.5") in diameter.

**M-1018.2.2 Stop Valve.** No stop valve of any description shall be located between a boiler and its safety valve, nor in the safety valve discharge pipe.

**M-1018.3 Parts and Equipment.** Each steam boiler shall be equipped with the following parts and equipment in accordance with each specified conditions.

**M-1018.3.1 Steam Gage Pressure.** Each steam boiler shall have a steam pressure gage connected to the steam space of the boiler itself or on steam pipe near the boiler. The graduations of the steam gage shall not be less than fifteen (15 psi) nor more than thirty (30 psi).

**M-1018.3.2 Water Gage Glass.** Each boiler shall have at least one water gage glass with the lowest visible part above the heating surfaces in the primary combustion

chamber. When, in the judgment of an Inspector, the heating surfaces above the low-water line may be injured by contact with gases of high temperature, the water gages shall be raised until the lowest visible part of the glass gage is above the testing surface.

**M-1018.3.3 Gage Cocks.** Each steam boiler shall have two or more gage cocks located within the visible length of the water gage glass except when such boiler is provided with two water gage glasses.

**M-1018.3.4 Steam Stop Valve.** If a boiler may be closed off from the heating system by closing a steam stop valve, there shall be a check valve in the condensate return line between the boiler and the system. If any part of a heating system may be closed off from the remainder of the system by closing a steam stop valve, there shall be a check valve in the condensate return pipe from that part of the system.

**M-1018.3.5 Feed-Water Connections.** Feed-water connections shall be independent of any water gage connections and it is recommended that the connections be made to the condensate return pipe of reservoir of the condensate return pump. There shall be a check valve in the feed-water line close to the boiler.

**M-1018.3.6 Low-Water Cut-Off Mechanical Fired Boilers.** Each mechanically fired boiler shall be equipped with a low-water cut-off so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply in case the water level falls to a point not lower than the tip of the bottom nut of the water glass. Each cut-off shall have a drain run to within six inches (6") of the floor. When two or more mechanically fired boilers are connected to the same system, each boiler shall have independent low-water cut-offs, controls, and gages.

**M-1018.3.7 Low-Water Cut-Off Electrically Operated Boilers.** If a low-water fuel cut-out device is electrically operated, it shall be so connected that it will assume the "cut-out" position when the electric current is off.

**M-1018.3.8 Condensate Return Pump.** Each condensate return pump shall be provided with an automatic water level control set to maintain the water level within the limits of two gage cocks.

**M-1018.4 Repairs or Replacements.** When repairs or replacement of parts or piping are made or fittings or appliances renewed or attached to a boiler, the rules applying to new installations shall be followed as nearly as practicable.

**M-1018.4.1 Safety Valve.** When a safety valve is replaced the requirements of Section M-1014.0 and Section M-1015.0 shall be complied with, no valve being less than three-quarter inch (3/4") in diameter or larger than four and one-half inches (4.5") in diameter.

## **SECTION M-1019 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS - MINIATURE BOILERS**

**M-1019.1 Maximum Allowable Working Pressure.** The maximum allowable working pressure on the shell of a boiler or drum shall be determined by the formula.

$\frac{TS}{x \frac{t}{E}}$ $\frac{R}{x FS}$	=	Maximum allowable working pressure in pounds per square inch
---	---	--

Where:

TS	=	ultimate tensile strength of shell plates, pound per square inch
t	=	minimum thickness of shell plate in weakest course in inches
E	=	efficiency of longitudinal joint. (See Section VIII, Division 1, Part UW, paragraph UW-12 in ASME Code)
E	=	efficiency for tube ligaments between openings as calculated in Section I, Part PG, paragraphs PG-52 and PG-53 in the ASME Code.
R	=	inside radius of the weakest course of the shell or drum in inches.
FS	=	factor of safety allowed by these rules.

N.B. To be used as given for longitudinal joints, riveted construction, or if for fusion welded joints, E shall be taken as specified in Section VIII, Division 1, Part UW, paragraph UW-12, "Joint Efficiencies" in the ASME Code. In any case where there are both riveted joints and tube ligaments to consider, the weaker of these shall be used for E.

**M-1019.2 Parts and Equipment.** Each miniature boiler shall be equipped with the following parts and equipment in accordance with each specified conditions.

**M-1019.2.1 Feed Pump.** Each miniature boiler operating at a pressure in excess of twenty-five (25) pounds per square inch shall be provided with at least one feed pump or other approved feeding device except where the steam generator is operated with no extraction of steam (closed system). In the latter case, in lieu of a feeding device, a suitable connection or opening, not less than one-half inch (½") pipe size, shall be provided to fill the generator when cold.

**M-1019.2.2 Feed Water and Blow-Off Connections.** Each miniature boiler shall be fitted with feed water and blow-off connections which shall not be less than one-half inch (½") iron pipe size unless operated on a closed system. The feed pipe shall be provided with a check valve and stop valve, The blow-off shall be fitted with a valve or cock in direct connection with the lowest water space practicable. When the boiler is under pressure, feed water shall not be introduced through the openings or connections used for the column, the water gage glass or gage cocks. All valves, pipe fittings, and appliances shall be at least one-hundred twenty-five (125 psi) standard pressure.

**M-1019.2.3 Water Gage Glass and Gage Cocks.** Each miniature boiler shall be equipped with a water gage glass and one or more gage cocks. The lowest permissible

water level shall be at a point one-third of the height of the shell except where the boiler is equipped with internal furnace, when it shall be not less than one-third of the length of the tube above the top of the furnace. In the case of small generating units operated on the closed system, where there is insufficient space for the usual water gage, water-level indicators of the glass bull's eye type may be used.

**M-1019.2.4 Steam Gage.** Each miniature boiler shall be equipped with a steam gage having its dial graduated to not less than one and one-half times the maximum allowable working pressure. The gage shall be connected to the steam space or to the steam connection to the water column by a brass or bronze composition siphon tube or equivalent device that will keep the gage tube filled with water.

**M-1019.2.5 Safety Valve.** Each boiler shall be equipped with a sealed, spring loaded "pop" safety valve not less than one-half inch ( $\frac{1}{2}$ " ) diameter connected directly to the boiler. To insure the safety valve being free each valve shall have a substantially lifting device by which the valve disk may be lifted from its seat when there is at least seventy-five percent (75%) of full working pressure in the boiler. All safety valves shall be mounted with their spindles vertical and freely accessible.

1. Safety Valve Identification. The safety valve shall be plainly marked by the manufacturer with the following information.
  - (a) Manufacturer name or identifying trademark;
  - (b) The nominal diameter;
  - (c) The steam pressure at which it is set to blow; and
  - (d) The capacity in pounds and ASME Standard.
2. Minimum Relieving Capacity. The minimum relieving capacity for the safety valve shall be determined on the basis of three (3) pounds of steam per hour per square foot of heating surface and shall be sufficient to discharge all the steam that can be generated by the boiler without allowing the pressures to rise more than six percent (6%) above the maximum allowable working pressure.

**M-1019.2.6 Standard Stop Valve.** Each steam line from a boiler shall be provided with a one-hundred twenty-five (125 psi) standard stop valve located as close to the boiler shell or drum as is practicable.

**M-1019.2.7 Blow-Off Connections.** Each boiler shall be provided with a blow-off connection which shall not be reduced in size and shall be led to a safe point of discharge. Whenever, in the judgment of the boiler inspector, such a place cannot be provided, a blow-down tank shall be provided on all such tanks. The blow-off shall be fitted with a valve or cock in direct connection with the lowest water space practicable.

**M-1019.2.8 Automatic Low-Water Fuel Cut-Off.** Each boiler mechanically fired other than by gas shall be provided with an automatic low-water fuel cut-off so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply in case the water level falls to a point not lower than the bottom of the water glass.



**M-1019.2.9 Exception.** Where boilers are gas-fired, the burners used shall conform to the requirements of the American Gas Association. The burner shall in those cases be equipped with a fuel-regulating governor which shall be automatic and regulated by the steam pressure. The governor shall be so constructed that in the event of its failure, there can be no possibility of steam from, the boiler entering the gas chamber or supply pipe. A manual stop cock or throttle valve shall in all cases be located in the inlet pipe ahead of the fuel-regulating governor. Each gas-fired boiler shall be equipped with a four inch (4") vent or flue extended to an approved location outside of the building or connected to a chimney, all to be in accordance with the D.C. Building Code. Where the horizontal run is more than ten feet (10'), the vent shall be increased to six inches (6").

**M-1019.2.10 Replacement.** All boiler replacements shall conform to the rules and regulations governing new installations.

**M-1019.2.11 Retubed Boilers.** Each retubed boiler must be inspected and passed by the boiler inspector before the boiler is again put in service. The annual inspection fee will be charged for this inspection.

**M-1019.2.12 Used Boilers.** Each used boiler brought into the District of Columbia shall be inspected by the boiler inspector before being installed.

**M-1019.2.13 Installation Permit.** Moving a boiler and reinstating it in the same or another building shall require an installation permit.

## SECTION M-1020 EXISTING INSTALLATIONS - UNFIRED PRESSURE VESSELS

**M-1020.1 Maximum Allowable Internal Working Pressures.** For internal pressure, the maximum allowable working pressure for the shell of a pressure vessel shall be determined by the strength of the weakest course computed for the thickness of the plate, the tensile strength of the plate, the efficiency of the longitudinal joint, the inside diameter of the course (see R below) and the factor of safety allowed by the rules.

$\frac{TS}{x} \times \frac{t}{E} \times R \times FS$	=	Maximum allowable working pressure in pounds per square inch
--	---	--

Where:

TS	=	ultimate tensile strength of shell plates, pound per square inch
t	=	minimum thickness of shell plate in weakest course in inches
E	=	efficiency of longitudinal joint depending upon construction. Use values as follows:

		For riveted joints	=	calculated riveted efficiency.
		For fusion welded joint	=	Single "V" weld, fifty (50) percent.
				Double "V" weld, seventy (70) percent.
				Forge weld, eighty (80) percent.
				Brazed, eighty (80) percent.
				Brazed copper, ninety (90) percent.
E	=	efficiency for tube ligaments between openings as calculated in Section I, Part PG, paragraphs PG-52 and PG-53 in the ASME Code.		
R	=	Inside radius of the weakest course of the shell, inches, provided the thickness of the shell does not exceed ten (10) percent of the radius. If the thickness is over ten (10) percent of radius, the outer radius shall be used.		
FS	=	factor of safety allowed by these rules.		

**M-1020.2 Maximum Allowable External Working Pressure.** The maximum allowable working pressure for cylindrical vessels subjected to external or collapsing pressure shall be determined by methods in Section 1, Part PG, paragraph PG-28 in the ASME Code, except that the factor of safety used to calculate the working pressure shall be in accordance with the requirements of Article 1020.3.

**M-1020.3 Existing Pressure Vessels.** The maximum permissible working pressure on pressure vessels of other than lap-seam construction shall have a factor of safety of not less than four and one-half (4.5).

**M-1020.3.1 Exception.** The maximum permissible working pressure on pressure vessels (PVs) with longitudinal lap joints shall be calculated in accordance with the age of the vessel and the following factors of safety.

1. Not less than four (4) for PVs up to and including ten (10) years of age.
2. Not less than four and one-half (4.5) for PVs from ten (10) years of age to twenty (20) years of age.
3. Not less than five (5) for PVs from twenty (20) years of age to twenty-five (25) years of age.
4. Not less than five and one-half (5.5) for PVs from twenty-five (25) years of age to thirty (30) years of age.

**M-1020.4 Maximum Allowable Working Pressure Limit.** In no case shall the maximum allowable working pressure be increased unless such vessels are being operated at a lesser

pressure than would be allowable for new vessels, in which case the changed pressure shall not exceed that allowable for new vessels of the same construction.

**M-1020.4.1 Stress Limits.** In checking the conformity of existing vessels with the limiting stresses for use in the design of pressure vessels, it is necessary to take account of the effect of static head that may be produced in any part in order that such stress limits be not exceeded.

**M-1020.4.2 Age Limit.** The age limit of a pressure vessel having a longitudinal lap joint and carrying over fifty (50) pounds pressure per square inch, shall be thirty (30) years.

**M-1020.5 Inspection of Inaccessible Parts.** Where, in the opinion of the inspector, as the result of the conditions disclosed at the regulator inspection, it is deemed advisable to remove interior or exterior lining, covering or brick work to expose certain parts of the vessel not visible at time of regular inspection, the inspector shall require the removal of such material to permit proper inspection and drilling of same to ascertain thickness if necessary.

**M-1020.6 Lap-Seam Cracks.** The shell or drum of a pressure vessel in which a lap seam crack is discovered along a longitudinal riveted joint, either butt or lap construction, shall be immediately discontinued from use. If the vessel is not more than fifteen (15) years of age, a complete new course of the original thickness may be installed at the discretion of the inspector (and after approval by the boiler inspector). Patching shall be prohibited. (By "lap-seam crack" is meant the typical crack frequently found in lap seams, extending parallel to the longitudinal joints and located either between or adjacent to rivet holes).

**M-1020.7 Tensile Strength.** When the tensile strength of steel shell plates is not known, it shall be taken as fifty-five thousand (55,000) pounds per square inch for temperatures not exceeding seven-hundred degrees Fahrenheit (700 degrees F.).

**M-1020.8 Crushing Strength of Mild Steel.** The resistance to crushing of mild steel shall be taken at ninety-five thousand (95,000) pounds per square inch of cross-sectional area.

**M-1020.9 Rivets.** In computing the ultimate strength of rivets in shear the following values of the cross-sectional area of the rivet shank shall be used.

POUNDS PER SQUARE INCH	
Steel rivets in single shear	44,000
Steel rivets in double shear	88,000

**M-1020.9.1 Cross-Sectional Area.** The cross-sectional area used in the computations shall be that of the rivet shank after driving.

**M-1020.9.2 Diameter.** When the diameter of the rivet holes in the longitudinal joints of a pressure vessel is not known, the diameter and cross-sectional area of rivet after driving, may be ascertained from Table M-1017.0 or by cutting out one rivet in the body of the joint.

**M-1020.10 Safety Appliances.** Each unfired pressure vessel shall be protected by such safety and relief valves and indicating and controlling devices as will insure its safe operation. These valves and devices shall be so constructed, located, and installed such that they cannot readily be rendered inoperative. The relieving capacity of safety valves shall be such as to prevent a rise of pressure in the vessel of more than ten percent (10%) percent above the maximum allowable working pressure, taking into account the effect of a static head. Safety valve discharges shall be carried to a safe place.

## **CHAPTER 11E REFRIGERATION**

### **SECTION M-1105 MACHINERY ROOM, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

*Add new Section M-1105.7.1 to read as follows:*

**M-1105.7.1 Discharge Piping.** Discharge piping shall be in accordance with ASHRAE 15.

## **CHAPTER 15E REFERENCED STANDARDS**

*ADD THE FOLLOWING REFERENCED STANDARDS (FOLLOWED BY SECTION):*

NFPA 45-2000, FIRE PROTECTION FOR LABORATORIES USING CHEMICALS.  
514.1

ASME, I THROUGH XI, ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE (2001)  
1004.1

UL 726, STANDARD FOR OIL-FIRED BOILER ASSEMBLIES (1995)  
1004.1

NATIONAL BOARD INSPECTION CODE, (NBIC) 2001 ANSI/NB-23  
1004.1

ASHRAE 15-1994 WITH ADDENDA  
15C-2000 & 15D-2000.

SAFETY CODE FOR MECHANICAL REFRIGERATION  
1105.7.1

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12F PLUMBING CODE**

**CHAPTER 2F DEFINITIONS**

**SECTION P-202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS**

*Add revised definition to Section P-202 to read as follows:*

Cistern. A small covered tank for storing water. Generally, this tank stores rainwater to be utilized for purposes other than in the potable water supply, and such tank is placed underground in most cases.

## **CHAPTER 3F GENERAL REGULATIONS**

### **SECTION P-301 GENERAL**

*Add new Section P-301.3.1 to read to as follows:*

**P-301.3.1 Wastewater.** Every improved lot in which plumbing fixtures are installed, shall have its own independent sanitary or combined sewer connection to discharge liquid wastes and sewage to the available public system, installed from the public way at a right angle to the street lot line or as approved by the administrative authority.

*Add new Section P-301.4.1 to read to as follows:*

**P-301.4.1 Domestic Water.** Every improved lot in which plumbing fixtures are installed shall have its own independent water connection to the available public system, installed from the public way at a right angle to the street lot line or as approved by the administrative authority.

*Add new Section P-301.7 to read to as follows:*

**P-301.7 Public Systems Available.** A public water main or public sewer shall be considered available to a building system when the premises are located within the distances specified below:

One and two-family dwellings: The lot is within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of the public water main or sewer, measured along the center line of a street or public way abutting the lot.

Other occupancies: The lot is within 250 feet (76 200 mm) of the public water main or sewer, measured along the center lone of a street or public way abutting the lot.

### **SECTION P-305 PROTECTION OF PIPES AND PLUMBING SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

*Add new Section P-305.10 to read to as follows:*

**P-305.10 Grounding electrical systems in existing structures:** Where water service is replaced in existing structures with approved plastic pipe, provision shall be made to replace any existing electrical grounding system, as needed, so as to conform to the *DC Electrical Code*.

### **SECTION P-306 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL**



*Add new Sections P-306.2.4 and P-306.2.5 to read to as follows:*

**P-306.2.4 Trench locations:** Trenches shall be of sufficient width to permit proper installation of the pipe. Where shoring is required, ample allowance shall be made in trench width for proper working conditions. No house sewer or water service shall be laid within 4 feet (1219 mm) parallel to any bearing wall nor within 3 feet (914mm) parallel to any lot line or lot line extended. Where permitted in the same trench with the house sewer, the water service pipe shall be placed on a shelf cut into solid ground at one side of the common trench at least 8 inches (203 mm) from the edge of the ditch.

**P-306.2.5 Trench safeguards:** These requirements apply to any trench 4 feet (1219 mm) or more in depth which serves as a workplace. The sides of all such trenches shall be securely supported by substantial and adequate sheeting, sheet piling, bracing, shoring or other approved method of support, or the sides of the excavation sloped to the angle of repose of the material being excavated, where there is apparent danger of slides, slips, cave-ins, or falling of earth and where the undercutting of banks or walls of the excavation is pertinent to the excavation system. Shoring will not be required where the trench is cut in solid rock or hard shale. All trenches shall be supplied with at least one ladder for each 50 feet (15240 mm) of length or fraction. The ladder shall extend from the bottom of the trench to at least 3 feet (914 mm) above the surface of the ground. Minimum requirements for the size and spacing of trench shoring members shall be in accordance with current OSHA requirements.

## CHAPTER 6F WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

### SECTION P-605 MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

*Revise Table P-605.4 to read as follows:*

**TABLE P-605.4  
WATER SERVICE PIPE**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	ASTM D 1527; ASTM D 2282
Brass pipe	ASTM B 43
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B 42; ASTM B 302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM)	ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251; ASTM B 447
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D 2846; ASTM F 441; ASTM F 442; CAS B137.6
Ductile iron water pipe	AWWA C151; AWWA C115
Galvanized steel pipe	ASTM A 53
Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe	ASTM D 2239; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.1
Polyethylene (PE) plastic tubing	ASTM D 2737; CSA B137.1
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing	ASTM F 876; ASTM F 877; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.5
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe	ASTM F 1281; CSA CAN/CSA B137.10
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pipe	ASTM F 1282; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.9
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D 1785; ASTM D 2241; ASTM D 2672; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.3

*Revise Table P-605.5 to read as follows:*

**TABLE 605.5  
WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPE**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Brass pipe	ASTM B 43
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe and tubing	ASTM D 2846; ASTM F 441; ASTM F 442; CSA B 137.6
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B 42; ASTM B 302
Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM)	ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251; ASTM B 447

*District of Columbia Building Code Supplement of 2003*

Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing	ASTM F 877; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.5
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe	ASTM F 1281; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.10
Galvanized steel pipe	ASTM A53

## **CHAPTER 7F SANITARY DRAINAGE**

### **SECTION P-708 CLEANOUTS**

*Revise subsection P-708.3.2 to read as follows:*

**P-708.3.2 Building Sewers:** Building sewers shall be provided with cleanouts or manholes located not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) apart measured from the upstream entrance of the cleanout. For building sewers 8 inches (203 mm) and larger, manholes shall be provided and located as close as practical to the property line on the public space side, at each change in direction and at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). A cleanout must be placed at the property line, or as close as possible if the building wall is constructed on the property line. Manholes and manhole covers shall be of a type approved by WASA.

## **CHAPTER 11F STORM DRAINAGE**

### **SECTION P-1101 GENERAL**

*Delete Section P-1101.2 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

**P-1101.2 Where required:** Stormwater drainage shall comply with Sections P-1101.2.1 and P-1101.2.2.

**P-1101.2.1** Unless a construction project is otherwise exempt from the D.C. Storm Water Management Regulations, a permit shall not be issued for a building or structure associated with grading operations or construction, or both, that disturb more than 5,000 square feet (464.65m<sup>2</sup>) of land area, or that are part of an approved subdivision plan which contains provisions for storm water management, until the submitted plans reflect the pertinent storm water management features approved by the official charged with the administration and enforcement of the D.C. Storm Water Management Regulations, 21 DCMR §§ 526-535, and the requirements of D.C. Law 5-188, Water Pollution Control Act of 1984, as amended.

**P-1101.2.2** When approved, storm water may be discharged from roofs, paved areas, yards, courts, courtyards, downspouts, rain barrels, cisterns or rooftop storage facilities to vegetated areas, such as lawns, gardens, grassy swales, or bioretention cells on the same single record lot. In such instances the storm water shall flow away from the building, and shall not flow over property lines onto adjacent lots unless it runs into existing natural water courses. Otherwise, stormwater shall discharge to an approved place of disposal or into a storm sewer or combined sewer.

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12G PROPERTY MAINTENANCE CODE**

**CHAPTER 2G DEFINITIONS**

**SECTION PM-201 GENERAL**

*Revise Section PM-201.3 to read as follows:*

**PM-201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *Building Code*, *Fire Code*, *Energy Conservation Code*, *Fuel Gas Code*, *Plumbing Code*, *Mechanical Code*, ASME A17.1, the *Electrical Code*, Abatement and Condemnation of Nuisance Properties Omnibus Act of 2000, 14 DCMR (Housing), or Rental Housing Act of 1985 as amended such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

## **CHAPTER 3G GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

### **SECTION PM-301 GENERAL**

*Add new Sections PM-301.4 through PM-301.6 to read to as follows:*

**PM-301.4 Materials.** Material used in making any repair shall be of a quality and kind suitable for the purpose for which it is used, and of a kind normally used by a good mechanic in the appropriate trade. Each Repair shall be done in a workmanlike manner.

**PM-301.5 Prohibited Acts.** A tenant shall not do or permit any person on the premises with the tenant's permission to do any of the following: (a) Willfully or wantonly destroy, deface, damage, impair, or remove any part of the structure or dwelling unit; or (b) Willfully or wantonly destroy, deface, damage, impair, or remove any part of the facilities, equipment, or appurtenances to the dwelling unit.

**PM-301.6 Extension.** Any owner who is served with an order pursuant to PM-305 shall comply with the order within ten (10) days of its service upon him or her or shall obtain an extension of the ten (10) day period from the Director of the Department of Health. No extension shall exceed thirty (30) days, but thirty (30) day extensions may be renewed at the discretion of the Director of the Department of Health.

### **SECTION PM-302 EXTERIOR PROPERTY AREAS**

*Add new Section PM-302.7.3 to read to as follows:*

**PM-302.7.3 Storm water management facilities.** Storm water management facilities constructed pursuant to D.C. Storm Water Management Regulations shall be inspected and maintained in good condition and repair, including all graded surfaces, conveyance, basins, drains, structures, vegetation and other protective devices for storm water management, using established guidelines and procedures and approved by the official charged with the administration and enforcement of the D.C. Storm Water Management Regulations, 21 DCMR 526-535 and the requirements of D.C. Law 5-188, Water Pollution Control Act of 1984, as amended.

### **SECTION PM-303 EXTERIOR STRUCTURE**

*Revise Section PM-303.14 to read as follows:*

**PM-303.14 Insect screens.** During the period from April 15 to October 15, every door, window and other outside opening required for ventilation of habitable rooms, food preparation areas, food service areas, or any areas where products to be included or utilized in food for human consumption are processed, manufactured, packaged or stored, shall be supplied with approved

tightly fitting screens of not less than 16 mesh per inch (16 mesh per 25 mm) and every swinging door shall have a self-closing device in good working condition.



## **CHAPTER 5G PLUMBING FACILITIES AND FIXTURE REQUIREMENTS**

### **SECTION PM-505 WATER SYSTEM**

*Add new Section PM-505.5 to read to as follows:*

**PM-505.5 Inspections for Multiple Unit Buildings:** The owner of a multiple dwelling, containing two (2) or more units served by domestic water heating facility common to more than one unit, shall cause the domestic water heating facility to be inspected by a qualified person between March 1 and September 1 of each year.

## **CHAPTER 6G MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS**

### **SECTION PM-602 HEATING FACILITIES**

*Revise Section PM-602.3 to read as follows (maintain Exceptions to this Section):*

**602.3 Heat supply.** Every owner and operator of any building who rents, leases or lets one or more dwelling unit, rooming unit, dormitory or guestroom on terms, either expressed or implied, to furnish heat to the occupants thereof shall supply heat during the period from October 15<sup>th</sup> to May 15<sup>th</sup> to maintain a temperature of not less than 65°F (18°C) in all habitable rooms, bathrooms, and toilet rooms.

*Revise Section PM-602.4 to read as follows (maintain Exceptions to this Section):*

**602.4 Occupiable work spaces.** Indoor occupiable work spaces shall be supplied with heat during the period from October 15<sup>th</sup> to May 15<sup>th</sup> to maintain a temperature of not less than 65°F (18°C) during the period the spaces are occupied.

*Add new Sections PM-602.6 through PM-602.9 to read as follows:*

**PM-602.6 Inspection as a Result of Notice of Violation:** The owner of a single family dwelling, occupied in whole or in part by a tenant or tenants in which one (1) or more housing violation notices were issued because of a defective heating system under the control of the owner, shall cause the furnace, boiler, or other central heating or hot water system to be inspected by a qualified person in the period between March 1 and September 1 subsequent to the issuance of the violation notices.

**PM-602.7 Inspections for Multiple Unit Buildings:** The owner of a multiple dwelling, containing two (2) or more units, shall cause the furnace, boiler, or other central heating systems to be inspected by a qualified person between March 1 and September 1 of each year.

**PM-602.8 Recordation of Inspections:** The findings on inspections shall be recorded on forms approved by the Department within fifteen (15) days following the inspection and shall be delivered to the owner, who shall file a copy with the Department within seven (7) days of the receipt of the findings.

**PM-602.9 Requirement of Written Certifications:** The certifications required by the above Sections shall be in writing and shall be signed by the owner and by a "qualified person".

### **SECTION PM-608 AIR CONDITIONING**

*Add new Section PM-608.1 to read to as follows:*

**PM-608.1 General.** The owner of a rental habitation, who provides air conditioning as a service either through individual air conditioning units or a central air conditioning system, shall maintain such unit or system in safe and good working condition so that it is capable of providing an inside temperature, in the rooms it is intended to serve, equal to the greater of (i) seventy-eight degrees Fahrenheit (78 degrees F), or (ii) at least fifteen degrees Fahrenheit (15 degrees F) less than the outside temperature.

## **CHAPTER 7G FIRE SAFETY REQUIREMENTS**

### **SECTION PM-702 MEANS OF EGRESS**

*Add new Sections PM-702.5 through PM-702.8 to read to as follows:*

**PM-702.5 Arrangements.** Exits from dwelling units, rooming units, guestrooms and dormitory units shall not lead through other such units, or through toilet rooms or bathrooms.

**PM-702.6 Exit signs.** All means of egress shall be indicated with approved “Exit” signs where required by the building code. All “Exit” signs shall be maintained visible and all illuminated “Exit” signs shall be illuminated at all times that the building is occupied.

**PM-702.7 Stairways, handrails and guards.** Every exterior and interior flight of stairs having more than four risers and every open portion of a stair, landing, balcony, porch, deck, ramp or other walking surface which is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below shall have guards. Existing guard handrails shall not be less than 30 inches (762mm) nor more than 42 inches (1067mm) high, measured vertically above the nosing of the tread. Stairways, handrails and guards shall be properly maintained.

**PM-702.8 Stair identification:** The interior and exterior of all stairway doors connecting more than three stories shall be provided with signage as required by Section 1005.3.2.4 through 1005.3.2.4.2 of the *District of Columbia Building Code*.

### **SECTION PM-704 FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS**

*Add new subsection PM-704.4 to read to as follows:*

**PM-704.4 Fire alarm systems.** Fire alarm systems shall be in proper operating condition at all times.

**PM-704.4.1 Manual fire alarm boxes.** All manual fire alarm boxes shall be operational and unobstructed.

**PM-704.4.2 Automatic fire detectors.** All automatic fire detectors shall be operational and free from any obstructions that prevent proper operation, including smoke entry.

*Add new Section PM-705 to read to as follows:*

### **SECTION PM-705 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS AGAINST FIRE**

**PM-705.1 Hazardous and combustible materials.** Combustible, flammable, explosive or other hazardous materials, such as paints, volatile oils and cleaning fluids, or combustible *rubbish*, such as wastepaper, boxes and rags, shall not be accumulated or stored unless such storage complies with the applicable requirements of the *Building Code* and the fire prevention code listed in Chapter 8.

**PM-705.2 Fire extinguishers.** All portable fire extinguishers when required by previous or present Building or Fire Prevention Codes, shall be visible, provided with ready access thereto, and maintained in an efficient and safe operating condition. Extinguishers shall be of an approved type. Fire extinguishers shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 10 as referenced in the District of Columbia Fire Prevention Code.

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12H FIRE CODE**

**CHAPTER 1H ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT**

Delete Chapter 1 of the International Fire Code and substitute the following sections.

**SECTION F-101 GENERAL**

**F-101.1 Title.** The ICC International Fire Code/2000 as amended by the D.C. Fire Prevention Code Supplement/2003 (DCMR 12H) shall constitute the D.C. Fire Prevention Code/2003, hereinafter referred to as the “Fire Prevention Code”.

**F-101.2 Scope.** These regulations prescribe minimum requirements and controls to safeguard life, property or public welfare from the hazards of fire and explosion arising from the storage, handling or use of substances, materials or devices and from conditions hazardous to life, property or public welfare in the use or occupancy of structures, or premises.

**F-101.2.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**F-101.3 Intent.** This code shall be construed to secure its expressed intent, which is to insure public safety, health and welfare insofar as they are affected by conditions which cause fire or explosion and panic resulting therefrom; and, in general, to secure safety to life and property from fire hazards incidents to the use, occupancy and maintenance of structures or premises.

**F-101.4 Severability.** An illegal or void part of this code shall be segregated from the remainder of the code by the court holding such part illegal or void, and the remainder of the code shall remain in effect.

**F-101.5 Validity.** If any part or provision of the Fire Prevention Code is held illegal or void, this shall not make void or illegal any other parts or provisions of the Fire Prevention Code which are determined to be legal. It shall be presumed that the Fire Prevention Code would have been enacted and adopted without such illegal or void parts or provisions.

**F-101.6 Application of References.** Unless otherwise specifically provided for in this code, all references to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

**F-101.7 Chapters and Section Numbering.** The chapters and sections of the D.C. Fire Prevention Code Supplement are numbered to concur and coordinate with the numbering system of the ICC International Fire Code/2000.

**F-101.8 Provisions.** The provisions of the District of Columbia Fire Prevention Code Supplement are intended to amend and clarify the International Fire Code requirements and make provisions for local District of Columbia regulations not contained in the International Fire Code.

## **SECTION F-102 APPLICABILITY**

**F-102.1 Buildings and Property.** This code shall be applicable to all buildings and premises within the District of Columbia and the structures appurtenant to such buildings, including buildings and structures appurtenant to premises occupied by or for any foreign government as an embassy or chancery, to the extent provided for in Section 206 of the Foreign Missions Act, approved August 24, 1982 (96 Stat. 286; D.C. Code, Section 5-1206(g)). The provisions of this code shall not apply to public buildings or premises owned by the United States Government, including appurtenant structures and portions of buildings, premises, or structures that are under the exclusive control of an officer of the United States Government in his or her official capacity. If a lessor is responsible for maintenance and repairs to property leased to the United States Government, the property shall not be deemed to be under the exclusive control of an officer of the United States Government.

**F-102.2. Administrative, Operational and Maintenance Provisions.** The administrative, operational and maintenance provisions of this code shall apply to:

1. Conditions and operations arising after the adoption of this code;
2. Existing conditions and operations.

**F-102.3 Change of Use of Occupancy.** It shall be unlawful to make any change in the use or occupancy of any structure or portion thereof which would subject it to any special provisions of the Construction Codes without first complying with those provisions for the new use by obtaining approval for the new use through issuance of a building permit and a certificate of occupancy. Work required for compliance with this section shall be performed under a duly issued building permit and shall comply with Section 102.6.4 of the building code.

**F-102.4 Application of Building Code.** The design and construction of new structures to provide egress facilities, fire protection, and built-in fire protection equipment shall be controlled by the District of Columbia building code, and any alterations, additions or changes in structures required by this code which are within the scope of the District of Columbia building code shall be made in accordance therewith.

**F-102.5 Historic Buildings.** The provisions of this code shall not be mandatory for historic buildings or structures meeting the requirements of Chapter 10 of the Existing Building Code, when such buildings or structures are judged by the building code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare. The code official is authorized to approve a fire protection plan developed in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 909 for any designated historic building or structure.

**F-102.6 Referenced Codes and Standards.** The standards referenced in this code and listed in Chapter 44 shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference.

**F-102.6.1 Conflicting Provisions.** If conflict arises between the provisions of D.C. Law 6-216, Construction Codes Approval and Amendments Act of 1986, as amended, and the D.C. Supplement, the International Fire Code or its referenced standards, the provisions of D.C. Law 6-216 shall precedence. If conflict arises between the D.C. Supplement, the International Fire Code/2000, and its reference standards.

1. The provisions of the D.C. Supplement shall take precedence over the International Fire Code and its referenced standards.
2. The provisions of the International Fire Code other than its referenced standards shall take precedence over its referenced standards.

**F-102.7 Subjects not Regulated by this Code.** Where no applicable standards or requirements are set forth in this code, or are contained within other laws, codes or regulations adopted by the District of Columbia, compliance with applicable standards of the National Fire Protection Association or other nationally recognized fire safety standards as are approved, shall be deemed prima facie evidence of compliance with the intent of this code. Nothing herein shall derogate from the authority of the code official to determine compliance with codes or standards for those activities or installations within the code official's jurisdiction or responsibility.

**F-102.8 Matters Not Provided For.** Any requirement essential for fire safety of an existing building or structure, or essential for the safety of the occupants thereof, and which is not specifically covered by this code, shall be determined by the code official based on common fire protection engineering practices and relevant industry standards.

## **SECTION F-103 THE FIRE DEPARTMENT**

**F-103.1 The Department.** The Fire Chief of the Fire and Emergency Medical Service Department shall be the code official for the enforcement of this code, except as provided in Subsection F-105.1. References to the term "Department" within the Fire Prevention Code shall mean the Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department, except that references to the term "Department" in all provisions pertaining to the approval, installation, design, modification, maintenance, testing, and inspections of all new and existing fire protection systems shall mean the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

## **SECTION F-104 APPROVAL**

**F-104.1 Approved Materials and Equipment.** All materials, equipment and devices approved for use by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with the conditions of such approval.



**F-104.2 Modifications.** When there are practical difficulties or undue economic hardship involved in complying with the provisions of this code, the code official is permitted to vary or modify such provisions upon application of the owner or the owners representative, provided that the spirit and intent of the law shall be observed and public welfare and safety be insured. The code official may seek the opinion of the Corporation counsel when deemed necessary for the requested modification.

**F-104.2.1 Records.** The application for modification and the final decision of the code official shall be in writing and shall be officially recorded in the permanent records of the department.

**F-104.3 Used Materials and Equipment.** Used materials, equipment and devices shall not be re-used unless they have been reconditioned, tested and placed in good and proper working condition and approved for use by the code official.

**F-104.4 Alternative Methods and Materials.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the use of any material or method of work not specifically prescribed by this code, provided such alternative has been approved. The approval of such alternative shall comply with the intent of the provisions of this code. The material, or method of work offered shall be, for the purposed intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety.

**F-104.4.1 Research and Investigations.** Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to substantiate the proposed installation of any material or assembly. If it is determined that the evidence submitted is satisfactory proof of performance for the proposed installation, the code official shall approve such alternative, subject to the requirements of this code. The costs of all tests, reports and investigations required under these provisions shall be paid by the applicant.

**F-104.4.2 Research Reports.** Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of all materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

## **SECTION F-105 AUTHORITY**

**F-105.1 Code Official.** The Fire Chief of the Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department shall be the code official for the enforcement of this code, except that the Director of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs shall be the code official for the enforcement of all provisions pertaining to the approval, installation, design, modification, maintenance, testing, and inspections of all new and existing fire protection systems.

**F-105.2.1 Delegation of Authority.** The code official may delegate his or her duties and powers under this code, but he or she shall remain the responsible for the proper performance of those duties and powers.

**F-105.3 Organization.** The code official shall appoint such number of officers, technical assistants, inspectors and other employees as shall be necessary for the administration of this code and as authorized by the appointing authority.

**F-105.4 Deputy.** The code official is authorized to designate an employee as deputy who shall exercise all the powers of the code official during the temporary absence or disability of the code official.

**F-105.5 Restriction of Employees.** An official or employee connected with the enforcement of this code, except one whose only connection is that of a member of the board of appeals established under the provisions of Section 113, shall not be engaged in, or directly or indirectly connected with, the furnishing of labor, materials, devices or appliances for the construction, alteration or maintenance of a building under the jurisdiction of this code, or the preparation of plans or of specifications therefore, unless that person is the owner of the building; nor shall such officer or employee engage in any work which conflicts with official duties or with the interests of the Department.

**F-105.6 Relief From Personal Responsibility.** The code official, officer or employee charged with the enforcement of this code, while acting for the District of Columbia, shall not thereby be rendered liable personally and is hereby relieved from all personal liability for any damage accrued to persons or property as a result of any act required or permitted in the discharge of official duties.

**F-105.6.1 Jurisdictional Liability.** The District of Columbia shall not be liable under this code for any damage to persons or property, by reason of the inspection or re-inspection of structures or equipment authorized herein, or failure to inspect or re-inspect such structures or equipment or by reason of the approval or disapproval of any structure or equipment authorized therein.

## **SECTION F-106 DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL**

**F-106.1 General.** The code official shall enforce the provisions of this code and shall act on any question relative to the mode or manner of construction and the materials to be used in the location, use, occupancy and maintenance of all structures, except as otherwise specifically provided for by statutory requirements or by section 105.1.

**F-106.2 Applications and Permits.** The code official shall receive applications and issue permits as provided in Section 107, inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this code.

**F-106.3 Building Notices and Orders.** The code official shall issue all necessary notices and orders to ensure compliance with this code.

**F-106.4 Inspections.** The code official shall make all the required inspections, except that the code official is authorized to accept reports of inspections by approved agencies or individuals. All reports of such inspections shall be in writing and certified by a responsible officer of such

approved agency or by the responsible individual. The code official is authorized to engage such experts as deemed necessary to report upon unusual technical issues that may arise.

**F-106.5 Identification.** The code official and authorized representatives shall carry proper credentials of their respective offices when inspecting any structures and premises in the performance of duties under this code.

**F-106.6 Rules and Regulations.** The code official shall have the authority, as necessary in the interest of public safety, health and general welfare to promulgate rules and regulations, to interpret and implement the provisions of this code, to secure the intent thereof and to designate requirements applicable because of local and climatic or other conditions. Such rules shall not have the effect of waving any fire safety requirements specifically provided for in this code, or of violating accepted engineering practices involving public safety.

**F-106.7 Department Records.** The code official shall keep official records of applications received, permits and certificates issued, fees collected, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued. Such records shall be retained in the official records as long as the building or structure to which they relate remains in existence unless otherwise provided by other regulations.

**F-106.7.1 Public Access to Records.** Official records of the Department shall be available for public inspection at all appropriate times, under procedures established by the code official. Such procedures shall be approved by the Corporation Counsel for legal sufficiency.

## **SECTION F-107 PERMITS**

**F-107.1 Permits Required.** Permits shall be obtained from the code official in accordance with the provisions of this code. Permits shall at all times be kept in the premises designated therein and shall at all times be subject to inspection by the code official.

**F-107.2.1 Application for Permit.** Application for a permit required by this code shall be made to the code official on a form provided by the code official. Applications for permits shall be accompanied by construction documents, technical information and any other information required by the code official for evaluation of the application.

**F-107.3 Action on Application.** The code official shall examine or cause to be examined all applications for permits and amendments thereof within a reasonable time after filing. If the code official is satisfied that the proposed work or operation conforms to the requirements of this code and all laws and ordinances applicable thereto, the code official shall issue a permit therefore as soon as practicable. If the application or the construction documents do not conform to the requirements of all pertinent laws, the code official shall notify the applicant in writing, identifying the non-conforming items and the corresponding relevant code sections.

**F-107.4 Inspections and Tests.** Before a permit is issued, the code official or the code official's designated representative shall make or cause to be made such inspections or tests as

are necessary to assure that the use and activities for which application is made comply with the provisions of this code.

**F-107.5 Conditions of Permit.** A permit shall constitute permission to maintain, store, or handle materials, or to conduct processes which produce conditions hazardous to life or property, or to install equipment used in connection with such activities in accordance with the provisions of this code. Such permission shall not be construed as authority to violate, cancel or set aside any of the provisions of this code. Said permit shall remain in effect until revoked, or for such period of time as specified on the permit. Permits are not transferable and any change in use, operation or tenancy shall require a new permit.

**F-107.6 Approved Construction Documents.** Construction documents approved by the code official are approved with the intent that they comply in all respects with this code. Any omissions or errors on the construction documents do not relieve the applicant from having to comply with this code.

**F-107.7 Revocation of Permit.** The code official shall have the authority to revoke a permit or approval issued under the provisions of this code if, upon inspection, any significant violation of the code exists, or if conditions of a permit have been violated, or if there has been any substantive false statement or misrepresentation as to material fact in the application, data or plans on which the permit or approval was based.

**F-107.7.1 Lapsed Permit.** Any permit issued shall become invalid if the authorized work or activity has not commenced within six (6) months after issuance of the permit, or if the authorized work or activity has been suspended or abandoned for a period of six months after the authorized work or activity has commenced.

**F-107.8 Payment of Fee:** A permit shall not be issued until the established fees have been paid, as follows:

**PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE**

**REINSPECTION AND SUPPLEMENTAL PERMITS:**

Re-inspection (first re-inspection of each kind of inspection is included in the original permit fee; re-inspection fee applies to second and subsequent required re-inspections due to incomplete or incorrect work) per site visit and per discipline.

Residential re-inspection (1 and 2 family dwellings)	\$65.00
Commercial re-inspection	\$130.00

**PERMITS, GENERAL:**

Propane (200 pounds or less)	\$100.00
For each pound in excess of 200 pounds	\$ .50
Bonfires/open burning	\$150.00

*District of Columbia Building Code Supplement of 2003*

Explosives site permit (dynamite/nitro) (Valid for 45 business days)	\$500.00
Explosives vehicle inspection, per vehicle (Valid for 45 business days)	\$100.00
Fireworks Aerial Display Permit	\$300.00
Fireworks Retail and Stand Permit	\$150.00
Special Effect and Pyrotechnics Display Permit	\$150.00
Miscellaneous (minimum fee)	\$100.00
FUEL STORAGE TANKS:	
Fuel storage tanks (AST's and UST's), review of shop drawings and installation inspections	\$150.00
	\$50.00
Above ground storage tank (AST's), annual inspection and registration	
EXHIBIT PLANS REVIEW:	
Per Set	\$100.00
OVERTIME REQUESTS:	
Per inspector, per hour	\$60.00
HAZARDOUS MATERIALS MITIGATION FEE:	
Equipment, materials and supplies	Replacement Cost
USE OF FIRE TRUCK:	
Use of fire truck, four to five firefighters and equipment for parades, festivals and other special events, per hour	\$400.00

**F-107.9 Types of permits.** There shall be two types of permits as follows:

1. Operational permit. An operational permit allows the applicant to conduct an operation or business for which a permit is required by Section 107.10 for either:
  - 1.1 A prescribed period.
  - 1.2. Until renewed or revoked
2. Installation permit. An installation permit allows the applicant to install or modify systems and equipment for which a permit is required by Section 107.11.

**F-107.10 Required Operational Permits.** The code official is authorized to issue operational permits for the operations set forth in Sections 107.10.1 through 107.10.43.

**F-107.10.1 Aerosol products.** An operational permit is required to manufacture, store or handle an aggregate quantity of Level 2 or Level 3 aerosol products in excess of 500 pounds (227 kg) net weight.

**F-107.10.2 Amusement buildings.** An operational permit is required to operate a special amusement building.

**F-107.10.3 Aviation facilities.** An operational permit is required to use a Group H or Group S occupancy for aircraft servicing or repair and aircraft fuel-servicing vehicles. Additional permits required by other sections of this code include, but are not limited to, hot work, hazardous materials and flammable or combustible finishes.

**F-107.10.4 Battery systems.** A permit is required to install stationary lead-acid battery systems having a liquid capacity of more than 50 gallons (189L).

**F-107.10.5 Cellulose nitrate film.** An operational permit is required to store, handle or use cellulose nitrate film in a Group A occupancy.

**F-107.10.6 Combustible dust-producing operations.** An operational permit is required to operate a grain elevator, flour starch mill, feed mill, or a plant pulverizing aluminum, coal, cocoa, magnesium, spices or sugar, or other operations producing combustible dusts as defined in Chapter 2.

**F-107.10.7 Combustible fibers.** An operational permit is required for the storage and handling of combustible fibers in quantities greater than 100 cubic feet (1.2m<sup>3</sup>).

**Exception:** A permit is not required for agricultural storage.

**F-107.10.8 Compressed gases.** An operational permit is required for the storage, use or handling at normal temperature and pressure (NTP) of compressed gases in excess of the amounts listed in Table 107.10.8.

**Exception:** Vehicles equipped for and using compressed gas as a fuel for propelling the vehicle.

**TABLE 107.10.8**  
**PERMIT AMOUNTS FOR COMPRESSED GASES**

TYPE OF GAS	AMOUNT (cubic feet at NTP)
Corrosive	200
Flammable (except cryogenic fluids and liquefied petroleum gases)	200
Highly toxic	Any amount
Inert and simple asphyxiant	6,000

Oxidizing (including oxygen)  
**Toxic**

504  
**Any amount**

**F-107.10.9 Cryogenic fluids.** An operational permit is required to produce, store, transport on site, use, handle or dispense cryogenic fluids in excess of the amounts listed in Table 107.10.9.

**TABLE 107.10.9**  
**PERMIT AMOUNTS FOR CRYOGENIC FLUIDS**

TYPE OF CRYOGENIC FLUID	INSIDE BUILDING (gallons)	OUTSIDE BUILDING (gallons)
Flammable	More than 1	60
Inert	60	500
Oxidizing (including oxygen)	10	50
Physical or health hazard not indicated above	Any amount	Any amount

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785L

**F-107.10.10 Cutting and welding.** An operational permit is required to conduct cutting or welding operations within the jurisdiction.

**F-107.10.11 Dry cleaning plants.** An operational permit is required to engage in the business of dry cleaning or to change to a more hazardous cleaning solvent used in existing dry cleaning equipment.

**F-107.10.12 Exhibits and trade shows.** An operational permit is required to operate exhibits and trade shows.

**F-107.10.13 Explosives.** An operational permit is required for the manufacture, storage, handling, sale or use of any quantity of explosive, explosive material, firework, or pyrotechnic special effects within the scope of Chapter 33.

**F-107.10.14 Flammable and combustible liquids.** An operational permit is required:

1. To use or operate a pipeline for the transportation within facilities of flammable or combustible liquids. This requirement shall not apply to the off-site transportation in pipelines regulated by The Department of Transportation (DOT) nor does it apply to piping systems.
2. To store, handle or use Class 1 liquids in excess of 5 gallons (19 L) in a building or in excess of 10 gallons (37.9 L) outside of a building, except that a permit is not required for the following:
3. The storage or use of Class 1 liquids in the fuel tank of a motor vehicle, aircraft, motorboat, mobile power plant or mobile heating plant, unless such storage, in the opinion of the code official, would cause an unsafe condition.

4. The storage or use of paints, oils, varnishes or similar flammable mixtures when such liquids are stored for maintenance, painting or similar purposes for a period of not more than thirty (30) days.
5. To store, handle or use Class II or Class IIIA liquids in excess of 25 gallons (95 L) in a building or in excess of 60 gallons (227 L) outside a building, except for fuel oil used in connection with oil-burning equipment.
6. To remove Class I or Class II liquids from an underground storage tank used for fueling motor vehicles by any means other than the approved, stationary on-site pumps normally used for dispensing purposes.
7. To operate tank vehicles, equipment, tanks, plants, terminals, wells, fuel-dispensing stations, refineries, distilleries and similar facilities where flammable and combustible liquids are produced, processed, transported, stored, dispensed or used.
8. To install, alter, remove, abandon, place temporarily out of service (for more than 90days) or otherwise dispose of an underground, protected above-ground or above-ground flammable or combustible liquid tank.
9. To change the type of contents stored in a flammable or combustible liquid tank to a material which poses a greater hazard than for which the tank was designed and constructed.
10. To manufacture, process, blend or refine flammable or combustible liquids.

**F-107.10.15 Floor finishing.** An operational permit is required for floor finishing or surfacing operations exceeding 350 square feet (33 m ) using Class I or Class II liquids.

**F-107.10.16 Fruit and crop ripening.** An operational permit is required to operate a fruit-, or crop-ripening facility or conduct a fruit-ripening process using ethylene gas.

**F-107.10.17 Fumigation and thermal insecticidal fogging.** An operational permit is required to operate a business of fumigation or thermal insecticidal fogging and to maintain a room, vault or chamber in which a toxic or flammable fumigant is used.

**F-107.10.18 Hazardous materials.** An operational permit is required to store, transport on site, dispense, use or handle hazardous materials in excess of the amounts listed in Table 105.6.21

TABLE 107.10.18	
PERMIT AMOUNTS FOR HAZARDOUS MATERIALS	
TYPE OF MATERIAL	AMOUNT



*District of Columbia Building Code Supplement of 2003*

Combustible liquids	See Section 107.10.14
Corrosive materials	
Gases	Any amount in malls
Liquids	55 gallons
Solids	1,000 pounds
Explosive materials	See Section 107.10.13
Flammable materials	
Gases	Any amount in malls
Liquids	See Section 107.10.14
Solids	100 pounds
Highly toxic materials	
Gases	Any amount in malls
Liquids	Any amount
Solids	Any amount
Oxidizing materials	
Gases	Any amount in malls
Liquids	
Class 4	Any amount
Class 3	1 gallon
Class 2	10 gallons
Class 1	55 gallons
Solids	
Class 4	Any amount
Class 3	10 pounds
Class 2	100 pounds
Class 1	500 pounds
Organic Peroxides	
Liquids	
Class I	Any amount
Class II	Any amount
Class III	1 gallon
Class IV	2 gallons
Class V	No permit required
Solids	
Class I	Any amount
Class II	Any amount
Class III	10 pounds
Class IV	20 pounds
Class V	No permit required
Pyrophoric materials	
Gases	Any amount in malls
Liquids	Any amount
Solids	Any amount
Toxic materials	
Gases	Any amount in malls
Liquids	10 gallons
Solids	100 pounds
Unstable (reactive) materials	
Liquids	
Class 4	Any amount
Class 3	Any amount

Class 2	5 gallons
Class 1	10 gallons
Solids	
Class 4	Any amount
Class 3	Any amount
Class 2	50 pounds
Class 1	100 pounds
Water-reactive materials	
Liquids	
Class 3	Any amount
Class 2	5 gallons
Class 1	55 gallons
Solids	
Class 3	Any amount
Class 2	50 pounds
Class 1	500 pounds
For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 pound = 0.454 kg	

**F-107.10.19 HPM facilities.** An operational permit is required to store, handle or use hazardous production materials.

**F-107.10.20 High-piled storage.** An operational permit is required to use a building or portion thereof as a high-piled storage area exceeding 500 square feet (46 m<sup>2</sup>).

**F-107.10.21 Hot work operations.** An operational permit is required for hot work including, but not limited to:

Public exhibitions and demonstrations where hot work is conducted.  
Use of portable hot work equipment inside a structure.

**Exception:** Work that is conducted under a construction permit.

Fixed-site hot work equipment such as welding booths.

Hot work conducted within a hazardous fire area.

Applications of roof coverings with the use of an open-flame device.

When approved, the code official shall issue a permit to carry out a Hot Work Program. This program allows approved personnel to regulate their facility's hot work operations. The approved personnel shall be trained in the fire safety aspects denoted in this chapter and shall be responsible for issuing permits requiring compliance with the requirements found in this chapter. These permits shall be issued only to their employees or hot operations under their supervision.

**F-107.10.22 Industrial ovens.** An operational permit is required for operations of industrial ovens regulated by Chapter 21.

**F-107.10.23 Lumber yards and woodworking plants.** An operational permit is required for the storage or processing of lumber exceeding 100,000 board feet (8,333 ft<sup>3</sup>)(236 m<sup>3</sup>).

**F-107.10.24 Liquid- or gas-fueled vehicles or equipment in assembly buildings.** An operational permit is required to display, operate or demonstrate liquid- or gas-fueled vehicles or equipment in assembly buildings.

**F-107.10.25 LP-gas.** An operational permit is required:

1. Storage and use of LP-gas.
2. Operation of cargo tankers that transport LP-gas.

**F-107.10.26 Magnesium.** An operational permit is required to melt, cast, heat treat or grind more than 10 pounds (4.54 kg) of magnesium.

**F-107.10.27 Miscellaneous combustible storage.** An operational permit is required to store in any building or upon any premises in excess of 2,500 cubic feet (71 m<sup>3</sup>). Gross volume of combustible empty packing cases, boxes, barrels or similar containers, rubber tires, rubber, cork or similar combustible material.

**F-107.10.28 Open burning.** An operational permit is required for the kindling or maintaining of an open fire or a fire on any public street, alley, road, or other public or private ground. Instructions and stipulations of the permit shall be adhered to.

**F-107.10.29 Open flames and candles.** An operational permit is required to remove paint with a torch; use a torch or open-flame device in a hazardous fire area; or to use open flames or candles in connection with assembly areas, dining areas of restaurants or drinking establishments.

Exception: Religious Occupancies

**F-107.10.30 Organic coatings.** An operational permit is required for any organic-coating manufacturing operation producing more than 1 gallon (4L) of an organic coating in one day.

**F-107.10.31 Places of assembly.** An operational permit is required to operate a place of assembly.

**Exception:** Places of public assembly with an occupant load of less than 100 persons.

**F-107.10.32 Private fire hydrants.** An operational permit is required for the removal from service, use or operation of private fire hydrants.

**Exception:** A permit is not required for private industry with trained maintenance personnel, private fire brigade or fire departments to maintain, test and use private hydrants.

**F-107.10.33 Pyrotechnic special effects material.** An operational permit is required for use and handling of pyrotechnic special effects material.

**F-107.10.34 Pyroxylin plastics.** An operational permit is required for storage or handling of more than 25 pounds (11 kg) of cellulose nitrate (pyroxylin) plastics and for the assembly or manufacture of articles involving pyroxylin plastics.

**F-107.10.35 Refrigeration equipment.** An operational permit is required to operate a mechanical refrigeration unit or system regulated by Chapter 6.

**F-105.7.10.36 Repair garages and service stations.** An operational permit is required for operation of repair garages and automotive, marine and fleet service stations.

**F-107.10.37 Rooftop heliports.** An operational permit is required for the operation of a rooftop heliport.

**F-107.10.38 Spraying or dipping.** An operational permit is required to conduct a spraying or dipping operation utilizing flammable or combustible liquids or the application of combustible powders regulated by Chapter 15.

**F-107.10.39 Storage of scrap tires and tire byproducts.** An operational permit is required to establish, conduct or maintain storage of scrap tires and tire byproducts that exceeds 2,500 cubic feet (71 m<sup>3</sup>) of total volume of scrap tires and for indoor storage of tires and tire byproducts.

**F-107.10.40 Tire-rebuilding plants.** An operational permit is required for the operation and maintenance of a tire-rebuilding plant.

**F-107.10.41 Waste handling.** An operational permit is required for the operation of wrecking yards, junkyards and waste material-handling facilities.

**F-107.10.42 Wood products.** An operational permit is required to store chips, hogged material, lumber or plywood in excess of 200 cubic feet (6 m<sup>3</sup>).

**F-107.11 Required installation permits.** The code official is authorized to issue installation permits for work as set forth in Sections 107.11.1 through 107.11.5.

**F-107.11.1 Compressed gases.** When the compressed gases in use or storage exceed the amounts listed in Table 107.10.8, an installation permit is required to install, repair damage to, abandon, remove, place temporarily out of service, or close or substantially modify a compressed gas system.

**Exceptions:**

1. Routine maintenance.
2. For emergency repair work performed on an emergency basis, application for a permit shall be made within two working days of commencement of work. The permit applicant shall apply for approval to close storage, use or handling facilities at least 30 days prior to the termination of the storage, use or handling of compressed or liquefied gases. Such

application shall include any change or alteration of the facility closure plan filed pursuant to Section 2701.5.3. The 30-day period is not applicable when approved based on special circumstances requiring such waiver.

**F-107.11.2 Flammable and combustible liquids.** An installation permit is required:

1. To repair or modify a pipeline for the transportation of flammable or combustible liquids.
2. To install, construct or alter tank vehicles, equipment, tanks, plants, terminals, wells, fuel-dispensing stations, refineries, distilleries and similar facilities where flammable and combustible liquids are produced, processed, transported, stored, dispensed or used.
3. To install, alter, remove, abandon, place temporarily out of service or otherwise dispose of a flammable or combustible liquid tank.

**107.11.3 Hazardous materials.** An installation permit is required to install, repair damage to, abandon, remove, place temporarily out of service, or close or substantially modify a storage facility or other areas regulated by Chapter 27 when the hazardous materials in use or storage exceed the amounts listed in Table 107.10.18.

**Exceptions:**

1. Routine maintenance
2. For emergency repair work performed on an emergency basis, application for permit shall be submitted on the first business day following the commencement of work.

**F-107.11.3 LP-gas.** An installation permit is required for installation or modification of an LP-gas system.

**F-107.11.4 Spraying or dipping.** An installation permit is required to install or modify a spray room, dip tank or booth.

## **SECTION F-108 INSPECTIONS**

**F-108.1 Inspections.** The code official shall inspect all structures and premises, except single-family dwellings and dwelling units in two-family and multiple family dwellings, for the purposes of ascertaining and causing to be corrected any conditions liable to cause fire, contribute to the spread of fire, interfere with fire fighting operations, endanger life or any violations of the provisions or intent of this code or any other ordinance affecting fire safety.

**F-108.2 Coordination of Inspections.** Whenever in the enforcement of the District of Columbia Fire Prevention Code or another code or ordinance, the responsibility of more than one code official of the District of Columbia is involved, it shall be their duty to coordinate their inspections and administrative orders as fully practicable so the owners and occupants of the

structure shall not be subjected to visits by numerous inspectors nor multiple or conflicting orders. Whenever an inspector from any agency or department observes an apparent or actual violation of a provision of a law, ordinance or code of the District of Columbia not within the inspector's authority to enforce, the inspector shall report the findings to the code official having jurisdiction.

**F-108.3 Right of Entry:** Whenever necessary for the purpose of enforcing the provisions of this code, or whenever the code official has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in any structure or upon any premises, any condition which makes such structure or premises unsafe, the code official shall be permitted to enter such structure or premises at all reasonable times to inspect the same or to perform any duty imposed upon the code official by this code; provided that if such structure or premises are occupied, the code official shall first present proper credentials and request entry. If entry is refused or not obtained, the code official is authorized to pursue recourse as provided by law to secure entry.

**F-108.4 Concealed work.** Whenever any installation subject to inspection prior to use is covered or concealed without having first been inspected, the code official shall have the authority to require that such work be exposed for inspection.

## **SECTION F-109 AUTHORITY AT THE SCENE OF FIRES AND OTHER EMERGENCIES**

**F-109.1 Fire and Arson Investigation Authority.** The Fire Chief, the Fire Marshal, and his authorized representative shall have the authority to investigate the cause, origin, and circumstances of every fire, explosion, or hazardous materials emergency in which the Fire Department has a reasonable interest. When the Fire Chief, the Fire Marshal, or his authorized representative has reason to believe that a fire, explosion, or hazardous materials incident may be the result of any violation of the law, he shall immediately take custody of and safeguard all physical evidence in connection therewith, and shall have the authority to prohibit the disturbance or removal of any materials, substance, device, or utility in, or upon, any building or property where an incident occurred, until the investigation of the incident is complete. Provided however, that the Metropolitan Police Department shall be the primary investigative agency in incidents involving critical injury, death, or assaults with intent to kill.

**F-109.2 Fire Records.** The Fire Chief shall keep a record of all fires and all facts concerning the same, including investigation findings and statistics and information as to the cause, origin and extent of such fires and the damage caused thereby.

**F-109.3 Authority to Enter and Examine.** The Fire Chief, the Fire Marshal or his authorized representative or representatives shall have the authority at all times, in performance of the duties imposed by the provisions of this subsection, to enter upon or examine any area, building or premises, vehicle or other thing when there is a probable cause to believe that fires or attempts to cause fires exist. The Fire Chief, Fire Marshall or authorized representative(s) shall have the authority to enter, at any time, any building or property adjacent to that at which the fire or attempt to cause fires has occurred should they deem it necessary in the proper discharge of their duties, and are authorized, in their discretion, to take full control and custody of such buildings

and premises and place such person in charge thereof as they may deem proper until their examination and investigation is completed.

**F-109.4 Arrest and Warrant Powers.** The Fire Marshal and such other personnel as are designated in writing by the Fire Chief shall have and exercise, and are hereby invested with, the same general police powers, including arrest powers, as regular members of the Metropolitan Police Department for the express purpose of enforcing the fire safety laws in effect in the District of Columbia, including, but not limited to, this subsection. This power shall extend to any arrest, the securing of warrants pursuant to Chapter 5 of Title 23 of the D.C. Official Code or other lawful action necessary by permit to the peaceful completion of any lawful action by the Fire Department.

**F-109.5 Authority at Fires and Other Emergencies.** The Fire Chief or officer of the Fire Department in charge at the scene of a fire or other emergency involving the protection of life or property or any part thereof, shall have the authority to direct such operation as necessary to extinguish or control any fire, perform any rescue operation, investigate the existence of suspected or reported fires, gas leaks or other hazardous conditions or situations, or take any other action necessary in the reasonable performance of duty. In the exercise of such power, the Fire Chief is authorized to prohibit any person, vehicle, vessel or thing from approaching the scene and is authorized to remove, or cause to be removed or kept away from the scene, any vehicle, vessel or thing which could impede or interfere with the operations of the Fire Department and, in the judgment of the Fire Chief, any person not actually and usefully employed in the extinguishing of such fire or in the preservation of property in the vicinity thereof.

**F-109.6 Barricades.** The Fire Chief or incident commander or fire official or investigator in charge at the scene of an emergency is authorized to place ropes, guards, barricades or other obstructions across any street, alley, place or private property in the vicinity of such operation so as to prevent accidents or interference with the lawful efforts of the Fire Department or to manage and control the situation and to handle fire apparatus.

**F-109.7 Obstructing operations.** No person shall obstruct the operations of the Fire Department in connection with extinguishment or control of any fire, or actions relative to other emergencies, or disobey any lawful command of the Fire Chief or officer of the Fire Department in charge of the emergency, or any part thereof, or any lawful order of a police officer assisting the Fire Department.

**F-109.8 Systems and devices.** No person shall render a system or device inoperative during an emergency unless by direction of the Fire Chief or Fire Department official in charge of the incident.

## **SECTION F-110 UNSAFE CONDITIONS**

**F-110.1 General.** Whenever the code official or the code official's designated representative finds in any structure or upon any premises dangerous or hazardous conditions or materials, the code official shall order such dangerous conditions or materials to be removed or remedied in accordance with the provisions of this code. When necessary to secure safety in addition thereto, the code official shall be authorized to prescribe limitations on the handling and storage of materials or substances or upon operations that are liable to cause fire, contribute to the spread of fire, or endanger life or property. Dangerous conditions or materials include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Hazardous conditions, which are liable to cause or contribute to the spread of fire in or on, said premises, building or structure or endanger life or property.
2. Conditions, which interfere with the efficient operation of any, fire protection equipment and system.
3. Obstruction to or on fire escapes, stairs, passageways, doors or windows, liable to interfere with the egress of occupants or the operation of the Fire Department in case of fire.
4. Accumulations of dust or waste material in air conditioning or ventilating systems, or grease in kitchen or other exhaust ducts.
5. Accumulations of grease on kitchen cooking equipment, or oil, grease or dirt upon, under or around any mechanical equipment.
6. Accumulations of rubbish, waste, paper, boxes, shavings, or other combustible materials, or excessive storage of any combustible material.
7. Hazardous conditions arising from defective or improperly used or installed electrical wiring, equipment or appliances.
8. Hazardous conditions arising from defective or improperly installed equipment for handling or using combustible, explosive or otherwise hazardous materials.
9. Dangerous or unlawful amounts of combustible, explosive or otherwise hazardous materials.
10. All equipment, materials, processes or operations, which are in violation of the provisions and intent of this code.
11. Overcrowded conditions caused by permitting the posted maximum occupant load to be exceeded.
12. Locked or inoperative designated fire exits.



**F-110.2 Maintenance.** The owner shall be responsible for the safe and proper maintenance of the structure, premises or lot at all times. In existing structures, the fire protection equipment systems or devices, means of egress and safeguards required by this code or a previous statute, code or other District of Columbia municipal regulation, shall be maintained in good working order.

**F-110.2.1 Occupant Responsibility.** If an owner, tenant or other legitimate occupant of a structure creates conditions in violation of this code by virtue of storage, handling and use of substances, materials, devices and appliances, the owner, tenant or occupant shall be held responsible for the abatement of said hazardous conditions.

**F-110.3 Unsafe Conditions.** All structures or existing equipment that are or hereafter become unsafe or deficient in adequate means of egress facilities, or which constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or by reason of illegal or improper use or occupancy or inadequate maintenance, or which sustained significant structural damage by reason of fire, explosion, or natural disaster, shall be deemed an unsafe condition. A vacant structure, or portion thereof, unguarded or open at the door or window, shall be deemed a fire hazard and unsafe within the meaning of this code. Unsafe structures or equipment shall be reported to the building official who shall take appropriate action as deemed necessary under the provisions of the building code listed in Chapter 45 to secure abatement by repair or by demolition.

**F-110.3.1 Special Measures.** Temporary special fire protection measures shall be taken when adequate fire protection is not being provided or hazardous or dangerous conditions exist. Installation of special fire protection equipment is one of the available special measures. Special fire protection equipment shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this code and the building code listed in Chapter 45.

## **SECTION F-111 EMERGENCY MEASURES**

**F-111.1 Evacuation.** When, in the opinion of the code official, there is imminent danger to the occupants or those in the proximity of any structure or premises because of unsafe structural conditions, or inadequacy of any means of egress, or the presence of explosives, explosive fumes or vapors, or the presence of toxic fumes, gases or materials, the code official shall order the immediate evacuation of said structure or premises. All of the occupants so notified shall immediately leave the structure or premises and persons shall not enter or re-enter until authorized to do so by the code official.

**F-111.2. Unlawful Continuance.** Any person who shall refuse to leave, interfere with the evacuation of other occupants or continue any operation after having been given an evacuation order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor.

## **SECTION F-112 VIOLATIONS**

**F-112.1 Notice of Violation.** Whenever the code official observes an apparent or actual violation of a provision of this code or other codes or ordinances under the code official's jurisdiction, the code official shall prepare a written notice of violation citing the relevant code section, describing the conditions deemed unsafe and specifying time limits for the re-inspection of same to insure that the required repairs or improvements have been made to render the structure or premises safe and secure.

**F-112.1.1 Service.** A notice of violation issued pursuant to this code shall be served upon the owner, operator, occupant, or other person responsible for the condition or violation, either by personal service, mail, or by delivering the same to, and leaving it at the premises, with a person of responsibility over sixteen (16) years old residing or employed therein. For unattended or abandoned locations, a copy of such notice of violation shall be posted on the premises in a conspicuous place at or near the entrance to such premises and the notice of violation shall be mailed by certified mail with return receipt requested or a certificate of mailing, to the last known address of the owner, occupant or both.

**F-112.1.2 Revocation of Notice.** If the owner, tenant or occupant of a building, or any person chargeable hereunder, is aggrieved by an order issued under the authority of Section 110.0, and undue hardship would result from following appeals process of Section 113.0, he or she may, within seventy-two (72) hours from the time such order is issued (excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays), appeal from such order to the code official. Unless said order is revoked or suspended by the code official, it shall remain in force and be forthwith complied with.

**F-112.1.3 Notification of Residential Tenants.** The code official shall notify the occupants of dwelling units, in buildings where a written notice issued, by affixing two (2) copies thereof in a conspicuous place at the principal entrance of the building, as well as, one (1) copy in a conspicuous place in the area where tenant mail boxes are located.

**F-112.1.4 Failure to Issue a Notice.** Issuance of a notice of violation pursuant to this subsection is at the discretion of the code official. Failure to give a notice of violation shall not be a bar to any criminal prosecution, civil action, or civil infraction proceeding brought under this code.

**F-112.2 Failure to Correct Violations.** If the notice of violation is not complied with as specified by the code official, the code official shall, first, issue a collateral citation, then if violations are not corrected as specified, request the Corporation Counsel to institute the appropriate legal proceedings to restrain, correct or abate such violation or to require removal or termination of the unlawful use of the building or structure in violation of the provisions of this code or of any order or direction made pursuant thereto. The police department shall be requested by the code official to make arrests for any offense against this code or orders of the code official affecting the immediate safety of the public.

**F-112.3 Penalty for Violations.** Any person, firm, or corporation violating any of the provisions of this code or failing to comply with any order issued pursuant to any section thereof,

upon conviction thereof shall be punished by a fine of not more than three hundred dollars (\$300) or imprisonment for not more than ninety (90) days, or both. Each day that a violation continues, after a service of notice as provided in this code shall be deemed a separate offense.

**F-112.4 Civil Infractions.** Civil fines, penalties, and fees may be imposed as alternative sanctions for any infraction of the provisions of this code, or any rules or regulations issued under authority of this code or pursuant to Title I-III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, D.C. Law 6-42, D.C. Code, sec. 6-2700 et seq.

**F-112.5 Unsafe Conditions.** When any owner or occupant fails or refuses to comply with an order issued under section 110.0, and when in the opinion of the code official, there exists an actual or potential danger to life, the code official has the authority to order the immediate evacuation of such building or part thereof until such condition is remedied.

**F-112.6 Abatement of Violations.** The imposition of the penalties herein described shall not prevent the Corporation Counsel from instituting appropriate action to prevent unlawful construction or to restrain, correct, or abate a violation; or to prevent illegal occupancy of a structure or premises; or to stop an illegal act, illegal conduct of business or illegal occupancy of a structure on or about any premises.

**F-112.7 Obstruction or Interference:** Any owner, tenant or occupant of any building or premises, or other person chargeable under the authority of this code, who is convicted of willfully obstructing or interfering with the code official in the performance of the code official's duties, shall be punished by a fine of not more than \$300, or imprisonment for not more than ninety (90) days or both.

## **SECTION F-113 MEANS OF APPEALS**

**F-113.1 Appeals within the Department.** The owner of a building or structure or any person suffering a legal wrong or adversely affected or aggrieved by an action of the code official, may initiate an appeal within the Department, from a stop work order, official interpretation, refusal to grant an approval or modification, or from the issuance or denial of a permit. Claimants shall appeal using a form provided by the code official, on which they shall state the grounds for the appeal. The appeal shall be filed within 15 days from the date of the wrong, order, interpretation, denial of approval or modification, or permit being appealed.

**F-113.1.1 Action on Appeal.** Within three (3) working days of receipt of the appeals form, the reviewing official shall affirm, modify, or reverse the previous action or decision. If the reviewing official affirms or modifies the previous action or decision, the claimant may request a review of the matter by the code official. Further, if the reviewing official does not act upon the appeal within the three working day period, the decision will be deemed affirmed and the claimant may proceed to request review by the code official. The code official will act on the request within an additional three (3) working days. The decision of the code official shall be the final decision of the Department. If the code official does not act within the three working day period, or

denies the appeal, the claimant may appeal the matter directly to the Board of Appeals and Review.

**F-113.1.2 Official Notice of Action.** The official inspector, or other person whose action or decision is being appealed shall provide the claimant written notice of the action or decision, which shall state at a minimum the name of the claimant, address of the property in question, nature of violation or non-compliance, section of the Construction Codes providing the basis for the action or decision taken, and the reviewing official within the Department to whom the appeal should be taken.

**F-113.2 Appeal to Board of Appeals and Review.** The owner of a building or structure or any person suffering a legal wrong or adversely affected or aggrieved by a final decision of the code official as set forth above in §113.1 may appeal to the D.C. Board of Appeals and Review. The appeal shall specify that the Construction Codes or the rules legally adopted there under have been incorrectly interpreted or applied, the provisions of the Construction Codes do not fully apply, or an equally good or better form of construction can be used.

**F-113.2.1 Hearings.** All hearings before the Board of Appeals and Review shall be held in accordance with the rules of procedure of that Board.

**F-113.2.2 Enforcement of Decision.** The code official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the Board of Appeals and Review.

**F-113.4 Limitations on Authority.** An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of the Fire Prevention Code or the rules legally adopted there under have been incorrectly interpreted, that the provisions of the Fire Prevention Code do not fully apply, or that an equally good or better form of construction can be used.

## **SECTION F-114 STOP WORK OR**

**F-114.1 Order.** Whenever the code official finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the code official is authorized to issue a stop work order.

**F-114.2 Issuance.** A stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, or to the owner's agent, or to the person doing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order, and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

**F-114.3 Emergencies.** Where an emergency exists, the code official shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work, but shall follow-up with a written stop work order within 24 hours.

**F-114.4 Failure to comply.** Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a

violation or unsafe condition, shall be liable to a fine of not more than \$300, or imprisonment for not more than ninety (90) days, or both.

## **CHAPTER 3H GENERAL PRECAUTIONS AGAINST FIRE**

### **SECTION F-307 OPEN BURNING**

*Revise Section F-307.5 to read as follows:*

**F-307.5 Open-flame cooking devices.** Charcoal burners and other open-flame cooking devices shall not be operated on balconies or within 10 feet (3048mm) of combustible construction.

### **SECTION F-308 OPEN FLAMES**

*Revise Section F-308.3 to read as follows:*

**F-308.3 Open flame.** A person shall not utilize or allow to be utilized, an open flame in connection with a public meeting or gathering for purposes of deliberation, entertainment, amusement, instruction, education, recreation, awaiting transportation or similar purpose in assembly or educational occupancies without first obtaining a permit in accordance with Section 105.

**Exception:** Religious ceremonies

*Revise Section F-308.3.4 to read as follows:*

**F-308.3.4 Religious ceremonies.** When in the opinion of the code official, adequate safeguards have been taken, participants in religious ceremonies are allowed to carry hand-held candles.

### **SECTION F-314 INDOOR DISPLAYS**

*Add Section F-314.5 to read as follows:*

**F-314.5 Exhibit Booths.** Exhibit booths shall conform to the following:

1. In buildings which are protected by automatic sprinklers, covered exhibit booths shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 13 listed in Chapter 44.
2. Each enclosed or covered area must be protected by an audible smoke detector. This includes storage closets built into the exhibit.
3. Each enclosed or covered area must display a charged fire extinguisher with a minimum rating of 2A20BC.

4. The maximum occupancy of the load bearing area(s) in a multi-story exhibit shall be limited to one person per 15 square feet (1.4m<sup>2</sup>) of net floor space, not to exceed a total of twenty-five persons. This maximum occupancy must be posted.
5. There should be not less than two means of egress from load bearing areas in a multi-story exhibit or from each occupied area of a covered assembly area.

**F-314.5.1 Fire Prevention Attendant.** In buildings used for temporary exhibits, and which are not protected by automatic sprinklers, a fire protection attendant shall be provided by the exhibitor and shall be on duty at all times that the building is unoccupied, from the time that the enclosure is completed until the time that the enclosure is dismantled.

**F-314.5.2 Vehicles and Boats.** Vehicles, boats and similar exhibited products having over 100 square feet (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of roofed area shall be provided with smoke detectors.

## **CHAPTER 5H FIRE SERVICE FEATURES**

### **SECTION F-503 FIRE APPARATUS ACCESS ROADS**

*Delete Section F-504.3 in its entirety.*

### **SECTION F-505 PREMISES IDENTIFICATION**

*Add exception to Section F-505.1 to read as follows:*

**Exception:** Numbers within 25 feet (7.62 m) of the curb shall be a minimum of 3" high.

### **SECTION F-508 FIRE PROTECTION WATER SUPPLIES**

*Delete Sections and subsections F-508.1 through F-508.5.2 in their entirety.*

### **SECTION F-508 FIRE COMMAND CENTER**

*Delete Section F-509 in its entirety.*



## **CHAPTER 6H BUILDING SERVICES AND SYSTEMS**

### **SECTION F-603 FUEL-FIRED APPLIANCES**

*Revise Section F-603.4 to read as follows:*

**F-603.4 Portable unvented heaters.** Portable unvented fuel fired heating equipment shall be prohibited in occupancies in Groups A, E, I, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4.

**Exception:** Portable stoves or space heaters that are new and have not been fueled are permitted to be stored in occupied buildings or structures. "Not fueled" as used in this exception, shall mean that liquid fuel has never been placed in the appliance or that the gas container has not been connected to the appliance.

### **SECTION F-604 EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS**

*Revise Section F-604.1 to read as follows:*

**F-604.1 Maintenance and Inspection.** Emergency and standby power systems shall be maintained and inspected in accordance with the ICC *Electrical Code*. NFPA 110 and NFPA 111 and Sections F-604.3 through F-604.5. Existing installations shall be maintained in accordance with the original approval.

*Delete Section F-604.1.1 in its entirety.*

*Delete Section F-604.2 in its entirety.*

### **SECTION F-606 MECHANICAL REFRIGERATION**

*Delete Sections F-606.1 through F-606.4 in their entirety.*

*Delete Sections F-606.7 through F-606.9 in their entirety.*

*Delete Sections F-606.11 through F-606.12 in their entirety.*

### **SECTION F-607 ELEVATOR RECALL AND MAINTENANCE**

*Delete Section F-607 in its entirety.*

### **SECTION F-608 STATIONARY LEAD-ACID BATTERY SYSTEMS**

*Delete Section F-608.3 in its entirety.*

*Delete Section F-608.5 in its entirety.*

*Delete Sections F-608.7 through F-608.8 in their entirety.*

**SECTION F-609 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS**

*Delete Section F-609 in its entirety.*

## **CHAPTER 7H FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION**

### **SECTION F-704 FLOOR OPENINGS AND SHAFTS**

*Delete Section F-704 in its entirety.*

## **CHAPTER 9H FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS**

### **SECTION F-901 GENERAL**

*Revise Section F-901.1 to read as follows:*

**F-901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the inspection, operation, testing and maintenance of all fire protection systems.

*Delete Sections F-901.2 through F-901.3 in their entirety.*

### **SECTION F-902 DEFINITIONS**

*Add the following Definitions:*

**Building Code Official.** For the purposes of this chapter, the Director of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

**Code Official.** For the purposes of this Chapter, the Director of the Department of Consumer and Regulator Affairs.

### **SECTION F-903 AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS**

*Delete Sections F-903.1 through F-903.6 except for Table F-903.2.15 and substitute the following.*

**F-903.1 General.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with the requirements of Section 903 of the IBC.

### **SECTION F-904 ALTERNATIVE AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS**

*Revise Section F-904.1 to read as follows:*

**F-904.1 General.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, other than automatic sprinkler systems, shall be inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this section and the applicable referenced standards.

*Delete Sections F-904.2 through F-904.3 in their entirety.*

*Revise Section F-904.5 to read as follows:*

F-904.5 Wet-chemical systems. Wet-chemical extinguishing systems shall be maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17A and their listing.

*Revise Section F-904.6 to read as follows:*

**F-904.6 Dry-chemical systems.** Dry-chemical extinguishing systems shall be maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17 and their listing.

*Revise Section F-904.7 to read as follows:*

F-904.7 Foam systems. Foam extinguishing systems shall be maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 11, NFPA 11A and NFPA 16 and their listing.

*Revise Section F-904.8 to read as follows:*

**F-904.8 Carbon dioxide systems.** Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems shall be maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 12 and their listing.

*Revise Section F-904.9 to read as follows:*

**F-904.9 Halon systems.** Halogenated extinguishing systems shall be maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 12A and their listing.

*Revise Section F-904.10 to read as follows:*

**F-904.10 Clean-agent systems.** Clean-agent fire extinguishing systems shall be maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 2001 and their listing.

*Delete Sections F-904.11 through F-904.11.4.1.*

## **SECTION F-905 STANDPIPE SYSTEMS**

*Delete Sections F-905.1 through F-905.10 in their entirety.*

*Revise Section F-905.11 to read as follows:*

**F-905.11 Existing buildings.** Existing structures not complying with the minimum requirements of the *Building Code* with occupied floors more than 75 feet (22,860 mm) above or below the lowest level of fire department access shall be equipped with standpipes installed in accordance with Section F-905. The standpipes shall have an approved fire department connection with hose connections at each floor level above or below the lowest level of fire department access. The code official is authorized to approve the installation of manual

standpipe systems to achieve compliance with this section where the responding fire department is capable of providing the required hose flow at the highest standpipe outlet.

## **SECTION F-907 FIRE ALARM DETECTION SYSTEMS**

*Delete Section F-907.1 through F-907.2 in their entirety.*

*Revise Section F-907.3.1.5.1 and F-907.3.1.5.2 to read as follows:*

**F-907.3.1.5.1 General.** Existing Group R occupancies not already provided with single-station smoke alarms shall be provided with approved single-station smoke alarms. Installation shall be in accordance with the following:

**F-907.3.1.5.2 Installation.** Approved single-station smoke alarms shall be installed in existing dwelling units, congregate residences, and hotel and lodging house guestrooms as follows:

**F-907.3.1.5.2.1 Group R-1 and R-4 occupancies.** Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in all of the following locations in Group R-1 or R-4:

1. In sleeping areas.
2. In every room in the path of the means of egress from the sleeping area to the door leading from the guestroom or suite.
3. In each story within the guestroom or suite, including basements. For guestrooms or suites with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

**F-907.3.1.5.2.2 Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies.** Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained on the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.

*Delete Sections F-907.4 through F-907.19 in their entirety.*

## **SECTION F-908 EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS**

*Add new Section F-908.0 to read as follows:*

**F-908.0 General.** The system described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with design, construction, installation, or use, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **SECTION F-909 SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS**

*Delete Sections F-909.1 through F-909.20.3 in their entirety.*

## **SECTION F-910 SMOKE AND HEAT VENTS**

*Delete Section F-910 in its entirety without substitution.*

## **SECTION F-912 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS**

*Delete Sections F-912.1 through F-912.2.1.*

*Delete Section F-912.5 in its entirety.*

## **SECTION F-913 FIRE PUMPS**

*Delete Sections F-913.1 through F-913.4.1 in their entirety.*

*Delete Section F-913.5.1 in its entirety.*

## **CHAPTER 10H MEANS OF EGRESS**

Delete Sections F-1001 through F-1010 in their entirety.

### **SECTION F-1011 MAINTENANCE OF THE MEANS OF EGRESS**

*Add Sections F-1011.5 and F-1011.6 to read as follows:*

**F-1011.5 Posting of occupant load.** An assembly occupancy shall be posted with an approved legible sign in contrasting colors conspicuously located near the main point of egress from the room or space stating the number of occupants permitted within such space. The number of occupants permitted shall be determined in accordance with the building code listed in Chapter 45. Assembly rooms or spaces with multiple occupancy capabilities shall be posted for such occupancies. The *owner* shall be responsible for installing and maintaining such signs.

**F-1011.6 Overcrowding.** A *person* shall not permit overcrowding or admittance of any *person* beyond the approved occupant load. The code official, upon finding overcrowded conditions or obstruction in aisles, passageways or other *means of egress*, or upon finding any condition which constitutes a hazard to life and safety, shall cause the occupancy, performance, presentation, spectacle or entertainment to be stopped until such a condition or obstruction is corrected and the addition of any further occupants prohibited until the approved occupant load is reestablished.

Operator responsibility. The owner or the operator or the *person* responsible for the operation of an assembly or educational occupancy shall check egress facilities before such building is occupied to determine compliance with this section. If such inspection reveals that any element of the required *means of egress* cannot be accessed, is obstructed, locked, fastened or otherwise unsuited for immediate utilization, admittance to the building shall not be permitted until necessary corrective action has been completed.

*Add new Section F-1012 to read as follows:*

### **SECTION F-1012 EMERGENCY ESCAPE WINDOWS**

**F-1012.1 Maintenance.** All required emergency escape windows and doors shall be maintained operational and available to occupants of sleeping rooms.

**F-1012.2 Security.** Bars, grilles or screens placed over emergency escape windows shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the window.

*Add Section F-1013 to read as follows:*

### **SECTION F-1013 STAIR IDENTIFICATION**

**F-1013.1 Stair identification.** The interior and exterior of all stairway doors connecting more than three stories shall be provided with signage as required by Section 1005.3.2.4 through 1005.3.2.4.2 of the *District of Columbia Building Code*.



## **CHAPTER 12H DRY CLEANING**

### **SECTION F-1201 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-1201.0 to read as follows:*

**F-1201.0 Scope.** The special use, equipment, or occupancy described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with construction, installation, use, or occupancy, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **CHAPTER 14H FIRE SAFETY DURING CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION**

### **SECTION F-1401 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-1401.3 to read as follows:*

**F-1401.3 Occupied buildings.** Existing buildings or portions hereof undergoing alteration or repair are permitted to remain occupied providing fire protection measures and means of egress are provided and maintained.

*Delete Section F-1413.1 in its entirety.*

## **CHAPTER 15H FLAMMABLE FINISHES**

### **SECTION F-1501 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-1501.0 to read as follows:*

**F-1501.0 Scope.** The special use, equipment, or occupancy described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with construction, installation, use, or occupancy, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **CHAPTER 22H SERVICE STATIONS AND REPAIR GARAGES**

### **SECTION F-2201 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-2201.0 to read as follows:*

**F-2201.0 Scope.** The special use, equipment, or occupancy described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with construction, installation, use, or occupancy, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **CHAPTER 24H TENTS AND OTHER MEMBRANE STRUCTURES**

### **SECTION F-2401 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-2401.0 to read as follows:*

**F-2401.0 Scope.** The special use, equipment, or occupancy described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with construction, installation, use, or occupancy, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **CHAPTER 25H TIRE REBUILDING AND TIRE STORAGE**

### **SECTION F-2501 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-2501.0 to read as follows:*

**F-2501.0 Scope.** The special use, equipment, or occupancy described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with construction, installation, use, or occupancy, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **CHAPTER 26H WELDING AND OTHER HOT WORK**

**SECTION F-2601 GENERAL**

*Add new Section F-2601.0 to read as follows:*

**F-2601.0 Scope.** The special use, equipment, or occupancy described in this chapter shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC. Enforcement of the design and construction shall be under the IBC. Maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance the provisions of both the IBC and the IFC and shall be enforced under the IFC. Before proceeding with construction, installation, use, or occupancy, a coordination meeting of all concerned parties shall be held to determine the applicable code requirements.

## **CHAPTER 33H EXPLOSIVES AND FIREWORKS**

*Add new Section F-3309 to read as follows:*

### **SECTION F-3309 FIREWORKS**

#### **F-3309.1 General**

**F-3309.1.1 Scope.** The manufacture of fireworks is prohibited in the District of Columbia. The display, sale or discharge of fireworks shall comply with the requirements of this article.

**F-3309.1.1.1 Prohibited Fireworks.** The manufacture, possession, storage, display, sale, setting off, or discharge of any fireworks listed below is prohibited in the District of Columbia:

1. Firecrackers of any kind or description;
2. Any fireworks that explodes, such as cherry bombs, salutes, roman candles, floral shells, artillery shells;
3. Any firework intended to move after the piece is placed and fired; such as bottle rockets, parachutes, buzzbombs, pinwheels, helicopters, jumping jacks;
4. Sparklers more than 20 inches (508 mm) in length;
5. Any firework that contains mercury, arsenic tetryl, phosphorous, sulphocyanide, mercury, magnesium, potassium picrate, gallic acid, chlorate compounds, gunpowder, sulphur, chlorate or potash and sugar, or any highly oxidizing agent;
6. Any firework having a side fuse, or a fuse inserted at any point along the length of the firework; and
7. Any firework found by the Fire Chief to be dangerous to the safety of any person or property.

**F-3309.1.1.2 Permitted Fireworks.** The following fireworks are permitted to be stored, displayed, sold, delivered, used and possessed in accordance with the provisions of this article:

1. Any firework specifically excepted in this article;

2. Toy paper caps containing not more than twenty-five hundredths (0.25) of a grain of explosive composition per cap;
3. Sparklers not more than 20 inches (508 mm) in length;
4. Torches;
5. Box fire;
6. Fountains;
7. Cones;
8. Non-poisonous snakes;
9. Paper novelty items;
10. Colored lights; and
11. Any other fireworks tested by an approved agency or organization and approved by the code official.

**F-3309.1.1.3 Labeling.** Each standard retail package or retail item of fireworks stored, kept for sale, sold, or delivered by any person engaged in the business of selling fireworks shall be labeled or marked with the name of the manufacturer, the number and type of the firework, and directions of use.

## **F-3309.2 Limitations and Requirements for Permitted Fireworks**

**F-3309.2.1 Prohibitions.** No person shall manufacture, process, package, repackage, store, keep for sale, display, sell or deliver any of the following in the District of Columbia:

1. Any firework which emits flame or sparks to a distance greater than 12 feet (3658 mm);
2. Any imitation or actual firework which resembles a firecracker or cherry bomb;
3. Any firework that has a fuse which is not individually protected by a protective cap or seal approved by the Fire Chief or the designated agent of the Fire Chief; or
4. Any cylindrical tube firework that has a clay choke or other restrictive device which may delay the escape of gases.

**F-3309.2.2 Cylindrical Tube Fireworks.** Cylindrical tube fireworks that comply with the following requirements are permitted to be sold or offered for sale in the District of Columbia:

1. The top surface of the composition load shall be flat (parallel to the plane of the tube end);
2. The space between the top surface and the open end of the tube shall be equal in all diameters to the maximum inside diameter of the tube, without restrictions of any kind;
3. Between the lower end of the composition load and the base of the tube there shall be a solid clay plug with a minimum length of 1 inch (25 mm);
4. The plug shall be formed of clay moistened with oil, dextrine, or other material suitable to give uniform hardness and strength and to ensure positive adhesion to the inside of the tube;
5. There shall be no void between the end of the composition load and the clay plug, or between the clay plug and the handle or spike;
6. The specifications for the manufacture of the firework shall require the clay plug to be loaded into the tube in not less than four (4) increments, each separately loaded and separately pressed;
7. Handles or spikes shall be inserted into the tube a minimum distance of 2 inches (51 mm) or 25 percent of the tube length in tubes less than 5 inches (152 mm) long; and
8. The spike or handle shall be firmly attached to the clay base and to the sides of the tube.

### **F-3309.3 Application for License to Sell Fireworks**

**F-3309.3.1 License Approvals Required.** No license shall be issued to any person to engage in the business of selling any fireworks, either at wholesale or at retail, until the application for that license has been approved by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

**F-3309.3.2 Appointment of Attorney.** In the application for any license under this section, the applicant shall appoint the Mayor as the applicant's true and lawful attorney upon whom may be served any judicial and other processes or legal notices directed to the applicant in any action or proceeding against the applicant growing out of his or her agreement that any process or notice which is so served shall be of the same legal force and validity as if served personally in the District.

**F-3309.3.2.1 Process under Section F-3309.3.2.** No process or notice shall be served under the provisions of Section F-3309.3.2 upon an individual residing in the District of Columbia or upon any domestic corporation under the District of Columbia Business Corporation Act (D.C. Code, Title 29, Chapter 9), or upon any foreign corporation having a registered agent in the District of Columbia under the provisions of that Act.

**F-3309.3.2.2 Conditions for Section F-3309.3.2.** The provisions of Section F-3309.3.2 shall not be operative unless and until all the following have occurred:

1. At least one (1) bona fide effort has been made to serve the process or notice in a manner otherwise provided by law; and
2. The initial effort to serve the process or notice has proved unsuccessful and a notarized statement to that effect is presented to the Mayor at the time of service of process or notice to the Mayor, together with the payment of the fee required under Section F-3309.3.2.3.

**F-3309.3.2.3 Fee Under Section F-3309.3.2.1.** A fee of \$2.00 shall be paid for each process or notice sought to be served on a licensee under Section F-3309.3.2.

**F-3309.3.2.4 Forwarding of Process or Notice.** Upon payment of the fee required by Section F-3309.3.2.3, the Mayor shall forward the process or notice by registered or certified mail return receipt requested, to the licensee at the address given by the licensee on the application for a license.

#### **F-3309.4 License to Sell Fireworks: Wholesale**

**F-3309.4.1 Wholesale License Required.** No person shall engage in the business of selling or offering to sell at wholesale in the District of Columbia any of the permitted fireworks described in Section F-3309.1.1.2 without first securing a wholesaler's license to sell fireworks from the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

**F-3309.4.2 Minimum Age.** No individual shall be issued a wholesaler's license unless the applicant has passed his or her twenty-first (21st) birthday.

**F-3309.4.3 Deadline for applications.** All applications for a wholesale license to sell fireworks shall be submitted to the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs no later than May 25 for the sale of fireworks during the same calendar year. This license must be renewed annually.

**F-3309.4.4 License conditions.** All wholesale license applicants shall:

1. Maintain for the period of the license issued to him or her a depot or warehouse in the District of Columbia in which all fireworks shall be kept for inspection by the Fire Chief prior to shipment to any retail licensee, for a period of at least twenty-

four (24) hours from June 20 through July 5, inclusive and for a period of at least three (3) business days at all other times; or

2. Submit to inspection of the entire contents of each wholesale shipment, at a site to be determined by the Fire Chief, prior to distribution to any retail licensee.

**F-3309.4.5 Warehouse inspections.** Each wholesale licensee applicant who maintains a warehouse or depot in the District of Columbia shall notify the Fire Chief of each shipment received or deposited at the warehouse or depot. Said notice shall be furnished not less than three (3) business days before the date on which the fireworks are delivered to any retail licensee.

**F-3309.4.6 Non-warehouse inspections.** Each wholesale licensee applicant who does not maintain a warehouse or depot in the District of Columbia is required to provide advance notice of at least three (3) business days to schedule appointments for inspection. All inspections shall be conducted by appointment only, during hours to be determined by the Fire Chief and at a site to be provided by the District of Columbia, except that from June 28 through July 4, inclusive, wholesale licensee applicants shall provide advance notice of at least 24 hours. Inspections will be scheduled between the hours of 10:00 am and 2:00 pm.

**F-3309.4.6.1 No storage of fireworks on site.** The site provided by the District of Columbia for inspections shall not be used to store, sell or distribute fireworks. Fireworks shall be removed from the inspection site immediately following completion of the inspection.

**F-3309.4.6.2 Inclement weather.** Inspections may be conducted outside. In an event of inclement weather, the applicant has the option to either rescheduling the inspection for a later date or providing, at his or her own expense, a tarp or other means of protection for the fireworks during such inspection.

**F-3309.4.6. Unloading and Reloading of Fireworks.** It is the applicant's responsibility to provide sufficient labor to unload and reload each fireworks shipment, as shall be required for inspection. The inspectors shall not participate in unloading or reloading fireworks.

**F-3309.4.6.4 Voucher issued.** After the fireworks have been inspected and approved, the Fire Chief shall issue to the wholesale licensee a voucher, which shall be carried on the vehicle used to transport wholesale fireworks at all times.

**F-3309.4.7 Overnight storage.** No wholesale fireworks shall be stored overnight in the District of Columbia except in a warehouse, depot or other facility pursuant to a permit issued by the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs for such purposes. For the purposes of this section, overnight shall be defined as the hours between 8:00 p.m. to 5:00 a.m. All wholesale fireworks that are not stored in an approved location are required to be removed from the jurisdiction.



**F-3309.4.8 Restrictions on deliveries.** No wholesale licensee shall make deliveries to retail sale location during rush hour. For the purposes of this section, rush hour shall be defined as the hours between 6:30 a.m. and 9:30 a.m. and between 3:30 p.m. and 6:30 p.m. daily, except Saturdays, Sundays and legal holidays.

**F-3309.4.9 Vehicle standards.** In the interest of public safety, all vehicles transporting wholesale fireworks shall meet the following standards.

1. All vehicles used to transport or distribute wholesale fireworks shall be placarded to indicate their contents;
2. A 2A20 BC fire extinguisher shall be carried in the cab of each vehicle;
3. Tractor-trailer trucks in excess of twenty (20) feet in length and straight trucks in excess of eighteen (18) feet in length shall not be used to transport wholesale fireworks within the District of Columbia.

**F-3309.4.10 Wholesaler's records.** Each wholesaler licensee shall maintain full and complete records of all purchases and sales of fireworks. The Fire Chief is authorized to examine the books and records of any wholesale licensee with respect to purchases and sales of fireworks.

**F-3309.4.11 Other fireworks prohibited.** No person licensed under this section shall store, keep for sale, deliver, or display any fireworks other than those authorized by the article.

**F-3309.4.12 Sample required.** Persons engaged in the business of selling or offering to sell fireworks at wholesale shall submit to the Fire Chief at least three (3) samples of each firework proposed to be sold or delivered by the wholesaler, together with complete specifications and a chemical analysis for each firework. These samples shall be submitted to the Office of the Fire Marshal no later than February first of each year.

## **F-3309.5 License to Sell Fireworks Retail**

**F-3309.5.1 Retail License Required.** No person shall engage in the business of selling or offering to sell at retail in the District of Columbia any of the fireworks described in Section F-3309.1.1.2 without first securing a fireworks retailer's license from the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

**F-3309.5.2 Sale From Fixed Locations.** Retailer's licenses will be issued to persons for the sale of fireworks only from a fixed location.

**F-3309.5.3 Retail Sale of Fireworks.** All fireworks for retail sale in the District of Columbia shall be purchased in the District of Columbia from a licensed fireworks wholesaler.

**F-3309.5.4 Retailer's Records.** Each retail licensee shall maintain full and complete records of all purchases of fireworks.

**F-3309.5.5 Permit Required.** Each retailer shall obtain a permit from the Fire Chief to ensure the proper storage of fireworks.

#### **F-3309.6 Additional Safety Requirements for Fireworks**

**F-3309.6.1 Prohibitions Near Flammable Materials.** No person shall sell, handle, store, or discharge any fireworks within 50 feet (15240 mm) of any gasoline pump, fill line, vent line, or any building where flammable liquids are stored or handled.

**F-3309.6.2 Places Where Discharge Prohibited.** No person shall discharge fireworks within 50 feet (15240 mm) of a place where fireworks are stored, handled, or sold.

**F-3309.6.3 Removal or Relocation.** If the Fire Chief finds that fireworks are stored or displayed in any of the following ways, the Fire Chief is authorized to issue written orders to the licensee to remove or relocate that storage or display.

1. In a location that would impede egress from the premises in the event of a fire;
2. In close proximity to a source of possible ignition; or
3. In any other manner that is dangerous to persons or property.

**F-3309.6.4 No Smoking Signs.** No smoking signs that comply with Section 3102.3 shall be posted at all retail firework stands.

**F-3309.6.5 Fire Extinguishers.** At least one fire extinguisher with a minimum rating of 2A shall be installed in each retail fireworks stand. The fire extinguisher shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 10.

#### **F-3309.7 Seizure of Fireworks**

**F-3309.7.1 Fireworks Subject to Seizure.** All fireworks sold, offered for sale, stored, processed, or transported in violation of this article shall be subject to seizure by the Fire Chief.

**F-3309.7.2 Impounding.** The Fire Chief shall impound all seized fireworks in a place under such conditions that will reduce as much as reasonably possible any threat from those impounded fireworks to the safety of any person or property.

**F-3309.7.3 Notice to Destroy or Transport.** At the time of seizure, the Fire Chief shall issue a written notice to the owner of the fireworks or the owner's agent stating that all seized fireworks shall be destroyed 30 days from the date of the notice. All seized

fireworks approved for sale in the District of Columbia shall be returned provided the owner of the fireworks or the owner's agent can make arrangements satisfactory to the Fire Chief within 30 days from the date of the notice to properly transport the permitted fireworks to an approved location.

**F-3309.7.3.1 Destruction of Fireworks.** If the arrangements required under Section F-3309.7.3 are not made within 30 days from the date on which written notice is given by the Fire Chief to the owner of the fireworks or the owner's agent, the Fire Chief shall destroy or order the destruction of the seized fireworks in a manner that reasonably avoids danger to any person or property.

## **CHAPTER 38H LIQUIFIED PETROLEUM GASES**

### **SECTION F-3801 GENERAL**

*Delete Section F-3801.2 in its entirety and substitute the following:*

**F-3801.2 Permits.** Permits shall be required for any of the following:

1. Each permanent installation irrespective of the size of containers.
2. The storage of any number of portable containers awaiting use, refill, or sale having a combined total of 60 pounds or more.
3. Any commercial cooking use.
4. Vending stands, vending carts or vehicles.
5. Tanks larger than 5 pounds used inside of any buildings.

Distributors shall not fill an LP-gas container for which a permit is required unless a permit for installation has been issued for that location by the code official.

*Add Sections F-3801.5 and F-3801.6 to read as follows:*

**F-3801.5 Empty Containers:** Empty containers which have been used in LP-Gas service and partially filled containers, shall be considered as a full container.

**F-3801.6 Natural Gas:** The use of liquefied petroleum gas is prohibited wherever natural gas is available except where permitted by the code official.

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12 I ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE**

**CHAPTER 1**

**SECTION EC-101**

*Revise Section EC-101 to delete Sections 101.1, 101.2, 101.4, 101.4.1.1, 101.4.1.2, 101.4.2, 101.4.2.3.*

**SECTION EC-103.**

*Delete Section EC 103.*

**SECTION EC-104.**

*Delete Section EC 104.*

**SECTION EC-105.**

*Delete Section EC 105.*

**SECTION EC-106.**

*Delete Section EC 106.*

**SECTION EC-107.**

*Delete Section EC 107.*

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
BUILDING CODE SUPPLEMENT OF 2003  
DCMR 12J  
EXISTING BUILDINGS CODE**

**CHAPTER 1  
ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT**

***SECTION EX-101 GENERAL***

Administration and enforcement of this Code shall be governed by Chapter 1 of Title 12A of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations.

**[RESERVED]**

## **CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS**

### **SECTION EX-201 GENERAL**

**EX-201.1 Scope.** Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

**EX-201.2 Interchangeability.** Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

**EX-201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the other *Construction Codes*, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

**EX-201.4 Terms not defined.** Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this chapter, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

### **SECTION EX-202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS**

**Addition.** An extension or increase in the building area, aggregate floor area, height, or number of stories of a building or structure.

**Alteration.** Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition, including: (1) reconfiguration of any space; (2) addition or elimination of any door or window; (3) reconfiguration or extension of any system; or (4) installation of any additional equipment. Alterations are classified as Level 1, Level 2 and Level 3.

**Change of Occupancy.** A change in the purpose or level of activity within a building **or structure** that involves a change in application of the requirements of this code.

**Dangerous.** Any building or structure or any individual **structural** member with any of the structural conditions or defects described below shall be deemed dangerous:

1. The stress in a member or portion thereof, due to all factored dead and live loads, is more than one and one third the nominal strength allowed in the *Building Code* for new buildings of similar structure, purpose or location;
2. Any portion, member or appurtenance thereof likely to fail, or to become detached or dislodged, or to collapse and thereby injure persons;
3. Any portion of a building, or any member, appurtenance or ornamentation on the exterior thereof is not of sufficient strength or stability, or is not so anchored, attached or fastened

in place so as to be capable of resisting a wind pressure of two thirds of that specified in the *Building Code* for new buildings of similar structure, purpose or location without exceeding the nominal strength permitted in the *Building Code* for such buildings;

4. The building, or any portion thereof, is likely to partially or completely collapse because of (a) dilapidation, deterioration or decay; (b) construction in violation of the *Building Code*; (c) the removal, movement or instability of any portion of the ground necessary for the purpose of supporting such building; (d) the deterioration, decay or inadequacy of its foundation; (e) damage due to fire, earthquake, wind or flood; or (f) any other similar cause; or
5. The exterior walls or other vertical structural members list, lean or buckle to such an extent that a plumb line passing through the center of gravity does not fall inside the middle one third of the base.

**Equipment or Fixture.** Any plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating and fire protection equipment, and elevators, dumb waiters, escalators, boilers, pressure vessels and other mechanical facilities or installations, which are related to building services. Equipment or fixture shall not include manufacturing, production or process equipment, but shall include connections from building service to process equipment.

**Existing Building.** A building or structure that was erected and occupied or issued a certificate of occupancy at least one year before a construction permit application for renovation of that building or structure was made to DCRA.

**Fire Resistance Rating.** The fire resistance ratings of building assemblies and structural elements shall be determined in accordance Section 703 of the *Building Code*. The fire resistance rating of existing building assemblies which have not been rated in accordance with Section 703 of the *Building Code* shall be determined in accordance with the procedures set forth in *HUD Guideline of Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies*, as listed in Chapter 14.

**Flood Hazard Area.** The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1 percent or greater chance of flooding in any year; or
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

**Historic Building.** Any building or structure that is (a) listed in the State or National Register of Historic Places, (b) designated as a historic property under local or state designation, law, or survey, (c) certified as a contributing resource within a National Register listed or locally designated historic district, or (d) with an opinion or certification that the property is eligible to be listed on the National or State Registers of Historic Places either individually or as a contributing building to a historic district by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places.



**Load Bearing Element.** Any column, girder, beam, joist, truss, rafter, wall, floor or roof sheathing which supports any vertical load in addition to its own weight, and/or any lateral load.

**Rehabilitation.** Any construction work undertaken in an existing building that includes repair, renovation, modification, reconstruction, change of occupancy or addition.

**Rehabilitation, Seismic.** Work conducted to improve the seismic lateral force resistance of an existing building.

**Renovation.** The change, strengthening, or addition of load bearing elements; or the refinishing, replacing, bracing, strengthening, upgrading, or extensive repair of existing materials, elements, components, equipment, or fixtures. The term “renovation” shall not include reconfiguration of space or interior or exterior painting.

**Repair** The patching, restoration, or minor replacement of materials, elements, components, equipment, or fixtures for the purpose of maintaining these materials, elements, components, equipment, or fixtures in good or sound condition.

**Seismic Loading.** The assumed forces prescribed herein, related to the response of the structure to earthquake motions, to be used in the analysis and design of the structure and its components.

**Substantial Damage.** For the purpose of determining compliance with the flood provisions of this code, damage of any origin sustained by a structure whereby the cost of restoring the structure to its before damaged condition would equal or exceed 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the damage occurred.

**Substantial Improvement.** For the purpose of determining compliance with the flood provisions of this code, any repair, alteration, addition, or improvement of a building or structure, the cost of which equals or exceeds 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the improvement or repair is started. If the structure has sustained substantial damage, any repairs are considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual repair work performed. The term does not, however, include either:

1. Any project for improvement of a building required to correct existing health, sanitary or safety code violations identified by the code official and that are the minimum necessary to assure safe living conditions; or
- 2 Any alteration of a historic structure provided that the alteration will not preclude the structure's continued designation as a historic structure.

**Substantial Structural Damage.** A condition where:

1. In any story, the vertical elements of the lateral force resisting system, in any direction and taken as a whole, have suffered damage such that the lateral load-carrying capacity has been reduced by more than 20 percent from its pre-damaged condition; or

2. The vertical load carrying components supporting more than 30 percent of the structure's floor or roof area have suffered a reduction in vertical load carrying capacity to below 75% of the *Building Code* required strength levels calculated by either the strength or allowable stress method.

**Technically Infeasible.** An alteration of a building or a facility that has little likelihood of being accomplished because the existing structural conditions require the removal or alteration of a load-bearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame, or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces or features that are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility.

**Unsafe Buildings or Equipment.** Buildings or existing equipment that are unsanitary or deficient because of inadequate means of egress facilities, inadequate light and ventilation, or which constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or which involve illegal or improper occupancy or inadequate maintenance, shall be deemed an unsafe condition.

**Work Area.** That portion or portions of a building consisting of all repaired, altered or reconfigured spaces as indicated on the construction documents. Work area excludes other portions of the building where incidental work entailed by the intended work must be performed, and portions of the building where work not initially intended by the owner is specifically required by this code.

## **CHAPTER 3 CLASSIFICATION OF WORK**

### **SECTION EX-301 GENERAL**

**EX-301.1 Scope.** The work performed on an existing building shall be classified in accordance with this chapter.

**EX-301.2 Work area.** The work area, as defined in Chapter 2, shall be identified on the construction documents.

**EX-301.3 Compliance alternatives.** The provisions of Chapters 4 through 10 are not applicable where the building complies with Chapter 12.

**EX-301.4 Occupancy and Use.** When determining the appropriate application of the referenced sections of this code, the occupancy and use of a building shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 3 of the *Building Code*.

### **SECTION EX-302 REPAIRS**

**EX-302.1 Scope.** Repairs, as defined in Chapter 2, include the patching or restoration of materials, elements, equipment or fixtures for the purpose of maintaining such materials, elements, equipment or fixtures in good or sound condition.

**EX-302.2 Application.** Repairs shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4.

### **SECTION EX-303 ALTERATION - LEVEL 1**

**EX-303.1 Scope.** Level 1 alterations include the removal and replacement, or the covering of existing materials, elements, equipment or fixtures using new materials, elements, equipment or fixtures that serve the same purpose.

**EX-303.2 Application.** Level 1 alterations shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 5.

### **SECTION EX-304 ALTERATION - LEVEL 2**

**EX-304.1 Scope.** Level 2 alterations include the reconfiguration of space, the addition or elimination of any door or window, the reconfiguration or extension of any system, or the installation of any additional equipment.

**EX-304.2 Application.** Level 2 alterations shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 5 for Level 1 alterations as well as the provisions of Chapter 6.

### **SECTION EX-305 ALTERATION - LEVEL 3**

**EX-305.1 Scope.** Level 3 alterations apply where the work area exceeds 50% of the aggregate area of the building

**EX-305.2 Application.** Level 3 alterations shall comply with the provisions of Chapters 5 and 6 for Level 1 and 2 alterations, respectively, as well as the provisions of Chapter 7.

#### **SECTION EX-306 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY**

**EX-306.1 Scope.** Change of occupancy provisions apply where the activity is classified a change of occupancy as defined in Chapter 2.

**EX-306.2 Application.** Changes of occupancy shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 8.

#### **SECTION EX-307 ADDITIONS**

**EX-307.1 Scope.** Provisions for additions shall apply where work is classified an addition as defined in Chapter 2.

**EX-307.2 Application.** Additions to existing buildings shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 9.

#### **SECTION EX-308 HISTORIC BUILDINGS**

**EX-308.1 Scope.** Historic buildings provisions shall apply to buildings classified as historic as defined in Chapter 2.

**EX-308.2 Application.** Except as specifically provided for in Chapter 10, historic buildings shall comply with applicable provisions of this code for the type of work being performed

#### **SECTION EX-309 RELOCATED BUILDINGS**

**EX-309.1 Scope.** Relocated buildings provisions shall apply to relocated or moved buildings.

**EX-309.2 Application.** Relocated buildings shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 11.

## **CHAPTER 4 REPAIRS**

### **SECTION EX-401 GENERAL**

**EX-401.1 Scope.** Repairs, as described in Section EX-302, shall comply with the requirements of this Chapter. Repairs to historic buildings shall comply with this chapter, except as modified in Chapter 10.

**EX-401.2 Permitted materials.** Except as otherwise required herein, work shall be done using materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction or using like materials such that no hazard to life, health or property is created.

**EX-401.3 Design values for existing materials and construction:** The incorporation of existing materials, construction and detailing into the structural system shall be permitted when approved by the code official. Minimum quality levels and maximum strength values shall comply with the *Existing Buildings Code*.

**EX-401.4 Conformance.** The work shall not make the building less conforming with the building, plumbing, mechanical, fuel gas, electrical or fire codes of the District of Columbia, or with alternative materials, design and methods of construction or any previously approved plans, modifications, alternate methods or compliance alternatives, than it was before the repair was undertaken.

**EX-401.5 Flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas, repairs that constitute substantial improvement shall require that the building comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.

### **SECTION EX-402 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY**

**EX-402.1 General.** Repair of buildings, classified as special use or occupancy as described in the *Building Code*, shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

### **SECTION EX-403 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS**

**EX-403.1 Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials no longer permitted, such as asbestos and lead-based paint, shall not be used.

**EX-403.2 Glazing in hazardous locations.** Replacement glazing in hazardous locations shall comply with the Safety Glazing requirements of the *Building Code* or *Residential Code* as applicable.

**Exception:** Glass block walls, louvered windows and jalousies repaired with like materials.

### **SECTION EX-404 FIRE PROTECTION**

**EX-404.1 General.** Repairs shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of fire protection provided.

## ***SECTION EX-405 MEANS OF EGRESS***

**EX-405.1 General.** Repairs shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of protection provided for the means of egress.

## ***SECTION EX-406 ACCESSIBILITY***

**EX-406.1 General.** Repairs shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of accessibility provided.

## ***SECTION EX-407 STRUCTURAL***

**EX-407.1 General.** Repairs of structural elements shall comply with this section.

**EX-407.1.1 Seismic Design.** Seismic evaluation and design of an existing building and its components shall be based upon the assumed forces related to the response of the structure to earthquake motions,

**EX-407.1.1.1 Evaluation and design procedures.** The seismic evaluation and design of an existing building shall be based upon the procedures specified in the *Building Code*, ASCE 31-XX , or FEMA 356.

**EX-407.1.1.2 IBC level seismic forces.** When seismic forces are required to meet the *Building Code* level, they shall be based upon 100% of the values in the *Building Code* or FEMA 356. Where FEMA 356 is used, the FEMA 356 Basic Safety Objective (BSO) shall be used for buildings in Seismic Use Group I. For Buildings in other Seismic Use Groups the applicable FEMA 356 performance levels shown in Table EX-407.1.1.2 for BSE-1 and BSE-2 Earthquake Hazard Levels shall be used.

**EX-407.1.1.3 Reduced IBC level seismic forces.** When seismic forces are allowed to meet reduced *Building Code* levels, they shall be based upon 75% of the assumed forces prescribed in the *Building Code*, the applicable performance level of ASCE 31-XX as shown in Table EX-407.1.1.2, or the applicable performance level for the BSE-1 Earthquake Hazard Level of FEMA 356 shown in Table EX-407.1.1.2.

**TABLE EX-407.1.1.2**  
**IBC SEISMIC USE GROUP EQUIVALENTS TO FEMA 356**  
**AND ASCE 31-XX PERFORMANCE LEVELS (NOTE 1)**

Seismic Use Group (Based on IBC Table 1604.5)	Performance Levels of ASCE 31- XX and FEMA 356 BSE-1 Earthquake Hazard Level	Performance Levels of FEMA 356 BSE-2 Earthquake Hazard Level
I	Life Safety (LS)	Collapse Prevention (CP)
II	Note 2	Note 2
III	Immediate Occupancy (IO)	Life Safety (LS)
IV	Life Safety (LS)	Collapse Prevention (CP)

Notes :

1. The charging provisions for Seismic Use Group equivalents to ASCE 31-XX and FEMA 356 BSE-1 for Reduced *Building Code* Level Seismic Forces are in Section EX-407.1.1.3.
2. Performance Levels for Seismic Use Group II shall be taken as half way between the Performance levels specified for Seismic Use Group I and III.

**EX-407.1.2 Wind design.** Wind design of existing buildings shall be based upon the procedures specified in the *Building Code* or the *Residential Code* as applicable.

**EX-407.2 Reduction of strength.** Repairs shall not reduce the structural strength or stability of the building, structure or any individual member thereof.

**Exceptions:**

1. Such reduction shall be allowed provided the capacity is not reduced to below the *Building Code* levels.
2. In the alteration of buildings erected before July 1, 1925, the code official is authorized to allow a maximum reduction of 30 percent of the specified minimum live loads in Table 1607.1, with a minimum live load for other than residential buildings of 40 psf (1.92 kN/m<sup>2</sup>), provided official live load placards are posted showing this reduced live load.

**EX-407.3 Damaged buildings.** Damaged buildings shall be repaired in accordance with this section.

**EX-407.3.1 New structural frame members.** New structural frame members, used in the repair of damaged buildings, including anchorage and connections, shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**Exception:** For the design of new structural frame members connected to existing structural frame members, the use of reduced *Building Code* level seismic forces as specified in Section EX-407.1.1.3 shall be permitted.

**EX-407.3.2 Substantial structural damage.** Buildings which have sustained substantial structural damage shall comply with this section.

**EX-407.3.2.1 Engineering evaluation and analysis.** An engineering evaluation and analysis which establishes the structural adequacy of the damaged building shall be prepared by a registered design professional and submitted to the code official. The evaluation and analysis may assume that all damaged structural elements and systems have their original strength and stiffness. The seismic analysis shall be based upon one of the procedures specified in Section EX-407.1.1

**EX-407.3.2.1.1 Extent of repair.** The evaluation and analysis shall demonstrate that the building once repaired complies with the wind and seismic provisions of the *Building Code*.

**Exception:** The seismic design level for the repair design shall be the higher of Building Code in effect at the time of original construction and reduced *Building Code* level seismic forces as specified in Section EX-407.1.1.3.

**EX-407.3.3 Below substantial structural damage.** Repairs to buildings damaged to a level below the substantial structural damage level as defined in Section EX-202 shall be allowed to be made with the materials, methods and strengths in existence prior to the damage unless such existing conditions are dangerous as defined in Chapter 2. New structural frame members, as defined in Chapter 2, shall comply with Section EX-407.3.1.

**EX-407.3.4 Other uncovered structural elements.** Where in the course of conducting repairs, other uncovered structural elements are found to be unsound or otherwise structurally



deficient, such elements shall be made to conform to the requirements of Section EX-407.3.2.1.1.

**EX-407.3.5 Flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas, damaged buildings that sustain substantial damage shall be brought into compliance with *Building Code* Section 1612.

## **SECTION EX-408 ELECTRICAL**

**EX-408.1 Material .** Existing electrical wiring and equipment undergoing repair shall be allowed to be repaired or replaced with like material.

**Exceptions:**

1. Replacement of electrical receptacles shall comply with the applicable requirements of Article 210-7-(d) of NFPA 70.
2. Plug fuses of the Edison-base type shall be used for replacements only where there is no evidence of over fusing or tampering per applicable requirements of Article 240-51-(b) of NFPA 70.
3. For replacement of non-grounding-type receptacles with grounding-type receptacles and for branch circuits that do not have an equipment grounding conductor in the branch circuitry, the grounding conductor of a grounding type receptacle outlet shall be permitted to be grounded to any accessible point on the grounding electrode system, or to any accessible point on the grounding electrode conductor in accordance with Article 250-130-(c) of NFPA 70.
4. Non-"hospital grade" receptacles in patient bed locations of Group 1-2 shall be replaced with "hospital grade" receptacles, as required by NFPA 99 and Art. 517 of NFPA 70.
5. Frames of electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, clothes dryers, and outlet or junction boxes that are part of the existing branch circuit for these appliances shall be permitted to be grounded to the grounded circuit conductor in accordance with Art. 250-140 of NFPA 70.

## **SECTION EX-409 MECHANICAL**

**EX-409.1 General.** Existing mechanical systems undergoing repair shall comply with Section EX-401.1. and the scoping provisions of Chapter 1 where applicable.

**EX-490.2 Drains in elevator pits:** Drains installed in an elevator pit shall discharge by means of an indirect waste pipe, into an approved receptor such as a 55 gallon holding drum located outside of the elevator pit or hoistway in an accessible location. Provisions shall be made for maintenance of the trap of drains in elevator pits without having to gain access to the elevator pit or hoistway.

**EX-409.2.1 Sumps in elevator pits:** Sumps may be installed. Where drains are not provided to prevent the accumulation of water, sump pumps may be provided.

## **SECTION EX-410 PLUMBING**

**EX-410.1 Materials.** The following plumbing materials and supplies shall not be used:

1. Sheet and tubular copper and brass trap and tailpiece fittings less than the minimum wall thickness of .027" (0.69 mm).
2. Solder having more than 0.2% lead in the repair of potable water systems.
3. Water closets having a concealed trap seal or an unventilated space or having walls that are not thoroughly washed at each discharge in accordance with ASME A112.19.2.
4. The following types of joints shall be prohibited:
  - (a) Cement or concrete joints.
  - (b) Mastic or hot-pour bituminous joints.
  - (c) Joints made with fittings not approved for the specific installation.
  - (d) Joints between different diameter pipes made with elasto-meric rolling O-rings.
  - (e) Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.
  - (f) Saddle-type fittings.
5. The following type of traps are prohibited:
  - (a) Traps that depend on moving parts to maintain the seal.
  - (b) Bell traps
  - (c) Crown-vented traps
  - (d) Traps not integral with a fixture and that depend on interior partitions for the seal, except those traps constructed of an approved material that is resistant to corrosion and degradation.

**EX-410.2 Water closet replacement.** When any water closet is replaced, the replacement water closet shall comply with the *Plumbing Code*. The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for all replaced water closets shall be 1.6 gallons (6 L) per flushing cycle.

**Exception:** Blowout design water closets [3.5 gallons (13 L) per flushing cycle].

## **SECTION EX-411 FUEL GAS**

**EX-411.1 General.** Repairs and replacement of parts shall be done in such a manner as to preserve the original approval or listing.

**EX-411.2 Piping.** Defects in pipe or tubing or fittings shall not be repaired. Defective pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be replaced. Pipe, fittings, valves, or other material shall not be reused unless they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

**EX-411.2.1 Testing.** Where a section of a piping system is repaired or replaced, the affected section shall be pressure tested in accordance with Section FG-406 of the *DC Fuel Gas Code*.

**Exception:** Minor repairs, requiring no more than 10 piping joints, shall not require a pressure test, provided the work is inspected and connections are tested with a non-corrosive leak-detecting fluid or other leak-detecting methods approved by the code official.

**EX-411.3 Venting systems.** Where repairs are made to a venting system or to an appliance connected to a venting system, the flue passageway shall be inspected to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions or debris, and shall be cleaned if necessary.

## **CHAPTER 5 ALTERATIONS - LEVEL 1**

### **SECTION EX-501 GENERAL**

**EX-501.1 Scope.** Level 1 alterations, as described in Section EX-303 shall comply with the requirements of this Chapter. Level 1 alterations to historic buildings shall comply with this chapter, except as modified in Chapter 10.

**EX-501.2 Conformance.** An existing building or portion thereof shall not be altered such that the building becomes less safe than its existing condition.

**Exception:** Where the current level of safety or sanitation is proposed to be reduced, the portion altered shall conform to the requirements of the *Building Code*.

**EX-501.3 Flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas, alterations that constitute substantial improvement shall require that the building comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.

### **SECTION EX-502 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY**

**EX-502.1 General.** Alteration of buildings, classified as special use and occupancy as described in *Building Code*, shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-501.1 and the scoping provisions of Chapter 1 where applicable.

### **SECTION EX-503 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS**

**EX-503.1 Interior finishes.** All newly installed interior finishes shall comply with the flame spread requirements of the *Building Code*.

**EX-503.2 Carpeting.** New carpeting used as an interior floor finish material shall comply with the radiant flux requirements of the *Building Code*.

**EX-503.3 Materials and methods:** All new work shall comply with materials and methods requirements in the *Building Code*, *Mechanical Code*, *Fuel Gas Code*, *Plumbing Code*, *Energy Code* and *Electrical Code* as applicable, that specify material standards, detail of installation and connection, joints, penetrations and continuity of any element, component or system in the building.

**EX-503.3.1 Fuel gas piping systems.** Existing fuel gas piping systems shall not be required to be resized where the alteration does not increase the load nor increase the longest length of the piping system.

**EX-503.3.2 Pressure testing.** Where an existing fuel gas piping system is extended or a new branch is installed, only the newly-installed piping shall be required to be pressure tested.

Connections between the new and existing piping shall be tested with a non-corrosive leak-detecting fluid or other leak-detecting methods approved by the code official.

## **SECTION EX-504 FIRE PROTECTION**

(Not used)

## **SECTION EX-505 MEANS OF EGRESS**

**EX-505.1 General.** Means of egress for buildings undergoing alteration shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-501.2 and the scoping provisions of Chapter 1 where applicable.

**EX-505.2 Use of Exit and Exit Access Enclosures:** Exits and exit access corridors shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1004.3.2.4.

**Exception:** Existing exit access corridors that serve areas undergoing Level 1 Alterations shall be allowed to be used as air return plenums where the following four conditions are verified:

1. The existing HVAC system already uses the corridor as a return plenum.
2. The HVAC system remains as existing, except for rearrangement of terminal branches, relocation of supply diffusers, or replacement in kind of equipment.
3. The transfers from the altered space, to the corridor, shall be equipped with an approved smoke damper arranged to close upon detection of smoke on either side of the transfer.
4. The corridor is not a grade passageway.

**EX-505.3 Allowance for Fire Resistance Upgrading:** When improving the fire resistance rating of the enclosure of stairways, exit access passageways or corridors complying with Sections EX-605.11.1 through EX-605.11.2, a tolerance of up to 1- 1/2-inch (38 mm) shall be allowed in the minimum width of those elements of egress. When improving the fire resistance rating of a wall assembly on one side of stairways, exit access passageways or corridors complying with Section EX-605.11, a tolerance of up to 3/4 inch (19 mm) shall be allowed in the minimum width of those elements of egress.

## **SECTION EX-506 ACCESSIBILITY**

**EX-506.1 Accessibility.** A building, facility or element that is altered shall comply with the applicable provisions in Chapter 11 of the *Building Code*, Sections EX-506.1.1 thru EX-506.1.15 and ICC/ANSI A117.1, unless technically infeasible. Where compliance with this section is

technically infeasible, the alteration shall provide access to the maximum extent technically feasible.

**Exceptions:**

1. The altered element or space is not required to be on an accessible route, unless required by Section EX-506.2.
2. Accessible means of egress required by Chapter 10 of the *Building Code* are not required to be provided in existing buildings and facilities.
3. Type B dwelling units required by Section 1107.6.2 of the *Building Code* are not required to be provided in existing buildings and facilities.

**EX-506.1.1 Elevators.** Altered elements of existing elevators shall comply with ASME A17.1 and ICC/ANSI A117.1. Such elements shall also be altered in elevators programmed to respond to the same hall call control as the altered elevator.

**EX-506.1.2 Platform lifts.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1 and installed in accordance with ASME A17.1 shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route.

**EX-506.1.3 Ramps.** Where steeper slopes than allowed by Section 1003.3.4.1 of the *Building Code* are necessitated by space limitations, the slope of ramps in or providing access to existing buildings or facilities shall comply with Table EX-506.1.4.

**EX-506.1.4 Dining areas.** An accessible route to raised or sunken dining areas, or to outdoor seating areas is not required provided that the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by any occupant and not restricted to use by people with a disability.

**EX-506.1.5 Performance areas.** Where it is technically infeasible to alter performance areas to be on an accessible route, at least one of each type of performance area shall be made accessible.

**EX-506.1.6 Assembly areas.** Seating shall adjoin an accessible route that also serves as a means of egress. Where it is technically infeasible to disperse accessible seating throughout an altered assembly area, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed, to the maximum extent feasible, in accordance with the priorities established in Section 1108.2.3 of the *Building Code*. In existing assembly seating areas with a mezzanine, where the main level provides three-fourths or more of the total seating capacity, wheelchair spaces are permitted to be dispersed on the main level. At least one seat for a companion shall be provided beside each wheelchair space.

**EX-506.1.7 Sleeping rooms and accommodations.** Where I-1 sleeping rooms, I-2 sleeping rooms or patient rooms, I-3 residential units, or R-1 and R-2 sleeping accommodations are being altered, the requirements of Section 1107 of the *Building Code* for accessible rooms

and Chapter 9 for accessible alarms apply only to the quantity of spaces being altered or added.

**EX-506.1.8 Toilet rooms.** Where it is technically infeasible to alter existing toilet and bathing facilities to be accessible, an accessible unisex toilet or bathing facility is permitted. The unisex facility shall be located on the same floor and in the same area as the existing facilities.

**Exception:** Where the existing toilet facilities are located on a non-accessible floor, the accessible facilities shall be located on an accessible floor.

**EX-506.1.9 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms.** Where it is technically infeasible to provide accessible dressing, fitting or locker rooms at the same location as similar types of rooms, one accessible room on the same level shall be provided. Where separate sex facilities are provided, accessible rooms for each sex shall be provided. Separate sex facilities are not required where only unisex rooms are provided.

**Exception:** Where the existing toilet facilities are located on a non-accessible floor, the accessible facilities shall be located on an accessible floor.

**EX-506.1.10 Check-out aisles.** Where check-out aisles are altered in facilities having a selling space of 5,000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) or more, at least one check-out aisle serving each function shall be made accessible.

**EX-506.1.11 Dispersion of seating at fixed or built-in tables, counters, or work surfaces.** Accessible seating at fixed or built-in tables, counters or work surfaces shall be distributed throughout the space or facility as much as technically feasible.

**EX-506.1.12 Sales and service counters.** Where it is technically infeasible for existing counters for sales or distribution of goods or services to be made accessible, an accessible auxiliary counter shall be provided.

**EX-506.1.13 Thresholds.** The maximum height of thresholds at doorways shall be 3/4 inch (19.1 mm). Such threshold shall have beveled edges on each side.

**EX-506.1.14 Extent of application.** An alteration of an existing element, space, or area of a building or facility shall not impose a requirement for greater accessibility than that which would be required for new construction. Alterations shall not reduce or have the effect of reducing accessibility of a building, portion of a building, or facility.

**EX-506.2 Alterations affecting an area containing a primary function.** Where an alteration affects the accessibility to, or contains an area of primary function, the route to the primary function area shall be accessible. The accessible route to the primary function area shall include toilet facilities or drinking fountains serving the area of primary function. For the purposes of complying with Section EX-506.2, an area of primary function shall be defined by applicable provisions of 49 CFR Part 37.43(c) or 28 CFR Part 36.403.

**Exceptions:**

1. The costs of providing the accessible route is not required to exceed 20 percent of the costs of the alterations affecting the area of primary function.
2. This provision does not apply to alterations limited solely to windows, hardware, operating controls, electrical outlets and signs.
3. This provision does not apply to alterations limited solely to mechanical systems, electrical systems, installation or alteration of fire protection systems, and abatement of hazardous materials.
4. This provision does not apply to alterations undertaken for the primary purpose of increasing the accessibility of an existing building, facility or element.

**TABLE EX-506.1.4  
RAMPS**

<b>SLOPE</b>	<b>MAXIMUM RISE</b>
Steeper than 1:10 but not steeper than 1:8	3 inches
Steeper than 1:12 but not steeper than 1:10	6 inches

**SECTION EX-507  
STRUCTURAL**

**EX-507.1 General.** Where alteration work includes replacement of equipment that is supported by the building, or where a re-roofing permit is required, the structural provisions of this section shall apply.

**EX-507.2 Design criteria.** Existing structural components supporting alteration work shall comply with this section.

**EX-507.2.1 Replacement of roofing or equipment.** Where replacement of roofing or equipment results in additional dead loads, structural components supporting such re-roofing or equipment shall comply with the vertical load requirements of the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.
2. Buildings constructed in accordance with the *Residential Code* or the conventional construction methods of the *Building Code* and where the additional dead load from the equipment is not increased by more than 5 percent.



**EX-507.2.2 Parapet bracing and wall anchors for reroof permits.** Unreinforced masonry bearing wall buildings classified as Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall have parapet bracing and wall anchors installed at the roof line whenever a re-roofing permit is issued. Such parapet bracing and wall anchors shall be designed in accordance with the reduced *Building Code* level seismic forces as specified in Section 407.1.1.3 and design procedures of Section 407.1.1.1.

**EX-507.3 Roof diaphragm.** Where roofing materials are removed from more than 50% of the roof diaphragm of a building or section of a building where the roof diaphragm is a part of the main wind force resisting system the integrity of the roof diaphragm shall be evaluated and if found deficient due to insufficient or deteriorated connections such connections shall be provided or replaced.

## **CHAPTER 6 ALTERATIONS LEVEL 2**

### **SECTION EX-601 GENERAL**

**EX-601.1 Scope.** Level 2 alterations, as described in Section EX-304 shall comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings in which the reconfiguration is exclusively the result of compliance with the accessibility requirements of Section EX-506.2 shall be permitted to comply with Chapter 5.
2. The Additional Restrictions listed in Sections EX-603.2.1, EX-603.6, EX-605.3, and EX-605.4 shall not be mandatory for alterations affecting areas of less than 500 square feet (46.5 m<sup>2</sup>) provided:
  - a. There is no change or occupancy as defined in Chapter 2 of the *Building Code*;
  - b. There is no increase in hazard; and
  - c. The repairs or alterations do not adversely affect the existing means of egress or any required fire resistance rating.

**EX-601.2 Alteration level 1 compliance.** In addition to the requirements of this chapter, all work shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 5.

**EX-601.3 Compliance.** All new construction elements, components and systems and spaces shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Windows may be added without requiring compliance with the light and ventilation requirements of the *Building Code*.
2. Newly installed electrical equipment shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-608.0.
3. The length of dead end corridors in newly constructed spaces need only comply with the provisions of Section EX-605.6.
4. The minimum ceiling height of the newly created habitable and occupiable spaces and corridors shall be 7 feet. A lower clearance than set forth in Exceptions to Section 1207.2 of the *Building Code* is permitted in special cases where the Code Official determines that a lower clearance will pose no undue health and safety hazard to the occupants.

## **SECTION EX-602 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY**

**EX-602.1 General.** Alteration of buildings, classified as special use and occupancy as described in the *Building Code*, shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-601.1 and the scoping provisions of Chapter 1 where applicable.

## **SECTION EX-603 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS**

**EX-603.1 Scope.** The requirements of this section are limited to work areas in which Level 2 alterations are being performed, and shall apply beyond the work area where specified.

**EX-603.2 Vertical openings.** Existing vertical openings shall comply with the provisions of Sections EX-603.2.1, EX-603.2.2 and EX-603.2.2.

**EX-603.2.1 Existing Vertical Openings.** All existing interior vertical openings connecting two or more floors shall be enclosed with approved assemblies having a fire resistance rating of not less than one hour with approved opening protectives.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Where vertical opening enclosure is not required by the *Building Code* or the *Fire Code*.
2. Interior vertical openings other than stairways may be blocked at the floor and ceiling of the work area by installation of not less than two inches (50.08 mm) of solid wood or equivalent construction.
3. The enclosure shall not be required where:
  - 3.1. connecting the main floor and mezzanines; or
  - 3.2. all the following conditions are met:
    - (a) The communicating area has a low hazard occupancy, or has a moderate hazard occupancy which is protected throughout by an automatic sprinkler system, and
    - (b) The lowest or next to the lowest level is a street floor; and
    - (c) The entire area is open and unobstructed in a manner such that it may be assumed that a fire in any part of the interconnected spaces will be readily obvious to all of the occupants; and
    - (d) Exit capacity is sufficient to provide egress simultaneously for all the occupants of all levels by considering all areas to be a single floor area for the determination of required exit capacity; and
    - (e) Each floor level, considered separately, has at least one-half of its individual required exit capacity provided by an exit or exits leading directly out of that level without having to traverse another communicating floor level or be exposed to the smoke or fire

spreading from another communicating floor level.

4. In Group A Occupancies, a minimum 30 minute enclosure shall be provided to protect all vertical openings not exceeding three stories.

**Exceptions:**

1. In A-1 occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required for a main exit (where required in Section 1008.1 of the *Building Code*) where all of the following conditions are met:
  - a. A maximum of three stories are connected by the existing, unenclosed stair;
  - b. Fully enclosed exits, complying with Section 1105.32 of the *Building Code*, are provided with an egress capacity of at least 117% of the total occupant load;
  - c. Building is protected by an approved automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and commons;
  - d. Building is equipped throughout by an approved automatic fire suppression system.
2. In A-3 and A-4 occupancies, an enclosure shall not be required for existing, unenclosed interior exits provided all of the following conditions are met:
  - (a) A maximum of two stories are connected by the existing, unenclosed stair;
  - (b) The area of the larger connecting story does not exceed 3500 square feet;
  - (c) Fully enclosed exits, complying with Section 1105.32 of the *Building Code*, are provided with an egress capacity of at least 50% of the total occupant load;
  - (d) Work area for Level 2 Alterations is protected by an approved automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and commons
  - (e) Work Area for Level 2 Alterations is equipped throughout by an approved automatic fire suppression system.
5. In Group B Occupancies, a minimum 30 minute enclosure shall be provided to protect all vertical openings not exceeding three stories. This enclosure, or the enclosure specified in Section EX-603.2.1 shall not be required:
  - (a) In a building not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) floor; or
  - (b) When the building is protected throughout by an approved automatic fire sprinkler system.

6. In Group E Occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings not exceeding three stories when the building is protected throughout by an approved automatic fire sprinkler
7. In Group F Occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required under the following conditions:
  - (a) For vertical openings not exceeding three stories; or
  - (b) In special purpose occupancies when necessary for manufacturing operations and direct access is provided to at least one protected stairway; or
  - (c) In buildings which are protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system.
8. In Group H Occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings not exceeding three stories where necessary for manufacturing operations and where every floor level has direct access to at least two remote enclosed stairways or other approved exits.
9. In Group M Occupancies, a minimum 30-minute enclosure shall be provided to protect all vertical openings not exceeding three stories. This enclosure, or the enclosure specified in Section EX-603.2.1, shall not be required under the following conditions:
  - (a) Openings connect only two floor levels; or
  - (b) Occupancies are protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system.
10. In Group R-1 Occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings not exceeding three stories where:
  - (a) In buildings which are protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system; or
  - (b) In buildings with less than 25 guest rooms where every sleeping room above the second floor is provided with direct access to a fire escape or other approved second exit by means of an approved exterior door or window having a sill height of not greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) and where:
  - (c) Any exit access corridor exceeding eight feet (2438 mm) in length which serves two means of egress, one of which is an unprotected vertical opening, shall have at least one of the means of egress separated from the vertical opening by a one hour fire barrier; and

- (d) The building is protected throughout by an automatic fire alarm system,  
installed and supervised in accordance with the *Building Code*.
- 11. In Group R-2 Occupancies, a minimum 30-minute enclosure shall be provided to protect all vertical openings not exceeding three stories. This enclosure, or the enclosure specified in Section EX-603.2.1, shall not be required under the following conditions:
  - (a) Vertical openings not exceeding two stories with not more than four dwelling units per floor; or
  - (b) In buildings which are protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system; or
  - (c) In buildings with not more than four dwelling units per floor where every sleeping room above the second floor is provided with direct access to a fire escape or other approved second exit by means of an approved exterior door or window having a sill height of not greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) and the building is protected throughout by an automatic fire alarm system, complying with Section EX-604.4.
- 12. One-and two-family dwellings.
- 13. Group S Occupancies, where connecting more than two floor levels, or where connecting not more than three floor levels and the structure is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.
- 14. Group S Occupancies, vertical opening protection is not required for open parking garages and ramps.

**EX-603.2.2 Supplemental shaft and floor opening enclosure requirements.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, the enclosure requirements of Section EX-603.2 shall apply to vertical openings other than stairways throughout the floor:

**Exception:** Vertical openings located in tenant spaces that are entirely outside the work area.

**EX-603.2.3 Supplemental stairway enclosure requirements.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, stairways that are part of the means of egress serving the work area shall at a minimum be enclosed with smoke tight construction on the highest work area floor and all floors below.

**Exception:** Where stairway enclosure is not required by the *Building Code* or the *Fire Code*.

**EX-603.3 Smoke barriers.** Smoke barriers in Group I-2 shall be installed where required by Sections EX-603.3.1 and EX-603.3.2.

**EX-603.3.1 Compartmentation.** Where the work area is on a story used for sleeping rooms for more than 30 patients, the story shall be divided into not less than two compartments by smoke barrier walls complying with Section EX-603.3.2 such that each compartment does not exceed 22,500 square feet (2093 m<sup>2</sup>) and the travel distance from any point to reach a door in the required smoke barrier shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

**Exception:** Where neither the length nor width of the smoke compartment exceeds 150 feet (45 720 mm), the travel distance to reach the smoke barrier door shall not be limited.

**EX-603.3.2 Fire-resistance rating.** The smoke barriers shall be fire resistance rated for 30 minutes and constructed in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-603.4 Interior finish.** The interior finish of walls and ceilings in exits and corridors in any work area shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

**Exception:** Existing interior finish materials which do not comply with the interior finish requirements of the *Building Code* shall be permitted to be treated with an approved fire retardant coating in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to achieve the required rating.

**EX-603.4.1 Supplemental interior finish requirements.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, Section EX-603.4 shall also apply to the interior finish in exits and corridors serving the work area throughout the floor.

**Exception:** Interior finish within tenant spaces that are entirely outside the work area.

**EX-603.5 Guards.** The requirements of Sections EX-603.5.1 and EX-603.5.2 shall apply in all work areas.

**EX-603.5.1 Minimum requirement.** Every portion of a floor, such as a balcony or a loading dock that is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and not provided with guards, or those in which the existing guards are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with guards.

**EX-603.5.2 Design.** Where there are no guards or existing guards must be replaced, the guards shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-603.6 Enclosure of Existing Corridors.** All existing corridors which are part of a path of egress travel to an exit, when they serve a Level 2 Alteration Work area, shall comply with Section EX-604.2.2 or shall be enclosed with approved assemblies having a fire resistance rating

of not less than ½ hour, subject to the exceptions and additional requirements in Sections EX-603.6.1 through

**Exception:** Existing corridor walls constructed of wood lath and plaster in good condition or ½-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard shall be permitted.

**EX – 603.6.1 Supplemental Requirements for Use Group B.**

- 1. Corridors with required capacity between 30 and 50 persons.** The work area shall be equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system.
- 2. Corridors with required capacity greater than 50 persons.** Enclosure shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code* for new construction.

**SECTION EX-604 FIRE PROTECTION**

**EX-604.1 Scope.** The requirements of this section shall be limited to work areas in which Level 2 alterations are being performed, and where specified they shall apply throughout the floor on which the work areas are located, or otherwise beyond the work area.

**EX-604.2 Automatic sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Sections EX-604.2.1 through EX-604.2.5. Installation requirements shall be in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-604.2.1 High rise buildings.** In high rise buildings, work areas that include exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant or serving an occupant load greater than 30 persons, or 50 percent of the floor area, whichever is less, shall be provided with automatic sprinkler protection. Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided throughout the exit access corridors and common areas including toilet rooms, mechanical, electrical and telephone spaces, equipment rooms and similar spaces located on the same floor as the work area.

**EX-604.2.1.1 Partially sprinklered floors.** When automatic sprinkler protection has been installed on any part of a floor per Section EX-604.2.1, all subsequent Level 2 Alteration work on the floor shall be provided with automatic sprinkler protection.

**EX-604.2.1.2 Supplemental automatic sprinkler system requirements.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided throughout the floor on which the work area is located.

**Exception:** Automatic sprinkler protection shall not be required in tenant spaces that are entirely outside the work area and separated from the work area by a 1-hour fire partition.

**EX-604.2.1.3 Alterations to 75% of floors.** Where 75% of the building floors are partially sprinklered per Section EX-604.2.1.1, the building shall comply with the following additional requirements:



1. **Standby Power, Light and Emergency Systems.** Comply with Section 403.10 of the *Building Code*.
2. **Emergency voice/Alarm system.** Comply with Section 403.6 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-604.2.1.4. Deferred Compliance.** In cases of warranted hardship, compliance with applicable fire suppression related requirements in existing high-rise buildings can be temporarily deferred upon approval of an Alternative Fire Protection Compliance Plan by the code official. The submittal of the compliance plan for approval is the responsibility of the owner, who has the burden of proof of all invoked circumstances. The submittal requirements for the compliance plan will be established by the code official. The owner is responsible for the full and timely implementation of all conditions of the approved plan. When the code official deems that lack of implementation of the conditions of the approved compliance plan is having a significant impact on the safety of the public or of the occupants of the building, the code official is authorized to rescind the approval of the plan and the owner shall forfeit the right to the previously granted temporary deferral of compliance. Thereupon, the owner shall take immediate steps to bring the building into compliance with the deferred requirements, within a reasonable period. When the code official deems that delays in compliance adversely affect the general safety, health and welfare of the occupants and the public, the code official is authorized to revoke any certificate of occupancy issued in connection with the approval of the compliance plan.

**EX-604.2.1.5 Required Covenants:** A covenant complying with Section 106.6.5 shall be required, before an Alternative Fire Protection Compliance Plan submitted under Section EX-604.2.1.4 can be approved.

**EX-604.2.2 Groups A, E, F-1, H, I, M, R-1, R-2, R-4, S-1 and S-2.** In buildings with occupancies in Groups A, E, F-1, H, I, M, R-1, R-2, R-4, S-1 and S-2, work areas that include exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant or serving an occupant load greater than 30 shall be provided with automatic sprinkler protection where both of the following conditions occur:

1. The work area would be required to be provided with automatic sprinkler protection in accordance with the *Building Code* applicable to new construction; and
2. The work area exceeds 50% of the floor area.

**Exception:** Work areas in Group R Occupancies 3 stories or less in height.

**EX-604.2.2.1 Mixed uses.** In work areas containing mixed uses, one or more of which requires automatic sprinkler protection in accordance with Section EX-604.2.2, such protection shall not be required throughout the work area provided

that the uses requiring such protection are separated from those not requiring protection by fire resistive construction having a minimum two-hour rating for Use Group H, and a minimum one-hour rating for all other use groups.

**EX-604.2.3 Windowless stories.** Work located in a windowless story as determined in accordance with the *Building Code* shall be sprinklered where the work area would be required to be sprinklered under the provisions of the *Building Code* as a newly constructed building.

**EX-604.2.4 Other required suppression systems** In buildings and areas listed in Table 903.2.15 of the *Building Code*, work areas include exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant or serving an occupant load greater than 30 shall be provided with sprinkler protection where the work area would be required to be provided with automatic sprinkler protection in accordance with the *Building Code* applicable to new construction.

**EX-604.2.5 Supervision.** Fire sprinkler systems required by this Section shall be supervised by one of the following methods:

1. Approved central station system in accordance with NFPA 72;
2. Approved proprietary system in accordance with NFPA 72;
3. Approved remote station system of the jurisdiction in accordance with NFPA 72; or
4. Approved local alarm service which will cause the sounding of an alarm in accordance with NFPA 72.

**Exceptions:** Supervision is not required for the following:

1. Underground gate valve with roadway boxes;
2. Halogenated extinguishing systems;
3. Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems;
4. Dry and wet chemical extinguishing systems;
5. Automatic sprinkler systems installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common supply main is used to supply both domestic and automatic sprinkler systems and a separate shutoff valve for the automatic sprinkler system is not provided.

**EX-604.3 Standpipes.** Where the work area includes exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant and is located more than 50 feet (15240 mm) above or below the lowest level of fire department access, a standpipe system shall be provided. Standpipes shall have an approved fire department connection with hose connections at each floor level above or below the lowest level of fire department access. Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. No pump shall be required provided that the standpipes are capable of accepting delivery by fire department apparatus of a minimum of 250 gpm at 65 psi (946 L/m at 448KPa) to

the topmost floor in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system or a minimum of 500 gpm at 65 psi (1892 L/m at 448KPa) to the topmost floor in all other buildings. Where the standpipe terminates below the topmost floor, the standpipe shall be designed to meet (gpm/psi) (L/m/KPa) requirements of this exception for possible future extension of the standpipe.

2. The interconnection of multiple standpipe risers shall not be required.

**EX-604.4 Fire alarm and detection.** An approved fire alarm system shall be installed in accordance with Sections EX-604.4.1 through EX-604.4.1.9. Where automatic sprinkler protection is provided in accordance with Section EX-604.2 and connected to the building fire alarm system, automatic heat detection required by this section shall not be required. An approved automatic fire detection system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and NFPA 72. Devices, combinations of devices, appliances and equipment shall be approved. The automatic fire detectors shall be smoke detectors, except an approved alternate type of detector shall be installed in spaces such as boiler rooms where, during normal operation, products of combustion are present in sufficient quantity to actuate a smoke detector.

**EX-604.4.1 Occupancy requirements.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in accordance with Sections EX-604.4.1.1 through EX-604.4.1.7. Existing alarm notification appliances shall be automatically activated throughout the building. Where the building is not equipped with a fire alarm system, alarm notification appliances within the work area shall be provided and automatically activated.

**Exceptions:**

1. Occupancies with an existing, previously approved fire alarm system.
2. Where selective notification is permitted, alarm-notification appliances shall be automatically activated in the areas selected.

**EX-604.4.1.1 Group E.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in work areas in Group E occupancies as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group E occupancies.

**EX-604.4.1.2 Group I-1.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in work areas in Group I-1 residential care/assisted living facilities as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group I-1 occupancies.

**EX-604.4.1.3 Group I-2.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in work areas in Group I-2 occupancies as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group I-2 occupancies.

**EX-604.4.1.4 Group I-3.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in work areas Group I-3 occupancies as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group I-3 occupancies.

**EX-604.4.1.5 Group R-1.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group R-1 occupancies.

**EX-604.4.1.6 Group R-2.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in work areas of Group R-2 apartment buildings as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group R-2 occupancies.

**EX-604.4.1.7 Group R-4.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in work areas of Group R-4 residential care/assisted living facilities as required by the *Fire Code* for existing Group R-4 occupancies.

**EX-604.4.2 Supplemental fire alarm system requirements.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, Section EX-604.4.1 shall apply throughout the floor.

**Exception:** Alarm-initiating and notification appliances shall not be required to be installed in tenant spaces outside of the work area.

**EX-604.4.3 Smoke Alarms.** Individual guestrooms and individual dwelling units in any work area in Group R- 1, R-2, R-3, R-4 and I-1 shall be provided with smoke alarms in accordance with the *Fire Code*.

**Exception:** Interconnection of smoke alarms outside of the rehabilitation work area shall not be required.

## **SECTION EX-605 MEANS OF EGRESS**

**EX-605.1 Scope.** The requirements of this section shall be limited to work areas that include exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant within the work area in which Level 2 alterations are being performed, and where specified, they shall apply throughout the floor on which the work areas are located, or otherwise beyond the work area.

**EX-605.2 General.** The means of egress shall comply with the requirements of this section.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Means of egress conforming to the requirements of the *Building Code* under which the building was constructed shall be considered as complying means of egress if, in the opinion of the code official, they do not constitute a distinct hazard to life.
2. **For Level 2 alterations in buildings existing before March 21, 1989, capacity of egress components for all exits serving the work area shall comply with Section EX-605.11.**

**EX-605.2.1 Use of Exit and Exit Access Enclosures:** Use of exit and exit access corridors in compliance with Section 505.2 shall be allowed.

**EX-605.3 Number of exits.** The number of exits shall be in accordance with Sections EX-605.3.1 through EX-605.3.3.

**EX-605.3.1 Minimum number.** Every story utilized for human occupancy on which there is a work area that includes exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant within the work area shall be provided with the minimum number of exits based on the occupancy and the occupant load in accordance with the *Building Code*. In addition, the exits shall comply with Sections EX-605.3.1.1 and EX-605.3.1.2.

**EX-605.3.1.1 Single exit buildings.** Only one exit is required from buildings, stories and spaces with the following occupancies:

1. In Group A, B, E, F, M, U and S occupancies, a single exit is permitted in the story at the level of exit discharge when the occupant load of the story does not exceed 50 and the exit access travel distance does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

**Exception:** In Group A, B, E, F, M, U and S the exit access travel distance shall not exceed 100 feet provided the work area is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system and automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas.

2. Group B, F-2, or S-2 occupancies not more than two stories in height, which are not greater than 3,000 square feet per floor (279 m<sup>2</sup>), when the exit access travel distance does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). The minimum fire resistance rating of the exit enclosure and of the opening protection shall be one hour.

**Exception:** In Group B the exit access travel distance shall not exceed 100 feet provided the building is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system and automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas.

3. Open parking structures where vehicles are mechanically parked.
4. Groups R-1 and R-2, not more than two stories in height, when there are not more than four dwelling units per floor and the exit access travel distance does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm). The minimum fire resistance rating of the exit enclosure and of the opening protection shall be one hour.
5. **Groups R-1 and R-2, not more than three stories in height, when there are not more than four dwelling units per floor and the exit access travel distance does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm), provided the building is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system and automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas. The minimum fire resistance rating of the exit enclosure and of the opening protection shall be one hour.**

6. In multi-level dwelling units in buildings of Occupancy Classification R-1 or R-2, an exit shall not be required from every level of the dwelling unit provided that one of the following conditions is met:
  - (a) The travel distance within the dwelling unit does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm); or
  - (b) The building is not more than three stories in height and all third floor space is part of one or more dwelling units located in part on the second floor and no habitable room within any such dwelling unit shall have a travel distance that exceeds 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the outside of the habitable room entrance door to the inside of the entrance door to the dwelling unit.
7. In Group R-2, H-4, H-5 and I Occupancies and in rooming houses and child care centers, a single exit is permitted in a one story building with a maximum occupant load of 10 and the exit access travel distance does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).
8. In buildings of Group R-2 Occupancy that are equipped throughout with an automatic fire sprinkler system, a single exit shall be permitted from a basement or story below grade if every dwelling unit on that floor is equipped with an approved window providing a clear opening of at least five square feet (0.47 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, a minimum net clear opening of 24 inches (610 mm) in height and 20 inches (508 mm) in width, and a sill height of not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the finished floor.
9. In buildings of Group R-2 Occupancy of any height with not more than four dwelling units per floor, with a smokeproof enclosure or outside stair as an exit, and with such exit within 20 feet (6096 mm) of travel to the entrance doors to all dwelling units served thereby.
10. In buildings of Group R-3 Occupancy equipped throughout with an automatic fire sprinkler system, only one exit shall be required from basements or stories below grade.
11. **In Group E Occupancies of two or three stories, not exceeding 3000 square feet per story, provided the building is equipped with an automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas and either:**
  - (a) the building is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system, or**
  - (b) the exit is a smokeproof enclosure or pressurized stairway.**
12. In Group A-3, A-4, B, E, and R occupancies located not more than one story below grade, provided the floor area of the story does not exceed 2500 square

feet and the work area is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system and automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas.

**Exception:** In Group E an exit which serves only that story or which is a smokeproof enclosure or pressurized stairway shall be accepted in lieu of an automatic fire suppression system.

13. In Group A occupancies located not more than one story above grade, provided the floor area of the story does not exceed 2000 square feet and work area is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system and automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas.

**Exception:** The allowable floor area may be increased to 3000 square feet provided the building is equipped with an approved, automatic fire suppression system.

14. **In public garages of Group S-2, stories located below grade provided the building is equipped with an automatic fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in all corridors, lobbies and common areas and a car ramp is available for egress.**

**EX-605.3.1.2 Fire escapes required.** When more than one exit is required, an existing or newly constructed fire escape complying with Section EX-605.3.1.2.1 shall be accepted as providing one of the required means of egress.

**EX-605.3.1.2.1 Fire escape access and details.** Fire escapes shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. Occupants shall have unobstructed access to the fire escape without having to pass through a room subject to locking.
2. Access to a new fire escape shall be through a door, except that windows shall be permitted to provide access from single dwelling units or guest rooms in Groups R- 1, R-2 and I-I Occupancies or when providing access from spaces having a maximum occupant load of 10 in other occupancy classifications.
3. Newly constructed fire escapes shall be permitted only where exterior stairs cannot be utilized due to lot lines limiting stair size or due to the sidewalks, alleys, or roads at grade level.
4. Openings within 10 feet (3048 mm) of fire escape stairs shall be protected by fire assemblies having a minimum of ¾-hour fire-resistance ratings.

**Exception:** In buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, opening protection is not required.

5. In all buildings of Group E Occupancy, up to and including the 12th grade, buildings of Group I Occupancy, rooming houses and child care centers, ladders of any type are prohibited on fire escapes used as a required means of egress.

**EX-605.3.1.2.2 Construction.** The fire escape shall be designed to support a live load of 100 pounds per square foot (4788 Pa) and shall be constructed of steel or other approved noncombustible materials. Fire escapes constructed of wood not less than nominal 2 inches (51 mm) thick are permitted on buildings of Type 5 construction. Walkways and railings located over or supported by combustible roofs in buildings of Types 3 and 4 construction are permitted to be of wood not less than nominal 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

**EX-605.3.1.2.3 Dimensions.** Stairs shall be at least 22 inches (559 mm) wide with risers not more than, and treads not less than, 8 inches (203 mm) and landings at the foot of stairs not less than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) long, located not more than 8 inches (203 mm) below the door.

**EX-605.3.2 Mezzanines.** Mezzanines in the work area and with an occupant load of more than 50 or in which the travel distance to an exit exceeds 75 feet (22 860 mm) shall have access to at least two independent means of egress.

**Exception:** Two independent means of egress are not required where the travel distance to an exit does not exceed 100 feet (30 480 mm) and the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.

**EX-605.3.3 Main entrance - Group A.** All buildings of Group A with an occupant load of 100 or more shall be provided with a main entrance capable of serving as the main exit with an egress capacity for at least one-half the total occupant load. The remaining exits shall be capable of providing one-half of the total required exit capacity.

**Exception:** Where there is no well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width.

**EX-605.4 Egress doorways.** Egress doorways in any work area shall comply with Sections EX-605.4.1 through EX-605.4.5.

**EX-605.4.1 Two egress doorways required.** Work areas shall be provided with two egress doorways in accordance with the requirements of Sections EX-605.4.1.1 and EX-605.4.1.2.



**EX-605.4.1.1 Occupant load and travel distance.** In any work area, all rooms and spaces having an occupant load greater than 50 or in which the travel distance exceeds 75 feet (22 860 mm) shall have a minimum of two egress doorways.

**Exceptions:**

1. Storage rooms having a maximum occupant load of 10.
2. Where the work area is served by a single exit in accordance with Section EX-605.3.1.1.
3. In Group B occupancies only one egress door is required when all of the following conditions are met:
  - a) The space is confined (landlocked) by demising partitions of existing adjacent space or spaces, including permanent core construction, such that two egress doors complying with the separation distance required by Section 1004.2.1 of the *Building Code* cannot be provided, and
  - b) The path of travel within the space does not exceed 110 feet (33 518 mm), and, if applicable:
    - 1) In non-sprinklered, non-high rise buildings equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm system, the work area is provided with smoke detectors at a rate of not less than one per 900 square feet (83.7 m<sup>2</sup>) in corridors, storage areas, mechanical and electrical rooms and outside the egress door, or
    - 2) In non-sprinklered, non-high rise buildings without an automatic fire alarm system, the work area is provided with multi-station, interconnected smoke alarms at a rate of not less than one per 900 square feet (83.7 m<sup>2</sup>) in corridors, storage areas, mechanical and electrical rooms and outside the egress door, or
    - 3) In high rise buildings, the space is sprinklered.

**EX-605.4.1.2 Group I-2.** In buildings of Group I-2 Occupancy, any patient sleeping room or suite of patient rooms greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) within the work area shall have a minimum of two egress doorways.

**EX-605.4.2 Door swing.** In the work area and in the egress path from any work area to the exit discharge, all egress doors serving an occupant load greater than 50 shall swing in the direction of exit travel.

**Exception:** Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

**EX-605.4.2.1 Supplemental requirements for door swing.** Where work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, door swing shall comply with Section EX-605.2 throughout the floor.

**EX-605.4.3 Door closing.** In any work area, all doors opening onto an exit passageway at grade or exit stair shall be self-closing or automatically closing by listed closing devices.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where exit enclosure is not required by the *Building Code*.
2. Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

**EX-605.4.3.1 Supplemental requirements for door closing.** Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, doors shall comply with Section EX-605.4.3 throughout the exit stair from the work area to the level of exit discharge.

**EX-605.4.4 Panic hardware.** In any work area, and in the egress path from any work area to the exit discharge, in buildings or portions thereof of Group A assembly occupancies with an occupant load greater than 100, all required exit doors equipped with latching devices shall be equipped with approved panic hardware.

**Exception:** Means of egress within a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

**EX-605.4.4.1 Supplemental requirements for panic hardware.** Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, panic hardware shall comply with Section EX-605.4.4 throughout the floor.

**EX-605.4.5 Emergency power source in Group I-3.** Work areas in buildings of Group I-3 Occupancy having remote power unlocking capability for more than 10 locks shall be provided with an emergency power source for such locks. Power shall be arranged to automatically operate upon failure of normal power within 10 seconds and for a duration of not less than one hour.

**EX-605.5 Openings in corridor walls.** Openings in corridor walls in any work area shall comply with Sections EX-605.5.1 through EX-605.5.4.

**Exception:** Openings in corridors where such corridors are not required to be rated in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.5.1 Corridor doors.** Corridor doors in the work area shall not be constructed of hollow core wood and shall not contain louvers. All dwelling units, guest room or rooming unit corridor doors in work areas in buildings of Groups R-1, R-2, and I-1 shall be at least 1 3/8 inch (35 mm) solid core wood or approved equal and shall not have any glass panels, other than approved wired glass or other approved glazing material in metal frames. All dwelling unit, guest room or rooming unit corridor doors in work areas in buildings of Groups R-1, R-2 and I-1 doors shall be equipped with approved door closers. All replacement doors shall be 1 3/4 inch (45 mm) solid bonded wood core or approved equal, unless the existing frame will accommodate only a 1 3/8 inch (35 mm) door.

**Exceptions:**

1. Corridor doors within a dwelling unit or guestroom.
2. Existing doors meeting the requirements of *HUD Guideline on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies* for a rating of 15 minutes or better shall be accepted as meeting the provisions of this requirement.
3. Existing doors in buildings protected throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system shall be required only to resist smoke, be reasonably tight fitting and shall not contain louvers.
4. In group homes with a maximum of 15 occupants, and which are protected with an approved automatic detection system, closing devices may be omitted.
5. Door assemblies having a fire protection rating of at least 20 minutes.

**EX-605.5.2 Transoms.** In all buildings of Group I- 1, R-1 and R-2 Occupancy all transoms in corridor walls in work areas shall be either glazed with ¼-inch (6.4 mm) wired glass set in metal frames or other glazing assemblies having a fire protection rating as required for the door and permanently secured in the closed position or sealed with materials consistent with the corridor construction.

**EX-605.5.3 Other corridor openings.** In any work area, any other sash, grill or opening in a corridor, and any window in a corridor not opening to the outside air, shall be sealed with materials consistent with the corridor construction.

**Exception:** Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

**EX-605.5.3.1** Where the work exceeds 50% of the floor area, this section shall be applicable to all corridor windows, grills, sash and other openings on the floor.

**EX-605.5.4 Supplemental requirements for corridor openings.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, the requirements of Sections EX-605.5.1 through EX-605.5.3 shall apply throughout the floor.

**EX-605.6 Dead end corridors.** Dead end corridors in any work area shall not exceed 35 feet (10 670 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. Where dead-end corridors of greater length are permitted by the *Building Code*.
2. In other than Group A and H Occupancies, the maximum length of an existing dead end corridor shall be 75 feet (22 860mm) in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm system installed in accordance with the *Building Code* or 50 feet (15 240 mm)

in buildings equipped with an approved fire alarm system on the floor of the work area and with smoke detectors in the corridors lobbies, common areas and storage areas.

3. In other than Group A and H Occupancies, the maximum length of an existing dead end corridor shall be 100feet (30 508 mm) in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the *Building Code* or 75 feet (22 860 mm) if an approved automatic sprinkler system is installed in the work area and the corridor leading to the exit or exits and an approved fire alarm system is installed with smoke detectors in the corridor, lobbies, common areas and storage areas.
4. In other than Group A and H Occupancies the maximum length of an existing, newly constructed or extended dead end corridor shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm) on floors equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the *Building Code* system in the work area and corridors serving the work area, provided the building is provided throughout with an automatic fire alarm system installed in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.7 Means of egress lighting.** Means of egress lighting shall be in accordance with this section, as applicable.

**EX-605.7.1 Artificial lighting required.** Means of egress in all work areas shall be provided with artificial lighting in accordance with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.7.2 Supplemental requirements for means of egress lighting.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, means of egress throughout the floor shall comply with Section EX-605.7.1.

**Exception:** Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

**EX-605.8 Exit signs.** Exit signs shall be in accordance with this section, as applicable.

**EX-605.8.1 Work areas.** Means of egress in all work areas shall be provided with exit signs in accordance with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.8.2 Supplemental requirements for exit signs.** Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, means of egress throughout the floor shall comply with Section EX-605.8.1.

**Exception:** Means of egress within a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

**EX-605.9 Handrails.** The requirements of Sections EX-605.9.1 and EX-605.9.2 shall apply to handrails from work area floor to the level of exit discharge.

**EX-605.9.1 Minimum requirement.** Every required exit stairway that is part of the means of egress for any work area and that has three or more risers and is not provided with at least

one handrail, or in which the existing handrails are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with handrails for the full length of the run of steps on at least one side. All exit stairways with a required egress width of more than 66 inches shall have handrails on both sides.

**EX-605.9.2 Design.** Handrails required in accordance with Section EX-605.9.1, shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.10 Guards.** The requirements of Sections EX-605.10.1 and EX-605.10.2 shall apply to guards from work area floor to the level of exit discharge, but shall be confined to the egress path of any work area.

**EX-605.10.1 Minimum requirement.** Every open portion of a stair, landing, or balcony that is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and not provided with guards, or those in which the existing guards are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with guards.

**EX-605.10.2 Design.** Guards required in accordance with Section EX-605.10.1 shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.11 Capacity of Egress Components:** Existing elements of means of egress shall be permitted to continue to be used, in accordance with Sections EX-605.11.1 and EX-605.11.2.

**EX-605.11.1 Stairway Width:** Existing means of egress stairways which are not less than 36 inches (914mm) in width shall be permitted to continue to be used as a required exit in buildings with more than one exit, undergoing Level 2 alterations, when each of its exits can accommodate the whole occupant load of each floor served, calculated in accordance with Tables 1003.2.2.2 and 1003.2.3 of the *Building Code*, provided such stairways are upgraded to comply with Sections 1003.3.1, 1003.3.3.2 through 1003.3.3.10, 1005.3.2 and 1005.3.6 of the *Building Code*. Existing means of egress stairways which are not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width shall be permitted to continue to be used as a required exit when serving and contained within a single residential dwelling unit in buildings of use Group R-2or R-3, provided such stairways are upgraded to comply with Sections 1003.3.1, 1003.3.3.2 through 1003.3.3.10, 1005.3.2 and 1005.3.6 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-605.11.2 Corridor Width:** An existing access passageway or corridor which is not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width shall be permitted to continue to be used as exit access when its capacity, calculated in accordance with Table 1003.2.3, is sufficient to accommodate three (3) times the occupant load served by the egress element, calculated in accordance with Table 1003.2.2.2, provided such passageway or corridor is upgraded to comply with Section EX-605.3.2.1.

**EX-605.12 Exit access travel distance.** The maximum length of exit access travel from the most remote point in the work area shall not exceed the requirements of Section 1004.2.4 of the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Group B Occupancies, the maximum length of travel from the most remote point in the work area to an exit shall not exceed 300 feet (92 440 m) in buildings without a sprinkler system and 350 feet (106 680 m) in buildings with a sprinkler system.
2. In Public Garages (S-2) the maximum length to an exit or car ramp shall not exceed 150 feet (45 720 m) in non-sprinklered areas and 200 feet (60 960 m) in sprinklered areas.

**SECTION EX-606 ACCESSIBILITY**

**EX-606.1 General.** A building, facility or element that is altered shall comply with Section EX - 506.

**EX-606.2 Stairs and escalators in existing buildings.** In alterations where an escalator or stair is added where none existed previously an accessible route shall be provided in accordance with Section 1104 of the *Building Code*.

**SECTION EX-607 STRUCTURAL**

**EX-607.1 General.** Where alteration work includes installation of additional equipment that is structurally supported by the building or reconfiguration of space such that portions of the building become subjected to higher gravity loads as required by Tables 1607.1 and 1607.6 of the *Building Code*, the provisions of this section shall apply.

**EX-607.2 Reduction of strength.** Alterations shall not reduce the structural strength or stability of the building, structure or any individual member thereof.

**Exception:** Such reduction shall be allowed as long as the strength and the stability of the building are not reduced to below the *Building Code* levels

**EX-607.3 New structural members.** New structural members in alterations, including connections and anchorage, shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**EX-607.4 Existing structural members.** Existing structural components supporting additional equipment or subjected to additional loads based on *Building Code* Tables 1607.1 and 1607.6 as a result of a reconfiguration of spaces shall comply with Sections EX-607.4.1 through EX-607.4.3.

**EX-607.4.1 Gravity loads.** Existing structural elements supporting any additional gravity loads as a result of additional equipment or space reconfiguration shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.

2. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with not more than 5 dwelling units or guest rooms used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and its alteration comply with the Conventional Light-Frame Construction methods of the *Building Code* or the provisions of the *Residential Code*.

**EX-607.4.2 Lateral loads.** Buildings in which Level 2 alterations increase the seismic base shear by more than 5 percent shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 7.

**EX-607.4.3 Snow drift loads.** Any structural element of an existing building subjected to additional loads from the effects of snow drift as a result of additional equipment shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.
2. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with no more than 5 dwelling units or guest rooms used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and its alteration comply with the Conventional Light-Frame Construction methods of the *Building Code* or the provisions of the *Residential Code*.

**SECTION EX-608 ELECTRICAL**

**EX-608.1 New installations.** All newly-installed electrical equipment and wiring relating to work done in any work area shall comply with the materials and methods requirements of Chapter 5.

**Exception:** Electrical equipment and wiring in newly installed partitions and ceilings shall comply with all applicable requirements of the *Electrical Code*.

**EX-608.2 Existing installations.** Existing wiring in all work areas in Use Groups A-1, A-2, A-5, H, and I shall be upgraded to meet the materials and methods requirements of Chapter 5.

**EX-608.3 Residential occupancies.** In Groups R-2, R-3, R-4 Occupancies and buildings regulated by the *Residential Code*, the requirements of Sections EX-608.3.1 through EX-608.3.7 shall be applicable only to work areas located within a dwelling unit.

**EX-608.3.1 Enclosed areas.** All enclosed areas, other than closets, kitchens, basements, garages, hallways, laundry areas, utility areas, storage areas and bathrooms shall have a minimum of two duplex receptacle outlets or one duplex receptacle outlet and one ceiling or wall type lighting outlet.

**EX-608.3.2 Kitchens.** Kitchen areas shall have a minimum of two duplex receptacle outlets.

**EX-608.3.3 Laundry areas.** Laundry areas shall have a minimum of one duplex receptacle outlet located near the laundry equipment and installed on an independent circuit.

**EX-608.3.4 Ground fault circuit interruption.** Newly installed receptacle outlets shall be provided with ground fault circuit interruption as required by the *Electrical Code*.

**EX-608.3.5 Minimum lighting outlets.** At least one lighting outlet shall be provided in every bathroom, hallway, stairway, attached garage and detached garage with electric power, and to illuminate outdoor entrances and exits.

**EX-608.3.6 Utility rooms and basements** At least one lighting outlet shall be provided in utility rooms and basements where these spaces are used for storage or contain equipment requiring service.

**EX-608.3.7 Clearance for equipment.** Clearance for electrical service equipment shall be provided in accordance with the *Electrical Code*.

## **SECTION EX-609 MECHANICAL**

**EX-609.1** All mechanical systems in any work area under this chapter shall comply with the requirements of the *District of Columbia Mechanical Code*.

## **SECTION 610 PLUMBING**

**610.1 Minimum fixtures.** Where the occupant load of the story is increased by more than 20 percent, plumbing fixtures for the story shall be provided in quantities specified in the *Plumbing Code* based on the increased occupant load.

## **SECTION 611 FUEL GAS**

**611.1 General.** All newly installed fuel gas piping, equipment, appliances, and venting systems shall comply with the materials and methods requirements of Chapter 5.



## **CHAPTER 7 ALTERATIONS – LEVEL 3**

### **SECTION EX -701 GENERAL**

**EX-701.1 Scope.** Alterations classified as Level 3 alterations as described in Section EX-305 shall comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

**EX-701.2 Compliance.** In addition to the provisions of this chapter work shall comply with all the requirements of Chapters 5 and 6. The requirements of Sections EX-603, EX-604, and EX-605 shall apply within all work areas regardless of whether or not they include exits and corridors shared by more than one tenant and regardless of the occupant load.

**Exception:** Buildings in which the reconfiguration of space affecting exits or shared egress access is exclusively the result of compliance with the accessibility requirements of Section EX-506.2 shall not be required to comply with this Chapter.

### **SECTION EX-702 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY**

**EX-702.1 High rise buildings** Any building having occupied floors more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall comply with the requirements of Sections EX-702.1.1 through EX-702.1.3.

**Exception:** Existing high-rise buildings that are stripped of all systems and interior walls in all areas other than those used as public garage, leaving not more than the bare structure, shaft walls and the exterior envelope assemblies, shall be rebuilt in full compliance with Section 403 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-702.1.1 Re-circulating air or exhaust systems.** When a floor is served by a re-circulating air or exhaust system with a capacity greater than 15,000 cfm (701 m<sup>3</sup>/s), that system shall be equipped with approved smoke and heat detection devices installed in accordance with the *Mechanical Code*.

**EX-702.1.2 Elevators.** Where there is an elevator or elevators for use by the public, at least one elevator serving the work area shall comply with emergency operations provisions of the *Building Code*.

**EX-702.2 Boiler and Furnace equipment rooms** Boiler and furnace equipment rooms adjacent to or within the following facilities shall be enclosed by one-hour fire rated construction: day nurseries, children's shelter facilities, residential child care facilities and similar facilities with children below the age of 2-½ years, or which are classified as Group I-2 Occupancy, shelter facilities, residences for the developmentally disabled, group homes, teaching family homes, transitional living homes, rooming and boarding houses, hotels and multiple dwellings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Furnace and boiler equipment of low pressure type, operating at pressures of 15 psig (103.4 KPa) or less for steam equipment or 170 psig (1171 KPa) or less for hot water equipment, when installed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
2. Furnace and boiler equipment of residential R-3 type with 200,000 BTU (211,000 KJ) per hour input rating or less is not required to be enclosed.

**EX-702.2.1 Emergency controls.** Emergency controls for boilers and furnace equipment shall be provided in accordance with the *Mechanical Code* in all buildings classified as day nurseries, children's shelter facilities, residential child care facilities and similar facilities with children below the age of 2-½ years, or which are classified as Group I-2 Occupancy, and in group homes, teaching family homes, and supervised transitional living homes in accordance with the following:

1. Emergency shutoff switches for furnaces and boilers in basements shall be located at the top of the stairs leading to the basement; and
2. Emergency shutoff switches for furnaces and boilers in other enclosed rooms shall be located outside of such room.

## **SECTION EX-703 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS**

**EX-703.1 Existing shafts and vertical openings.** Existing stairways that are part of the means of egress shall be enclosed in accordance with Section EX-603.2.1 between highest work area floor and the level of exit discharge and all floors below.

**EX-703. 2 Fire partitions in Group R-3.** Fire separation in Group R-3 Occupancies shall be in accordance with Section EX-703.2.1.

**EX-703.2.1 Separation required.** Where the work area is in any attached dwelling unit in Group R-3, or any multiple single family (Townhouse) constructed in accordance with the *Residential Code*, walls separating the dwelling units which are not continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing shall be constructed to provide a continuous fire separation using construction materials consistent with the existing wall or complying with the requirements for new structures. All work shall be performed on the side of the wall of the dwelling unit that is part of the work area.

**Exception:** Where alterations or repairs do not result in the removal of wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, walls are not required to be continuous through concealed floor spaces.

**EX-703.3 Interior finish.** Interior finish in exits serving the work area shall comply with Section EX-603.4 between the highest floor on which there is a work area to the floor of exit discharge.

## **SECTION EX-704 FIRE PROTECTION**

**EX-704.1 Automatic sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section EX-604.2 shall be provided in all work areas.

**EX-704.1.1 High-rise buildings.** In high-rise buildings, work areas shall comply with Section EX-604.2.1.

**EX-704.1.1.1** Where Level 3 work areas include 75% or more of the building floors, automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided throughout the entire building in accordance with the *Building Code*, Section 403.2.

**EX-704.1.1.2** Where a complete automatic sprinkler system with sprinkler control valves and water flow devices for each floor is provided throughout, modifications to the minimum type of construction and fire resistance rating requirements of this code are permitted as described in Section 403.3 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-704.1.2 Rubbish and linen chutes.** Rubbish and linen chutes located in the work area shall be provided with automatic sprinkler-protection where protection of the rubbish and linen chute would be required under the provisions of the *Building Code* for new construction.

**EX-704.2 Fire alarm and detection.** Fire alarm and detection systems complying with Sections EX-604.4.1 and EX-604.4.3 shall be provided throughout the building in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-704.2.1 Manual fire alarm systems.** In Groups A, B, E, F, H, I, M, R-1 and R-2 Occupancies a manual fire alarm system shall be provided on all floors in the building where required by the *Building Code*. Alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Section 907 of the *Building Code* and shall be automatically activated as required by the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the *Building Code* does not require a manual fire alarm system.
2. Automatic alarm-initiating devices and notification appliances shall not be required to be installed in tenant spaces outside of the work area.
3. Visual alarm notification appliances are not required, except where an existing alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

**EX-704.3 Additional requirements for high rise buildings.**

**EX-704.3.1 Alterations to 75% of floors.** Where 75% of the floors include Level 3 Alteration work areas, the building shall comply with Section EX-604.2.1.2.

**EX-704.3.2 Alterations to 100% of floors.** Where 100% of the floors include Level 3 Alteration work areas, the building shall comply with Section EX-704.3.2.1 and the following additional requirements:

1. **Fire Department Communication System.** Comply with Section 403.7 of the *Building Code*.
2. **Fire Command.** Comply with Section 403.8 of the *Building Code*, except that the command center may be located anywhere on the building periphery with direct access from a public way, or in an interior location as approved by the Fire Official.

## **SECTION EX-705 MEANS OF EGRESS**

**EX-705.1 General.** The means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-605 except as specifically required in Sections EX-705.2 and EX-705.3.

**EX-705.2 Means of egress lighting.** Means of egress from the highest work area floor to the floor of exit discharge shall be provided with artificial lighting within the exit enclosure in accordance with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

**EX-705.3 Exit signs.** Means of egress from the highest work area floor to the floor of exit discharge shall be provided with exit signs in accordance with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

## **SECTION EX-706 ACCESSIBILITY**

**EX-706.1 General.** A building, facility or element that is altered shall comply with Section EX-605.

## **SECTION EX-707 STRUCTURAL**

**EX-707.1 General.** Where buildings are undergoing Level 3 Alterations including structural alterations, the provisions of this section shall apply.

**EX-707.2 Reduction of strength.** Alterations shall not reduce the structural strength or stability of the building, structure or any individual member thereof.

**Exception:** Such reduction shall be allowed provided that the structural strength and the stability of the building are not reduced to below the *Building Code* levels.

**EX-707.3 New structural members.** New structural members in alterations, including connections and anchorage, shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**EX-707.4 Minimum design loads.** The minimum design loads on existing elements of a structure that do not support additional loads as a result of an alteration shall be the loads applicable at the time the building was constructed.

**EX-707.5 Structural alterations.** Buildings and structures undergoing structural alterations shall comply with this section.

**EX-707.5.1 Evaluation and analysis.** An engineering evaluation and analysis which establishes the structural adequacy of the altered structure shall be prepared by a registered design professional and submitted to the code official where more than 30 percent, within a 12 months period, of the total floor and roof areas of the building or structure have been or are proposed to be involved in structural alteration. The evaluation and analysis shall demonstrate that the building or the buildings' structural system once altered complies with the *Building Code* for wind loading and with reduced *Building Code* level seismic forces as specified in Section 407.1.1.3 for seismic loading. For seismic considerations the analysis shall be based upon one of the procedures specified in Section 407.1.1.1 The areas to be counted towards the 30 percent shall be those areas tributary to the vertical load carrying components such as joists, beams, columns, walls and other structural components that have been or will be removed, added or altered, as well as areas such as mezzanines, penthouses, roof structures and infilled courts and shafts.

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with no more than 5 dwelling units or guest rooms used solely for residential purposes altered based on the Conventional Light-Frame Construction methods of the *Building Code* or in compliance with the provisions of the *Residential Code*.
2. Where such alterations involve only the lowest story of a building and Change of Occupancy Provisions of Chapter 8 do not apply, only the lateral force resisting components in and below that story need comply with this Section.

**EX-707.5.2 Limited Structural Alteration.** Where not more than 30% of the total floor and roof areas of the building are involved in structural alteration within a 12-month period, the evaluation and analysis shall demonstrate that the altered building or structure complies with the loads applicable at the time the building was constructed.

**EX-707.6 Additional vertical loads.** Where gravity loading is increased on the roof or floor of a building or structure, all structural members affected by such increase in loading shall meet the gravity load requirements of *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.
2. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with no more than 5 dwelling units or guest rooms used solely for residential purposes altered based on the Conventional Light-Frame

Construction methods of the *Building Code* or in compliance with the provisions of the *Residential Code*.

**EX-707.7 Voluntary lateral force resisting system alterations.** Alterations of existing structural elements that are initiated for the purpose of increasing the lateral force-resisting strength or stiffness of an existing structure, and are not required by other sections of this code, shall not be required to be designed for forces conforming to the *Building Code* provided that an engineering analysis is submitted to show that:

1. The capacity of existing structural elements required to resist forces is not reduced.
2. The lateral loading to existing structural elements is not increased beyond their capacity.
3. New structural elements are detailed and connected to the existing structural elements as required by the *Building Code*.
4. New or relocated non-structural elements are detailed and connected to existing or new structural elements as required by the *Building Code* and
5. A dangerous condition as defined in this code is not created.

Voluntary alterations to lateral force resisting systems conducted in accordance with Appendix A and the referenced standards of this code shall be permitted.

## **SECTION EX-708 MECHANICAL**

**EX-708.1 General.** All mechanical systems in any work area under this chapter shall comply with the requirements of the *District of Columbia Mechanical Code*.

## **SECTION EX-709 PLUMBING**

**EX-709.1 General.** All plumbing systems in any work area under this chapter shall comply with the requirements of the *Plumbing Code*.

**Exception:** Alterations and repairs of existing buildings in which the estimated cost equals or exceeds 50 percent of the assessed value of the property before the alterations and repairs are started, and which have downspouts connected to a sanitary or combined sewer, shall be required to disconnect the roof downspouts allowing storm water to be discharged to a separate storm sewer if available, or to vegetative areas such as lawns, gardens, grassy swales, or bioretention cells on the same record lot, provided it is feasible to conform with the storm water discharge provisions in Section P-1101.2.2 of the *Plumbing Code*.

## **SECTION 710 FUEL GAS**

**710.1 General.** All newly installed fuel gas piping, equipment, appliances, and venting systems shall comply with the materials and methods requirements of the *Fuel Gas Code*.

## **CHAPTER 8 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY**

### **SECTION EX-801 GENERAL**

**EX-801.1 Repair and alteration with no change of occupancy classification.** Any repair or alteration work undertaken in connection with a change of occupancy that does not involve a change of occupancy classification as described in the *Building Code* shall conform to the applicable requirements for the work as classified in Chapter 3 and the requirements of Sections EX-802 through EX-811.

**Exceptions:**

1. Compliance with all the provisions of Chapter 7 is not required where the change of occupancy classification complies with the requirements of Section EX-812.3.
2. As modified in Section 1004.0 for historic buildings.
3. As permitted in Chapter 12.

**EX-801.2 Part change of occupancy group.** Where a portion of an existing building is changed to a new occupancy group, Section EX-812 shall apply.

**EX-801.3 Certificate of occupancy required.** A certificate of occupancy shall be issued where a change of occupancy occurs which results in being classified in a different occupancy classification as determined by the *Building Code*.

### **SECTION EX-802 SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY**

**EX-802.1 Compliance with the building code.** Where the character of use of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed to one of the following special use or occupancy categories as defined in Chapter 4 of the *Building Code*, the building shall comply with all the applicable requirements of the *Building Code*:

1. Covered mall buildings,
2. Atriums,
3. Motor vehicle related occupancies,
4. Aircraft Related occupancies,
5. Motion picture projection rooms,



6. Stages and platforms,
7. Special amusement buildings,
8. Incidental use areas,
9. Hazardous materials.

**EX-802.2 Underground buildings.** An underground building in which there is a change of use shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code* applicable to underground structures.

## **SECTION EX-803 BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS**

**EX-803.1 General.** Building elements and materials in portions of buildings undergoing a change of occupancy classification shall comply with Section EX-812.

## **SECTION EX - EX-804 FIRE PROTECTION**

**EX-804.1 General.** Fire protection requirements of Section EX-812 shall apply where a building or portions thereof undergoes a change of occupancy classification.

## **SECTION EX - EX-805 EGRESS**

**EX-805.1 General.** Means of egress in portions of buildings undergoing a change of occupancy classification shall comply with Section EX-812.

## **SECTION EX-806 ACCESSIBILITY**

**EX-806.1 General.** Accessibility in portions of buildings undergoing a change of occupancy classification shall comply with Section EX-812.

## **SECTION EX-807 STRUCTURAL**

**EX-807.1 Gravity loads.** Buildings or portions thereof subject to a change of occupancy where such change in the nature of occupancy results in higher uniform or concentrated loads based on *Building Code* Tables 1607.1 and 1607.6, shall comply with the gravity load provisions of the *Building Code*.

**Exception:** Structural elements whose force stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.

**EX-807.2 Snow and wind loads.** Buildings and structures subject to a change of occupancy where such change in the nature of occupancy results in higher wind or snow importance factors based on *Building Code* Table 1604.5, shall be analyzed and shall comply with the applicable wind or snow load provisions of the *Building Code*.

**Exception:** Where the new occupancy with higher importance factor is less than or equal to 10% of the total building floor area. The cumulative effect of the area of occupancy changes shall be considered for the purposes of this exception.

**EX-807.3 Seismic loads.** Existing buildings with a change of occupancy shall comply with the seismic provisions of Sections EX-807.3.1 and EX-807.3.2.

**EX-807.3.1 Compliance with the *Building Code*.** When a building or portion thereof is subject to change of occupancy where such a change in the nature of the occupancy results in a higher Seismic Factor based on Table 1604.5 of the *Building Code* or when a change of occupancy results in a building being reclassified to a higher Hazard Category as shown in Table EX-812.4.1, and for M occupancy being changed to A, E, I-1, R-1, R-2 or R-4 occupancies with two-thirds or more of the floors involved in Alteration-Level 3 type of work, the building shall conform to the seismic requirements of the *Building Code* for the new Seismic Use Group.

**Exceptions:**

1. Group M occupancies being changed to A, E, I-1, R-1, R-2 or R-4 occupancies for buildings less than six stories in height and in Seismic Design Category A, B and C.
2. Specific detailing provisions required for a new structure are not required to be met where it can be shown an acceptable level of performance and seismic safety is obtained for the applicable seismic use group using reduced *Building Code* level seismic forces as specified in Section 407.1.1.3. The rehabilitation procedures shall be approved by the code official and shall consider the regularity, over-strength, redundancy and ductility of the lateral load resisting system within the context of the existing detailing of the system.
3. Where the area of the new occupancy with higher Hazard Category is less than or equal to 10% of the total building floor area and the new occupancy is not classified as Seismic Use Group III. For the purposes of this exception where a structure is occupied for two or more occupancies not included in the same seismic use group, the structure shall be assigned the classification of the highest seismic use group corresponding to the various occupancies. Where structures have two or more portions that are structurally separated in accordance with the *Building Code* Section 1620, each portion shall be separately classified. Where a structurally separated portion of a structure provides required access to, required egress from, or shares life safety components with another portion having a higher seismic use group, both portions shall be assigned the higher seismic use group. The cumulative effect of the area of occupancy changes shall be considered for the purposes of this exception.
4. When the new occupancy with higher Hazard Category is within only one story of a building or structure, only the lateral force resisting elements in that story and all lateral force resisting elements below that story shall be required to comply with Section EX-807.3.1 and exception 2. The lateral forces generated by masses of such upper floors shall be included in the analysis and design of the lateral force resisting

systems for the strengthened floor. Such forces may be applied to the floor level immediately above the topmost strengthened floor and distributed in that floor in a manner consistent with the construction and layout of the exempted floor.

5. Unreinforced masonry bearing wall buildings in Seismic Use Group 1 and in Seismic Use Group 1 and when in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C shall be allowed to be strengthened to meet the requirements of Appendix A of the code (GSREB).

**EX-807.3.2 Access of seismic use group III.** Where the change of occupancy is such that compliance with Section EX-807.3.1 is required and the Seismic Use Group is a Category III, the operational access to such a Seismic Use Group III existing structure shall not be through an adjacent structure.

**Exception:** Where the adjacent structure conforms to the requirements for Seismic Use Group III structures. Where operational access is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an interior lot line or less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from another structure, access protection from potential falling debris shall be provided by the owner of the Seismic Use Group III structure.

## **SECTION EX-808 ELECTRICAL**

**EX-808.1 Special occupancies.** Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed to one of the following special occupancies as described in the *Electrical Code*, the electrical wiring and equipment of the building or portion thereof that contains the proposed occupancy shall comply with an applicable requirements of the *Electrical Code* regardless of whether a change of occupancy group is involved:

1. hazardous locations,
2. commercial garages, repair and storage,
3. aircraft hangars,
4. gasoline dispensing and service stations,
5. bulk storage plants,
6. spray application, dipping and coating processes,
7. health care facilities,
8. places of assembly,
9. theaters, audience areas of motion picture and television studios and similar locations,

10. motion picture and television studios and similar locations,
11. motion picture projectors, and
12. agricultural buildings.

**EX-808.2 Unsafe conditions.** Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed all unsafe conditions shall be corrected, without requiring that all parts of the electrical system be brought up to the current edition of the *Electrical Code*.

**EX-808.3 Service upgrade.** Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed electrical service shall be upgraded to meet the requirements of the *Electrical Code* for the new occupancy.

**EX-808.4 Number of electrical outlets.** Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed the number of electrical outlets shall comply with the *Electrical Code* for the new occupancy.

## **SECTION EX-809 MECHANICAL AND FUEL GAS**

**EX-809.1 Mechanical requirements.** Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed such that the new occupancy is subject to different kitchen exhaust requirements or to increased mechanical ventilation requirements in accordance with the *Mechanical Code*, the intent of the respective *Mechanical Code* provisions shall be complied with.

**EX-809.2 Fuel gas requirements.** Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed such that a provision of the *Fuel Gas Code* would be applied differently to the new occupancy, such provision shall be complied with.

## **SECTION EX-810 PLUMBING**

**EX-810.1 Increased demand.** Where the occupancy of a existing building or part of an existing building is changed such that the new occupancy is subject to increased or different plumbing fixture requirements or to increased water supply requirements in accordance with the *Plumbing Code*, the intent of the respective *Plumbing Code* provisions shall be complied with.

**EX-810.2 Food handling occupancies.** If the new occupancy is a food handling establishment, all existing sanitary waste lines above the food or drink preparation or storage areas shall be panned or otherwise protected to prevent leaking pipes or condensation on pipes from contaminating food or drink. New drainage lines shall not be installed above such areas, and shall be protected in accordance with the *Plumbing Code*.

**EX-810.3 Interceptor required.** If the new occupancy will produce grease or oil laden wastes, interceptors shall be provided as required in the *Plumbing Code*.

**EX-810.4 Chemical wastes.** If the new occupancy will produce chemical wastes, the following shall apply:

1. If the existing piping is not compatible with the chemical waste, the waste shall be neutralized prior to entering the drainage system or the piping shall be changed to a compatible material.
2. No chemical waste shall discharge to a public sewer system without the approval of the sewage authority.

**EX-810.5 Group I-2.** If the occupancy group is changed to Group I-2, the plumbing system shall comply with the applicable requirements of the *Plumbing Code*.

## **SECTION EX-811 OTHER REQUIREMENTS**

### **EX-811.1 Health and hygiene**

**EX-811.1.1 Light and ventilation.** Light and ventilation shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code* for the new occupancy

## **SECTION EX-812 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION**

**EX-812.1 Compliance with Chapter 7.** The occupancy classification of an existing building may be changed, provided the building meets all the requirements of Chapter 7 applied throughout the building for the new occupancy group, and complies with the requirements of Sections EX-802 through EX-812.

**EX-812.1.1 Change of occupancy group without separation.** Where a portion of an existing building is changed to a new occupancy group, and that portion is not separated from the remainder of the building with fire barriers having a fire resistance rating as required in the *Building Code* for the separate occupancy, the entire building shall comply with all of the requirements of Chapter 7 applied throughout the building for the most restrictive Use Group in the building and with the requirements of this Chapter.

**Exception:** Compliance with all the provisions of Chapter 7 is not required when the change of occupancy group complies with the requirements of Section EX-812.3.

**EX-812.1.2 Change of occupancy group with separation.** A portion of an existing building that is changed to a new occupancy group, and is separated from the remainder of the building with fire barriers having a fire resistance rating as required in the *Building Code* for the separate occupancy, shall comply with all the requirements of Chapter 7 for the new occupancy group, and with the requirements of this Chapter.

**Exception:** Compliance with all the provisions of Chapter 7 is not required when the change of use complies with the requirements of Section EX-812.3.

**EX-812.2 Hazard category classifications.** The relative degree of hazard between different occupancy groups shall be as set forth in the hazard category classifications, Tables EX-812.4.1, EX-812.4.3 and EX-812.4.4 of Sections EX-812.4.1 EX-812.4.3 and EX-812.4.4.

**EX-812.2.1 Change of occupancy classification to an equal or lesser hazard.** An existing building or portion thereof may have its use changed to a occupancy group within the same hazard classification category or to a occupancy group in a lesser hazard classification category (higher number) in all four hazard category classifications, provided it complies with the provisions of Chapter 7 for the new occupancy group, applied throughout the building, or portion thereof.

**Exception:** Compliance with all the provisions of Chapter 7 is not required where the change of occupancy group complies with the requirements of Section EX-812.3.

**EX-812.2.2 Change of occupancy classification to a higher hazard.** An existing building shall comply with all the applicable requirements of this Chapter when a change in occupancy group will place it in a higher hazard category or when the occupancy group is changed within Group H.

**EX-812.2.3 Change of occupancy classification to a higher hazard in all three hazard classifications.** An existing building may have its use changed to a higher hazard rating (lower number) in all three hazard category classifications designated in EX-812.4.1, EX-812.4.3 and EX-812.4.4 provided it complies with this Chapter or with Chapter 12.

**EX-812.3 Change of occupancy classification to an equal or lesser hazard in all three hazard classifications.** A change of use to an occupancy group within the same hazard classification category or to an occupancy group in a lesser hazard classification category (higher number) in the three hazard category classifications addressed by EX-812.4.1, EX-812.4.3 and EX-812.4.4 shall be permitted in an existing building or portion thereof provided the provisions of Sections EX-812.3.1 through EX-812.3.5 are met.

**EX-812.3.1 Minimum requirements.** Regardless of the occupancy group involved, the following requirements shall be met:

1. The capacity of the means of egress shall comply with *Building Code*.
2. The interior finish of walls and ceilings shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code* for the new occupancy group.

**EX-812.3.2 Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, or R-4 .** Where the new use is classified as Group I-1, R-1 or R-2, or R-4 Occupancy the following requirements shall be met.

1. Corridor doors and transoms shall comply with the requirements of Sections EX-605.5.1 and EX-605.5.2.

2. Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-604.2.
3. Fire alarm and detection systems shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-604.4.

**EX-812.3.3 Group I-2.** Where the new use is classified as Group I-2 Occupancy, the following requirements shall be met:

1. Egress doorways from patient sleeping rooms shall and suites of rooms shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-605.4.1.2.
2. Shaft enclosures shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-703.1.
3. Smoke barriers shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-603.3.
4. Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-604.2.
5. Fire alarm and detection systems shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-604.4.

**EX-812.3.4 Group I-3.** Where the new use is classified as Group I-3 Occupancy, the following requirements shall be met:

1. Locking of egress doors shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-605.4.5.
2. Shaft enclosures shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-703.1.
3. Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-604.2.
4. Fire alarm and detection systems shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-604.4.

**EX-812.3.5 Group R-3.** Where the new use is classified as Group R-3 Occupancy, the following requirements shall be met:

1. Dwelling unit separation shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-703.2.1.
2. **The smoke alarm requirements of Section EX-604.4.3 shall be met.**

**EX-812.4 Fire and life safety**

**EX-812.4.1 Means of Egress, General.** Hazard categories in regard to life safety and means of egress shall be in accordance with Table EX-812.4.1.

**TABLE EX-812.4.1  
HAZARD CATEGORIES AND CLASSIFICATIONS:  
LIFE SAFETY AND EXITS**

<b>RELATIVE HAZARD</b>	<b>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION</b>
1 (Highest Hazard)	H
2	I-2, I-3, I-4
3	A, E, I-1, M, R-1, R-2, R-4
4	B, F-1, R-3, S-1
5 (Lowest Hazard)	F-2, S-2, U

**EX-812.4.1.1 Means of egress for change to higher hazard category.** When a change of occupancy group is made to a higher hazard category (lower number) as shown in Table EX-812.4.1, the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10 of the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Stairways shall be enclosed in compliance with applicable provisions of Section EX-703.1.
2. Existing stairways including handrails and guards complying with the requirements of Chapter 7 shall be permitted for continued use subject to approval of the code official.
3. Any stairway replacing an existing stairway within a space where, because of existing construction, the pitch or slope cannot be reduced, shall not be required to comply with the maximum riser height and minimum tread depth requirements.
4. Existing corridor walls constructed of wood lath and plaster in good condition or ½- inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard shall be permitted.
5. Existing corridor doorways, transoms and other corridor openings shall comply with the requirements in Sections EX-605.5.1, EX-605.5.2 and EX-605.5.3.
6. Existing dead end corridors shall comply with the requirements in Section EX-605.6.



7. An existing operable window with clear opening area no less than 4 square feet (0.38 m<sup>2</sup>), and with minimum opening height and width of 22 inches (559 mm) and 20 inches (508 mm) respectively shall be accepted as an emergency escape and rescue opening.

**EX-812.4.1.2 Means of egress when change of use to equal or lower hazard category.**

When a change of occupancy group is made to an equal or lesser hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.1, existing elements of the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-705 for the new occupancy group. Newly constructed or configured means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10 of the *Building Code*.

**Exception:**

1. Any stairway replacing an existing stairway within a space where, because of existing construction, the pitch or slope cannot be reduced, shall not be required to comply with the maximum riser height and minimum tread depth requirements.
2. Compliance with Section EX-705 is not required where the change of occupancy group complies with the requirements of Section EX-812.3.

**EX-812.4.1.3 Egress capacity.** Egress capacity shall meet or exceed the occupant load as specified in *the Building Code* if the change of Occupancy Classification is to an equal or lesser hazard category when evaluated in accordance with Table EX-812.4.1.

**EX-812.4.1.4 Handrails.** Existing stairways shall comply with the handrail requirements in Section EX-605.9 in the area of the change of occupancy classification.

**EX-812.4.1.5 Guards.** Existing guards shall comply with the guardrail requirements in Section EX-605.10 within the area of the change of occupancy classification.

**EX-812.4.2 Enclosure of vertical shafts.** Enclosure of vertical shafts shall be in accordance with Section EX-802.4.2.1 through EX-802.4.2.4.

**EX-812.4.2.1 Minimum requirements.** Vertical shafts shall be designed to meet the *Building Code* requirements for atriums or the requirements of this Section.

**EX-812.4.2.2 Stairways.** When a change of occupancy group is made to a higher hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.1, interior stairways shall be enclosed as required by the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. In other than Group I Occupancy, an enclosure shall not be required for openings serving only one adjacent floor and not connected with corridors or stairways serving other floors.

2. Unenclosed existing stairways need not be enclosed in a continuous vertical shaft if each story is separated from other stories by one-hour fire-resistive construction or approved wired glass set in steel frames and all exit corridors are sprinklered. The openings between the corridor and occupant space shall have at least one sprinkler head above the openings of the tenant side. The sprinkler system shall be permitted to be supplied from the domestic water-supply systems, provided the system is of adequate pressure, capacity and sizing for the combined domestic and sprinkler requirements.
3. Existing penetrations of stairway enclosures shall be accepted if they are protected in accordance with the *Building Code*.

**EX-812.4.2.3 Other vertical shafts.** Interior vertical shafts other than stairways, including but not limited to elevator hoistways and service and utility shafts, shall be enclosed as required by the *Building Code* when there is a change of use to a higher hazard category in Table EX-812.4.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Existing one-hour interior shaft enclosures shall be accepted where a higher rating is required.
2. Vertical openings, other than stairways, in buildings other than Group I Occupancy and connecting less than 6 stories in height shall not be required to be enclosed if the entire building is provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

**EX-812.4.2.4 Openings.** All openings into existing vertical shaft enclosures shall be protected by fire assemblies having a fire-protection rating of not less than one hour and shall be maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector. All other openings shall be fire protected in an approved manner. Existing fusible link-type automatic door-closing devices shall be permitted in all shafts except stairways if the fusible link rating does not exceed 135°F (57°C.).

**EX-812.4.3 Heights and areas.** Hazard categories in regard to height and area shall be in accordance with Table EX-812.4.3.

**TABLE EX-812.4.3  
HAZARD CATEGORIES AND CLASSIFICATIONS:  
HEIGHTS AND AREAS**

RELATIVE HAZARD	OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION
1 (Highest Hazard)	H
2	A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, R-

	1, R-2, R-4
3	E, F-1, S-1, M
4 (Lowest Hazard)	B, F-2, S-2, A-5, R-3, U

**EX-812.4.3.1 Height and area for change to higher hazard category.** When a change of occupancy group is made to a higher hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.3, heights and areas of buildings and structures shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 5 of the *Building Code* for the new occupancy group.

**Exception:** A 1-story building changed into Group E shall not be required to meet the area limitations of the *Building Code*.

**EX-812.4.3.2 Height and area for change to equal or lesser hazard category.** When a change of use is made to an equal or lesser hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.3, the height and area of the existing building shall be deemed to be acceptable.

**EX-812.4.3.3 Fire barriers .** When a change of occupancy group is made to a higher hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.3, fire barriers in separated mixed use buildings shall comply with the fire resistance requirements in the *Building Code*.

**Exception:** Where the fire barriers are required to have a one-hour fire resistance rating, existing wood lath and plaster in good condition or existing ½-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard shall be permitted.

**EX-812.4.4 Exterior wall fire resistance ratings.** Hazard categories in regard to fire resistance ratings of exterior walls shall be in accordance with Table EX-812.4.4.

**TABLE EX-812.4.4  
HAZARD CATEGORIES AND CLASSIFICATIONS:  
EXPOSURE OF EXTERIOR WALLS**

<b>RELATIVE HAZARD</b>	<b>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION</b>
1 (Highest Hazard)	H
2	F-1, M, S-1
3	A, B, E, I, R
4 (Lowest Hazard)	F-2, S-2, U

**EX-812.4.4.1 Exterior wall rating for change of occupancy classification to a higher hazard category.** Where a change of occupancy group is made to a higher hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.4, exterior walls shall have fire resistance and exterior opening protectives as required by the *Building Code*. This provision shall not apply to walls at right angles to the property line.

**Exception:** A two hour fire resistance rating shall be allowed where the building does not exceed three stories in height and is classified as one of the following Groups: A-2 and A-3 with an occupant load of less than 300, B, F, M, or S.

**EX-812.4.4.2 Exterior wall rating for change of occupancy classification to an equal or lesser hazard category.** When a change of occupancy group is made to an equal or lesser hazard category as shown in Table EX-812.4.4, existing exterior walls, including openings, shall be accepted.

**EX-812.4.4.3 Opening protectives.** Openings in exterior walls shall be protected as required by the *Building Code*. When openings in the exterior walls are required to be protected due to distance from the property line, the sum of the area of such openings shall not exceed 50 percent of the total area of the wall in each story.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the *Building Code* permits openings in excess of 50 percent.
2. Protected openings shall not be required in buildings of occupancy group R, which do not exceed three stories in height and which are located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the property line.
3. Where exterior opening protectives are required, an automatic sprinkler system throughout may be substituted for opening protection.
4. Exterior opening protectives are not required when the change of occupancy group is to an equal or lower hazard classification in accordance with Table EX-812.4.4.

**EX-812.5 Accessibility.** Existing buildings or portions thereof that undergo a change of occupancy classification shall have all of the following accessible features:

1. At least one accessible building entrance.
2. At least one accessible route from an accessible building entrance to primary function areas.
3. Signage complying with Section 1110 of the *Building Code*.
4. Accessible parking, where parking is being provided.
5. At least one accessible passenger-loading zone, where loading zones are provided.
6. At least one accessible route connecting accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones to an accessible entrance. Where it is technically infeasible to comply with the new construction standards for any of these requirements for a change of group or occupancy, the above items shall conform to the requirements to the maximum extent technically feasible. Change of group or occupancy that incorporate any alterations or additions shall comply with this section and Sections EX-506.1 and EX-506.2 as applicable.

**Exception:** Type B dwelling units required by Section 1107.6.2 of the *Building Code* are not required to be provided in existing buildings and facilities.

## **EX-812. 6 Structural safety**

**EX-812.6.1 Seismic loads.** Existing buildings with a change of Occupancy Classification shall comply with the seismic provisions of Section EX-807.

## **CHAPTER 9 ADDITIONS**

### **SECTION EX-901 GENERAL**

**EX-901.1 Scope.** An addition to a building or structure shall comply with the building, plumbing, electrical, fuel gas and mechanical codes, without requiring the existing building or structure to comply with any requirements of those codes or of these provisions.

**Exception:** In flood hazard areas, the existing building is subject to the requirements of Section EX-903.5 of this Chapter.

**EX-901.2 Creation or extension of nonconformity.** An addition shall not create or extend any non-conformity in the existing building to which the addition is constructed with regard to accessibility, structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, or the capacity of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems.

**EX-901.3 Other work.** Any repair or alteration work within an existing building to which an addition is being made shall comply with the applicable requirements for the work as classified in Chapter 3.

### **SECTION EX-902 HEIGHTS AND AREAS**

**EX-902.1 Height limitations.** No addition shall increase the height of an existing building beyond that permitted under the applicable provisions of Chapter 5 of the *Building Code* for new buildings.

**EX-902.2 Area limitations.** No addition shall increase the area of an existing building beyond that permitted under the applicable provisions of Chapter 5 of the *Building Code* for new buildings unless fire separation as required in the *Building Code* is provided.

**Exceptions:**

1. Existing one and two story buildings shall be permitted to be expanded beyond what is permitted by up to 25 percent of the existing floor area, not to exceed an area of 125 percent of that permitted by the *Building Code*, without providing fire separation.
2. Infilling of floor openings, non-occupiable appendages such as elevator and exit stair shafts, and the addition of mezzanines and equipment penthouses shall be permitted beyond that permitted by the *Building Code*.

**EX-902.3 Fire protection systems.** Existing fire areas increased by the addition shall comply with Chapter 9 of the *Building Code*.

## **SECTION EX-903 STRUCTURAL**

**EX-903.1 Compliance with *Building Code*.** Additions to existing buildings or structures are new construction and shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**EX-903.2 Additional gravity loads.** Existing structural elements supporting any additional gravity loads as a result of additions shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions :**

1. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.
2. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with no more than 5 dwelling units or guestrooms used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition comply with the Conventional Light-Frame Construction methods of the *Building Code* or the provisions of the *Residential Code*.

**EX-903.3 Lateral force resisting system.** The lateral force resisting system of existing buildings to which additions are made shall comply with Sections EX-903.3.1, EX-903.3.2 and EX-903.3.3.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Type V construction, Group R Occupancies where the lateral force story shear in any story is not increased by more than 10 percent.
2. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with no more than 5 dwelling units or guestrooms used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition comply with the Conventional Light-Frame Construction methods of the *Building Code* or the provisions of the *Residential Code*.

3. **Additions where the lateral force story shear in any story is not increased by more than 5 percent.**

**EX-903.3.1 Vertical addition.** Any element of the Lateral Force Resisting System of an existing building subjected to an increase in vertical or lateral loads from the vertical addition shall comply with the lateral load provisions of the *Building Code*.

**EX-903.3.2 Horizontal addition.** Where horizontal additions are structurally connected to an existing structure all lateral force resisting elements of the existing structure affected by such addition shall comply with the lateral load provisions of the *Building Code*. Lateral loads imposed on the elements of the existing structure and the addition shall be determined by a relative stiffness analysis of the combined structure including torsional effects.

**EX-903.3.3 Voluntary addition of structural elements to improve lateral force resisting system.** Voluntary addition of structural elements to improve the lateral force resisting system of a building shall comply with Section EX-707.7.

**EX-903.4 Snow drift loads.** Any structural element of an existing building subjected to additional loads from the effects of snow drift as a result of an addition shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**Exceptions :**

1. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.
2. Buildings of Group R Occupancy with no more than 5 dwelling units or guest rooms used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition comply with the Conventional Light-Frame Construction methods of the *Building Code* or the provisions of the *Residential Code*.

**EX-903.5 Flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas:

1. For horizontal additions that are structurally interconnected to the existing building:
  - 1.1. If the addition and all other proposed work, when combined, constitute substantial improvement, the existing building and the addition shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.
  - 1.2. If the addition constitutes substantial improvement, the existing building and the addition shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.
2. For horizontal additions that are not structurally interconnected to the existing building:
  - 2.1. The addition shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.
  - 2.2. If the addition and all other proposed work, when combined, constitute substantial improvement, the existing building and the addition shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.
3. For vertical additions and all other proposed work, when combined, that constitute substantial improvement, the existing building shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.
4. For a new, replacement, raised or extended foundation, if the foundation work and all other proposed work, when combined, constitute substantial improvement, the existing building shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.

**SECTION EX-904 SMOKE ALARMS IN USE GROUPS R-3 AND R-4**

**EX-904.1 Smoke alarms in addition.** Whenever an addition is made to a building or structure of Use Group R-3 or R- 4, hardwired, interconnected smoke alarms meeting the requirements of the *Building Code* or *Residential Code* as applicable shall be installed and maintained in the addition.

**EX-904.2 Smoke alarms in existing portions of building.** Whenever an addition is made to a building or structure of Use Group R-3 or R-4, the existing building shall be provided with smoke alarms as required by the *Building Code* or the *Residential Code* as applicable. In the



existing building the smoke alarms are not required to be interconnected with smoke alarms in the addition or with smoke detectors in other parts of the base building.

## **SECTION EX-905 ACCESSIBILITY**

**EX-905.1 Minimum requirements.** Accessibility provisions for new construction shall apply to additions. An addition that affects the accessibility to, or contains an area of primary function, shall comply with the requirements in Section EX-506.2 for accessible routes.

## **SECTION EX-906 ENERGY CONSERVATION**

**EX-906.1 Minimum requirements.** Additions to existing buildings or structures may be made to such buildings or structures without making the entire building or structure comply with the requirements of the *Energy Code*. The addition shall conform to the requirements of the *Energy Code* as they relate to new construction only.

## **SECTION EX-907 MEANS OF EGRESS**

**EX-907.1 Egress through existing building.** Additions to an existing building shall be permitted to be served by existing exit access passageways or corridors which comply with Section EX-605 of this code for the combined occupant load of the existing building plus additions, when the combined footprint of all additions does not exceed 25% of the footprint of the existing building.

## **CHAPTER 10**

### **HISTORIC BUILDINGS**

#### **SECTION EX-1001 GENERAL**

**EX-1001.1 Scope.** It is the intent of this chapter to provide means for the preservation of historic buildings. Historic buildings shall comply with the provisions of this chapter relating to their repair, alteration, relocation and change of occupancy.

**EX-1001.2 Report.** A historic building undergoing repair, alteration, or change of occupancy shall be investigated and evaluated. If it is intended that the building meet the requirements of this chapter, a written report shall be prepared and filed with the code official by a registered design professional when in the opinion of the official such a report is necessary. Such report shall identify each required safety feature in compliance with this chapter and where compliance with other chapters of these provisions would be damaging to the contributing historic features. In high seismic zones, a structural evaluation, describing, as a minimum, a complete load path and other earthquake-resistant features shall be prepared. In addition, the report shall describe each feature not in compliance with these provisions and demonstrate how the intent of these provisions is complied with in providing an equivalent level of safety.

**EX-1001.3 Special occupancy exceptions - museums.** When a building that is in Use Group R-3 is also used for Group A, B or M purposes such as museum tours, exhibits and other public assembly activities, or for museums less than 3000 s.f. (279 m<sup>2</sup>) the code official may make a determination that the Use Group is B when life-safety conditions can be demonstrated in accordance with Section EX-1001.2. Adequate means of egress in such buildings, which may include a means of maintaining doors in an open position to permit egress, a limit on building occupancy to an occupant load permitted by the means of egress capacity, a limit on occupancy of certain areas or floors, and/or supervision by a person knowledgeable in the emergency exiting procedures, shall be provided.

**EX-1001.4 Flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas, if all proposed work, including repairs, work required due to a change of occupancy, and alterations, constitutes substantial improvement then the existing building shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.

**Exception:** If a historic building will continue to be a historic building after the proposed work is completed, then the proposed work is not considered to be a substantial improvement. For the purposes of this exception, a historic building is:

- a. Listed or preliminarily determined to be eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places.
- b. Determined by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Interior as contributing to the historical significance of a registered historic district or a district preliminarily determined to qualify as an historic district: or

- c. Designated as historic under a state or local historic preservation program that is approved by the Department of Interior.

## **SECTION EX-1002 REPAIRS**

**EX-1002.1 Requirements.** Repairs to any portion of a historic building or structure shall be permitted with original or like materials and original methods of construction, subject to the provisions of this chapter.

**EX-1002.2 Dangerous buildings.** When a historic building is determined to be dangerous no work shall be required except as necessary to correct identified unsafe conditions.

**EX-1002.3 Relocated buildings.** Foundations of relocated historic buildings and structures shall comply with the *Building Code*. Relocated historic buildings shall otherwise be considered a historic building for the purposes of this code. Relocated historic buildings and structures shall be so sited that exterior wall and opening requirements comply with the *Building Code* or the compliance alternatives of this code.

**EX-1002.4 Repairs, general.** Historic buildings undergoing repairs shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of Chapter 4 except as specifically permitted in this chapter.

**EX-1002.5 Replacement.** Replacement of existing or missing features using original materials shall be permitted. Partial replacement for repairs that match the original in configuration, height and size shall be permitted. Such replacements shall not be required to meet the materials and methods requirements in Section EX-401.2.

**Exception:** Replacement glazing in hazardous locations shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Chapter 24 of the *Building Code*.

## **SECTION EX-1003 FIRE SAFETY**

**EX-1003.1 Scope.** Historic Buildings undergoing alterations, changes of occupancy, or that are moved shall comply with Section EX-1003.

**EX-1003.2 General.** Every historic building that does not conform to the construction requirements specified in this code for the occupancy or use and that constitutes a distinct fire hazard as defined herein shall be provided with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system as determined appropriate by the code official. However, an automatic fire-extinguishing system shall not be used to substitute for, or act as an alternate to, the required number of exits from any facility.

**EX-1003.3 Means of egress.** Existing door openings and corridor and stairway widths of less than that specified elsewhere in this code may be approved, provided that in the opinion of the code official there is sufficient width and height for a person to pass through the opening or traverse the means of egress. When approved by the code official, the front or main exit doors

need not swing in the direction of the path of exit travel, provided other approved means of egress having sufficient capacity to serve the total occupant load are provided.

**EX-1003.4 Transoms.** In fully sprinklered buildings of Groups R-1, R-2 or R-3 Occupancy existing transoms in corridors and other fire-rated walls may be maintained if fixed in the closed position. A sprinkler shall be installed on each side of the transom.

**EX-1003.5 Interior finishes.** The existing finishes of walls and ceilings shall be accepted when it is demonstrated that they are the historic finishes.

**EX-1003.6 Stairway enclosure.** In buildings of three stories or less, exit enclosure construction shall limit the spread of smoke by the use of tight-fitting doors and solid elements. Such elements are not required to have a fire rating.

**EX-1003.7 One-hour fire resistant assemblies.** Where one-hour fire-resistive construction is required by these provisions, it need not be provided regardless of construction or occupancy when the existing wall and ceiling finish is wood or metal lath and plaster.

**EX-1003.8 Glazing in fire-rated systems.** Historic glazing materials in interior walls required to have one-hour fire rating may be permitted when provided with approved smoke seals and when the area affected is provided with an automatic sprinkler system.

**EX-1003.9 Stairway railings.** Grand stairways shall be accepted without complying with the handrail and guardrail requirements. Existing handrails and guards at all stairs shall be permitted to remain, provided they are not in danger of collapsing.

**EX-1003.10 Guards.** Guards shall comply with Sections EX-1003.9.1 and EX-1003.9.2.

**EX-1003.10.1 Height.** Existing guards shall comply with the requirements of Section EX-405.

**EX-1003.10.2 Guard openings.** The spacing between existing intermediate railings or openings in existing ornamental patterns shall be accepted. Missing elements or members of a guard may be replaced in a manner that will preserve the historic appearance of the building or structure.

**EX-1003.11 Exit signs.** Where exit sign or egress path marking location would damage the historic character of the building, alternate exit signs are permitted with approval of the code official. Alternative signs shall identify the exits and egress path.

**EX-1003.12 Automatic fire-extinguishing systems.**

**EX-1003.12.1** Every historical building which cannot be made to conform to the construction requirements specified in the *Building Code* for the occupancy or use, and which constitutes a distinct fire hazard shall be deemed to be in compliance if provided with an approved automatic fire extinguishing system.

**Exception:** When an alternative life–safety system is approved by the code official.

## **SECTION EX-1004 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY**

**EX-1004.1 General.** Historic buildings undergoing a change of occupancy shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 3, except as specifically permitted in this chapter. When Chapter 3 requires compliance with specific requirements of Chapter 4, Chapter 5, or Chapter 6 and when those requirements are subject to the exceptions in Section EX-1002, the same exceptions shall apply in this section.

**EX-1004.2 Building area.** The allowable floor area for historic buildings undergoing a change of occupancy shall be permitted to exceed the allowable areas specified in Chapter 5 of the *Building Code* by 20 percent.

**EX-1004.3 Location on property.** Historic structures undergoing a change of use to a higher hazard category, in accordance with Section EX-812.4.4 may use alternative methods to comply with the fire–resistance and exterior opening protective requirements. Such alternatives shall comply with Section EX-1001.2.

**EX-1004.4 Occupancy Separation.** Required occupancy separations of one–hour may be omitted when the building is provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system throughout.

**EX-1004.5 Roof covering.** Regardless of occupancy or Use Group, roof–covering materials not less than Class C shall be permitted where a fire–retardant roof covering is required.

**EX-1004.6 Means of egress.** Existing door openings and corridor and stairway widths less than those that would be acceptable for non-historic buildings under these provisions shall be approved, provided that in the opinion of the code official, there is sufficient width and height for a person to pass through the opening or traverse the exit and that the capacity of the exit system is adequate for the occupant load, or where other operational controls to limit occupancy are approved by the code official.

**EX-1004.7 Door swing.** When approved by the code official, existing front doors need not swing in the direction of exit travel, provided other approved exits having sufficient capacity to serve the total occupant load are provided.

**EX-1004.8 Transoms.** In corridor walls required to be fire rated by these provisions, existing transoms may be maintained if fixed in the closed position and fixed wired glass set in a steel frame or other approved glazing shall be installed on one side of the transom.

**Exception:** Transoms conforming to Section EX-1003.4 shall be accepted.

**EX-1004.9 Finishes.** Where finish materials are required to have a flame–spread classification of Class III or better, existing nonconforming materials shall be surfaced with an approved fire–retardant paint or finish.

**Exception:** Existing nonconforming materials need not be surfaced with an approved fire-retardant paint or finish when the building is equipped throughout with an automatic fire-suppression system installed in accordance with the *Building Code* and the nonconforming materials can be substantiated as being historic in character.

**EX-1004.10 One-hour fire resistant assemblies.** Where one-hour fire resistant construction is required by these provisions, it need not be provided regardless of construction or occupancy where the existing wall and ceiling finish is wood lath and plaster.

**EX-1004.11 Stairs and railing.** Existing stairways shall comply with the requirements of these provisions. The code official shall grant alternatives for stairways and railings if alternative stairways are found to be acceptable or if judged as meeting the intent of these provisions. Existing stairways shall comply with Section EX-1003.

**Exception:** For buildings less than 3000 s.f. (279 m<sup>2</sup>), existing conditions are permitted to remain at all stairs and rails.

**EX-1004.12 Exit signs.** The code official may accept alternate exit sign locations where such signs would damage the historic character of the building or structure. Such signs shall identify the exits and exit path.

**EX-1004.13 Exit stair live load.** Existing historic stairways in buildings changed to Use Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be accepted where it can be shown that the stairway can support a 75 pounds per square foot (366 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) live load.

**EX-1004.14 Natural light.** When it is determined by the code official that compliance with the natural light requirements of Section EX-811.1.1 will lead to loss of historic character or historic materials in the building, the existing level of natural lighting shall be considered acceptable.

**EX-1004.15 Accessibility requirements.** The provisions of Section EX-812.5 shall apply to buildings and facilities designated as historic structures that undergo a change of occupancy, unless technically infeasible. Where compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, ramps, entrances, or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, as determined by the authority having jurisdiction, the alternative requirements of Sections 1005.1.1 through 1005.1.5 of the *Building Code* for that element shall be permitted.

## **SECTION EX-1005 ALTERATIONS**

**EX-1005.1 Accessibility requirements.** The provisions of Section EX-506 shall apply to buildings and facilities designated as historic structures that undergo alterations, unless technically infeasible. Where compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, ramps, entrances, or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, as determined by the code official, the alternative requirements of Sections EX-1005.1.1 through EX-1005.1.5 of this code for that element shall be permitted.

**EX-1005.1.1 Site arrival points.** At least one main entrance shall be accessible.

**EX-1005.1.2 Multilevel buildings and facilities.** An accessible route from an accessible entrance to public spaces on the level of the accessible entrance shall be provided.

**EX-1005.1.3 Entrances.** At least one main entrance shall be accessible.

**Exceptions:**

1. If a main entrance cannot be made accessible, an accessible non public entrance that is unlocked while the building is occupied shall be provided; or
2. If a main entrance cannot be made accessible, a locked accessible entrance with a notification system or remote monitoring shall be provided.

**EX-1005.1.4 Toilet and bathing facilities.** Where toilet rooms are provided at least one accessible toilet room complying with Section 1108.2.1 of the *Building Code* shall be provided.

**EX-1005.1.5 Ramps.** The slope of a ramp run of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum shall not be steeper than one-unit vertical eight units horizontal (12-percent slope).

## **SECTION EX-1006 STRUCTURAL**

**EX-1006.1 General.** Historic Buildings shall comply with the structural provisions of this code for the appropriate level of rehabilitation being undertaken.

**Exception:** The code official shall be authorized to accept existing floors and approve operational controls that limit the live load on any such floor.

**EX-1006.2 Unsafe structural elements.** Where determination is made by the code official that a component or a portion of a building or structure is dangerous, as defined in this code, and is in need of repair, strengthening or replacement by provisions of this code, only that specific component or portion shall be required to be repaired, strengthened or replaced.

## **CHAPTER 11 RELOCATED OR MOVED BUILDINGS**

### **SECTION EX-1101 GENERAL**

**EX-1101.1 Scope.** This chapter provides requirements for relocated or moved structures.

**EX-1101.2 Conformance.** The building shall be safe for human occupancy as determined by the *Fire Code* and the *Property Maintenance Code*. Any repair, alteration or change in occupancy undertaken within the moved structure shall comply with the requirements of this code applicable to the work being performed. Any field fabricated elements shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code*.

### **SECTION EX-1102 REQUIREMENTS**

**EX-1102.1 Location on the lot.** The building shall be located on the lot in accordance with the requirements of the *Building Code* or the *Residential Code* as applicable.

**EX-1102.2 Foundation.** The foundation system of relocated buildings shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**EX-1102.2.1 Connection to the foundation.** The connection of the relocated building to the foundation shall comply with the *Building Code*.

**EX-1102.3 Wind Loads.** Building shall comply with *Building Code* wind provisions.

**Exceptions:**

1. Detached one and two family dwellings and Group U Occupancies where wind loads at the new location are not higher than the previous location.
2. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.

**EX-1102.4 Seismic loads.** Building shall comply with *Building Code* seismic provisions at the new location.

**Exceptions:**

1. All structures in Seismic Design Categories A and B, and detached one and two family dwellings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C where the seismic loads at the new location are not higher than the previous location.
2. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.

**EX-1102.5 Snow loads.** Structure shall comply with *Building Code* snow loads where snow loads at the new location are higher than the previous location.



**Exception:** Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.

**EX-1102.6 Flood hazard areas.** If relocated or moved into a flood hazard area, structures shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612.

**EX-1102.7 Required inspection and repairs.** The code official shall be authorized to inspect, or require inspection by approved professionals at the expense of the owner, the various structural parts of a relocated building to verify that structural components and connections have not sustained structural damage. Any repairs required by the code official as a result of such inspection shall be made prior to the final approval.

**EX-1102.7.1 Gas piping pressure test.** The entire gas piping system in a moved or relocated building shall be subjected to the pressure test requirements of Section FG-406 of the *Fuel Gas Code* before being returned to service.

## CHAPTER 12 COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES

### SECTION EX-1201 GENERAL

**EX-1201.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter are intended to maintain or increase the current degree of public safety, health and general welfare in existing buildings while permitting repair, alteration, addition and change of occupancy without requiring full compliance with Chapters 4 through 10, except where compliance with other provisions of this code is specifically required in this Chapter.

**EX-1201.2 Applicability.** Structures existing prior to the effective date of the ICC International Code and the respective new D.C. Supplement, in which there is work involving additions, alterations or changes of occupancy shall be made to conform to the requirements of this chapter or the provisions of Chapters 4 through 10. The provisions in Sections EX-1201.2.1 through EX-1201.2.5 shall apply to existing occupancies that will continue to be, or are proposed to be, in Groups A, B, E, F, M, R, and S. These provisions shall not apply to buildings with occupancies in Group H or I.

**EX-1201.2.1 Change in occupancy.** Where an existing building is changed to a new occupancy classification and this section is applicable, the provisions of this section for the new occupancy shall be used to determine compliance with this code.

**EX-1201.2.2 Part change in occupancy.** Where a portion of the building is changed to a new occupancy classification, and that portion is separated from the remainder of the building with fire barrier walls assemblies having a fire resistance rating as required by Table 302.3.3 of the *Building Code* or Section R-321 of the *Residential Code* for the separate occupancies, or with approved compliance alternatives, the portion changed shall be made to conform to the provisions of this section. Where a portion of the building is changed to a new occupancy classification, and that portion is not separated from the remainder of the building with fire separation assemblies having a fire resistance rating as required by Table 302.3.3 of the *Building Code* or Section R-321 of the *Residential Code* for the separate occupancies, or with approved compliance alternatives, the provisions of this section which apply to each occupancy shall apply to the entire building. Where there are conflicting provisions, those requirements which secure the greater public safety shall apply to the entire building or structure.

**EX-1201.2.3 Additions.** Additions to existing buildings shall comply with the requirements of the *Building Code*, *Residential Code* and this code for new construction. The combined height and area of the existing building and the new addition shall not exceed the height and area allowed by Chapter 5. Where a fire wall that complies with Section 705 of the *Building Code* is provided between the addition and the existing building, the addition shall be considered a separate building.

**EX-1201.2.4 Alterations and repairs.** An existing building or portion thereof, which does not comply with the requirements of this code for new construction shall not be altered or repaired in such a manner that results in the building being less safe or sanitary than such

building is currently. If, in the alteration or repair, the current level of safety or sanitation is to be reduced, the portion altered or repaired shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 2 through 12 and Chapters 14 through 33 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-1201.2.5 Accessibility requirements.** All portions of the buildings proposed for change of occupancy shall conform to the accessibility provisions of Chapter 11 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-1201.3 Acceptance.** For repairs, alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to existing buildings that are evaluated in accordance with this section, compliance with this section shall be accepted by the code official.

**EX-1201.3.1 Hazards.** Where the code official determines that an unsafe condition exists, as provided for in Section EX-115, such unsafe condition shall be abated in accordance with Section EX-115.

**EX-1201.3.2 Compliance with other codes.** Buildings that are evaluated in accordance with this section shall comply with the *Fire Code* and *Property Maintenance Code*.

**EX-1201.3.3 Compliance with flood hazard provisions.** In flood hazard areas, buildings that are evaluated in accordance with this section shall comply with *Building Code* Section 1612 if the work covered by this section constitutes substantial improvement.

**EX-1201.4 Investigation and evaluation.** For proposed work covered by this chapter, the building owner shall cause the existing building to be investigated and evaluated in accordance with the provisions of Sections EX-1201.4 through EX-1201.9.

**EX-1201.4.1 Structural analysis.** The owner shall have a structural analysis of the existing building made to determine adequacy of structural systems for the proposed alteration, addition or change of occupancy. The existing building shall be capable of supporting the minimum load requirements of Chapter 16 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-1201.4.2 Submittal.** The results of the investigation and evaluation as required in Section EX-1201.4, along with proposed compliance alternatives, shall be submitted to the code official.

**EX-1201.4.3 Determination of compliance.** The code official shall determine whether the existing building, with the proposed addition, alteration or change of occupancy, complies with the provisions of this section in accordance with the evaluation process in Sections EX-1201.5 through EX-1201.9.

**EX-1201.5 Evaluation.** The evaluation shall be comprised of three categories: fire safety, means of egress and general safety, as described in Sections EX-1201.5.1 through EX-1201.5.3.

**EX-1201.5.1 Fire safety.** Included within the fire safety category are the structural fire resistance, automatic fire detection, fire alarm and fire suppression system features of the facility.

**EX-1201.5.2 Means of egress.** Included within the means of egress category are the configuration, characteristics and support features for means of egress in the facility.

**EX-1201.5.3 General safety.** Included within the general safety category are the fire safety parameters and the means of egress parameters.

**EX-1201.6 Evaluation process.** The evaluation process specified herein shall be followed in its entirety to evaluate existing buildings. Table EX-1201.7 shall be utilized for tabulating the results of the evaluation. References to other sections of this code indicate that compliance with those sections is required in order to gain credit in the evaluation herein outlined. In applying this section to a building with mixed occupancies, where the separation between the mixed occupancies does not qualify for any category indicated in Section EX-1201.6.16, the score for each occupancy shall be determined and the lower score determined for each section of the evaluation process shall apply to the entire building. Where the separation between the mixed occupancies qualifies for any category indicated in Section EX-1201.6.16, the score for each occupancy shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy of the space.

**EX-1201.6.1 Building height.** The value for building height shall be the lesser value determined by the formula in Section EX-1201.6.1.1. Chapter 5 of the *Building Code* shall be used to determine the allowable height of the building, including allowable increases due to automatic sprinklers as provided for in Section EX-504.2. Subtract the actual building height from the allowable and divide by 12 ½ feet. Enter the height value and its sign positive or negative in Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.1, Building Height, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. The maximum score for a building shall be 10.

**EX-1201.6.1.1 Height formula.** The following formulas shall be used in computing the building height value.

**EQUATION EX-12-1**

Height value, feet	=	$\frac{(AH) - (EBH)}{12.5} \times CF$
--------------------------	---	---------------------------------------

Height value, stories	=	$(AS - EBS) \times CF$
-----------------------------	---	------------------------

where:

<i>AH</i>	=	Allowable height in feet from Table 503 of the <i>Building Code</i> .
-----------	---	---

<b><i>EBH</i></b>	=	<b>Existing building height in feet.</b>
<b><i>AS</i></b>	=	<b>Allowable height in stories from Table 503 of the <i>Building Code</i>.</b>
<b><i>EBS</i></b>	=	<b>Existing building height in stories.</b>
<b><i>CF</i></b>	=	<b>1 if <math>(AH) - (EBH)</math> is positive.</b>
<b><i>CF</i></b>	=	<b>Construction-type factor shown in Table EX-1201.6.6(2) if <math>(AH) - (EBH)</math> is negative.</b>

Note. Where mixed occupancies are separated and individually evaluated as indicated in Section EX-1201.6, the values *AH*, *AS*, *EBH* and *EBS* shall be based on the height of the fire area of the occupancy being evaluated.

**EX-1201.6.2 Building area.** The value for building area shall be determined by the formula in Section EX-1201.6.2.2. Section 503 of the *Building Code* and the formula in Section EX-1201.6.2.1 shall be used to determine the allowable area of the building. The allowable area shall be the lesser value calculated by Equations EX-12-2 and EX-12-3. This shall include any allowable increases due to open perimeter and automatic sprinklers as provided for in Section 506 of the *Building Code*. Subtract the actual building area from the allowable area and divide by 1,200 square feet (112 m<sup>2</sup>). Enter the area value and its sign (positive or negative) in Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter 201.6.2, Building Area, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. In determining the area value, the maximum permitted positive value for area is 50 percent of the fire safety score as listed in Table EX-1201.8, Mandatory Safety Scores

**EX-1201.6.2.1 Allowable area formula.** The following formula shall be used in computing allowable area:

**EQUATION EX-12-2**

$\frac{(100 + I_f + \frac{I_s \times A_t}{100})}{100}$	=	Aa
--	---	----

**EQUATION EX-12-3**

Amax.	=	3 x Aa, as calculated in accordance with Section 503.3 of the <i>Building Code</i> .
-------	---	--

$A_{a,max.} = A_{max.}$
Number of stories

where:

AA	=	Allowable area per floor
Is	=	Area increase due to sprinkler protection percent as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3 of the <i>Building Code</i> .
If	=	Area increase due to frontage, percent as calculated in accordance with Section 506.2 of the <i>Building Code</i> .
At	=	Tabular area per floor in accordance with Table 503 of the <i>Building Code</i> square feet.

Amax. = Total area of the entire building.

Aa,max. = Allowable area per floor based on the limitations of Section 503.3 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-1201.6.2.2 Area formula.** The following formula shall be used in computing the area value. Determine the Area Value for each occupancy fire area on a floor by floor basis. For each occupancy, choose the minimum Area Value of the set of values obtained for the particular occupancy.

#### EQUATION EX-12-4

$$\text{Area value } i = \frac{\text{Allowable area}_i}{1,200 \text{ square feet}} \left[ 1 - \frac{\text{Actual area}_i}{\text{Allowable area}_i} + \frac{\text{Actual Area}_n}{\text{Allowable Area}_n} \right]$$

where:

$I$	=	value for an individual separated occupancy on a floor.
$n$	=	number of separated occupancies on a floor.

**EX-1201.6.3 Compartmentation.** Evaluate the compartments created by fire barrier walls which comply with Sections EX-1201.6.3.1 and EX-1201.6.3.2 and which are exclusive of the wall elements considered under Sections EX-1201.6.4 and EX-1201.6.5. Conforming compartments shall be figured as the net area and do not include shafts, chases, stairways, walls or columns. Using Table EX-1201.6.3, determine the appropriate compartmentation value (CV) and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.3, Compartmentation, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.3.1 Wall construction.** A wall used to create separate compartments shall be a fire barrier conforming to Section 706 of the *Building Code* with a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is not divided into more than one compartment, the compartment size shall be taken as the total floor area on all floors.

Where there is more than one compartment within a story, each compartmented area on such story shall be provided with a horizontal exit conforming to Section 1005.3.5 of the *Building Code*. The fire door serving as the horizontal exit between compartments shall be so installed, fitted and gasketed that such fire door will provide a substantial barrier to the passage of smoke.

**EX-1201.6.3.2 Floor/ceiling construction.** A floor/ceiling assembly used to create compartments shall conform to Section 710 of the *Building Code* and shall have a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.3  
COMPARTMENTATION VALUES**

<i>OC CU PA NC Y</i>	Categories					<i>E X - 1 2 0 1 . 6 . 4  T e n a n t  a n d  d w e l l i n g</i>
	<b>A</b> Co mpa rtm ent size equ al to or grea ter than 15,0 00 squ are feet	<b>B</b> Co mpa rtm ent size of 10,0 00 squ are feet	<b>C</b> Co mpa rtm ent size of 7,50 0 squ are feet	<b>D</b> Co mpa rtm ent size of 5,00 0 squ are feet	<b>E</b> Co mpa rtm ent size of 2,50 0 squ are feet or less	
A-1, A-3	0	6	10	14	18	
A-2	4	4	10	14	18	
A-4, B, E, S-2	0	5	10	15	20	
F, M, R, S-1	0	4	10	16	22	

**unit separations.** Evaluate the fire resistance rating of floors and walls separating tenants,

including dwelling units, and not evaluated under Sections EX-1201.6.3 and EX-1201.6.5. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.4, determine the appropriate value and enter that value in Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.4, Tenant and Dwelling Unit Separation, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.4.1 Categories.** The categories for tenant and dwelling unit separations are:

1. Category a — No fire partitions; incomplete fire partitions; no doors; doors not self-closing or automatic closing.
2. Category b — Fire partitions or floor assembly less than 1-hour fire resistance rating or not constructed in accordance with Sections 708 or 710 of the *Building Code*, respectively.
3. Category c — Fire partitions with 1 hour or greater fire resistance rating constructed in accordance with Section 708 of the *Building Code* and floor assemblies with 1-hour but less than 2-hour fire resistance rating constructed in accordance with Section 710 of the *Building Code* or with only one tenant within the fire area.
4. Category d — Fire barriers with 1-hour but less than 2-hour fire resistance rating constructed in accordance with Section 706 of the *Building Code* and floor assemblies with 2-hour or greater fire resistance rating constructed in accordance with Section 710 of the *Building Code*.
5. Category e — Fire barriers and floor assemblies with 2-hour or greater fire resistance rating and constructed in accordance with Sections 706 and 710 of the *Building Code*, respectively.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.4  
SEPARATION VALUES**

A-3, A-4, <del>BC</del> <del>CU</del> , <del>M</del> <del>NC</del> <del>Y</del> <del>S-2</del> A-1	Categories				
	- 4 A	- 3 B	0 C	2 D	4 E
	- 5	- 3	0	1	3
A-2	- 4	- 2	0	2	4
R	- 4	- 2	0	2	4



**EX-1201.6.5 Corridor walls.** Evaluate the fire resistance rating and degree of completeness of walls which create corridors serving the floor, and constructed in accordance with Section 1004 of the *Building Code*. This evaluation shall not include the wall elements considered under Sections EX-1201.6.3 and EX-1201.6.4. Under the categories and Groups in Table EX-1201.6.5, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.5, Corridor Walls, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.5.1 Categories.** The categories for corridor walls are:

1. **Category a — No fire partitions; incomplete firepartitions; no doors; or doors not self-closing.**
2. Category b — Less than 1-hour fire resistance rating or not constructed in accordance with Section 708.4 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — 1-hour to less than 2-hour fire resistance rating, with doors conforming to Section 714 of the *Building Code* or without corridors as permitted by Section 1004 of the *Building Code*.
4. Category d — 2-hour or greater fire resistance rating, with doors conforming to Section 714 of the *Building Code*.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.5  
CORRIDOR WALL VALUES**

<b>OC</b> <b>CU</b> <b>PA</b> <b>NC</b> <b>Y</b>	<b>Categories</b>			
	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C<sub>A</sub></b>	<b>D<sub>A</sub></b>
A-1	- 1 0	- 4	0	2
A-2	- 3	- 1	0	2

	0	2		
A-3, F, M, R, S-1	- 7	- 3	0	2
A-4, B, E, S-2	- 5	- 2	0	5

- a. Corridors not providing at least one-half the travel distance for all occupants on a floor shall use Category b.

**EX-1201.6.6 Vertical openings.** Evaluate the fire resistance rating of vertical exit enclosures, hoistways, escalator openings and other shaft enclosures within the building, and openings between two or more floors. Table EX-1201.6.6(1) contains the appropriate protection values. Multiply that value by the construction-type factor found in Table EX-1201.6.6(2) Enter the vertical opening value and its sign, positive or negative, in Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.6, Vertical Openings, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. If the structure is a one-story building, enter a value of 2. Unenclosed vertical openings that conform to the requirements of Section 707 of the *Building Code* shall not be considered in the evaluation of vertical openings.

**EX-1201.6.6.1 Vertical opening formula.** The following formula shall be used in computing vertical opening value.

Equation EX-12-5

$$VO = \frac{PV}{CF}$$

where:

<i>VO</i>	=	Vertical opening value.
<i>PV</i>	=	Protection value from Table EX-1201.6.6(1)
<i>CF</i>	=	Construction type factor from Table EX-1201.6.6(2)

**TABLE EX-1201.6.6(1)**  
**VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION VALUE**

PROTECTION	VALUE
None (unprotected opening)	-2 times number floors connected
Less than 1 hour	-1 times number floors connected
1 to less than 2 hours	1
2 hours or more	2

**TABLE EX-1201.6.6(2)**  
**CONSTRUCTION-TYPE FACTOR**

<i>F</i> <i>A</i> <i>C</i> <i>T</i> <i>O</i>  <i>R</i>	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
	I - A	I - B	I - A	I - B	I I - A	I I - B	I V	V - A	V - B
	1 . 2	1 . 5	2 . 2	3 . 5	2 . 5	3 . 5	2 . 3	3 . 3	7

**EX-1201.6.7 HVAC systems.** Evaluate the ability of the HVAC system to resist the movement of smoke and fire beyond the point of origin. Under the categories in Section EX-1201.6.7.1, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.7, HVAC Systems, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.7.1 Categories.** The categories for HVAC systems are:

1. Category a — Plenums not in accordance with Section M-602 of the *Mechanical Code*. -10 points.
2. Category b — Air movement in egress elements not in accordance with Section 1004.3.2.4 of the *Building Code*. -5 points.
3. Category c — Both categories a and b are applicable. -15 points.
4. Category d — Compliance of the HVAC system with Section 1004.3.2.4 of the *Building Code* and Section M-602 of the *Mechanical Code*. 0 points.

5. Category e — Systems serving one story; or a central boiler/chiller system without ductwork connecting two or more stories. +5 points.

**EX-1201.6.8 Automatic fire detection.** Evaluate the smoke detection capability based on the location and operation of automatic fire detectors in accordance with Section 907 of the *Building Code* and Section M-907 of the *Mechanical Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.8, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.8, Automatic Fire Detection, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.8.1 Categories.** The categories for automatic fire detection are:

1. Category a — None.
2. Category b — Existing smoke detectors in HVAC systems and maintained in accordance with the *Fire Code*.
3. Category c — Smoke detectors in HVAC systems. The detectors are installed in accordance with the requirements for new buildings in the *Mechanical Code*.
4. Category d — Smoke detectors throughout all floor areas other than individual guest rooms, tenant spaces and dwelling units.
5. Category e — Smoke detectors installed throughout the fire area.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.8  
AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION VALUES**

A-4, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z	Categories				
	4	2	0	4	8
A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	A	B	C	D	E
A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	- 1 0	- 5	0	2	6
A-2	- 2 5	- 5	0	5	9

**EX-1201.6.9 Fire alarm systems.** Evaluate the capability of the fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.9, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.9, Fire Alarm, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.9.1 Categories.** The categories for fire alarm systems are:

1. Category a — None.
2. Category b — Fire alarm system with manual fire alarm boxes in accordance with Section 907.3 of the *Building Code* and alarm notification appliances in accordance with Section 907.9 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — Fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907 of the *Building Code*.
4. Category d — Category c plus a required emergency voice/alarm communications system and a fire command station that conforms to Section 403.8 of the *Building Code* and contains the emergency voice/alarm communications system controls, fire department communication system controls and any other controls specified in Section 911 of the *Building Code* where those systems are provided.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.9  
FIRE ALARM SYSTEM VALUES**

<b>OC CU PA NC Y</b>	<b>Categories</b>			
	<b>A</b>	<b>B<sup>A</sup></b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>
A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, B, E, R	- 1 0	- 5	0	5
F, M, S	0	5	1 0	1 5

- a. For buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system, add 2 points for activation by a sprinkler water flow device.

**EX-1201.6.10 Smoke control.** Evaluate the ability of a natural or mechanical venting, exhaust or pressurization system to control the movement of smoke from a fire. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.10, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.10, Smoke Control, for means of egress and general safety.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.10  
SMOKE CONTROL VALUES**

	A	B	C	D	E	F
A-1, A-2, A-3	0	1	2	3	6	6
A-4, E	0	0	0	1	3	5
B, M, R	0	2 <sub>A</sub>	3 <sub>A</sub>	3 <sub>A</sub>	3 <sub>A</sub>	4 <sub>A</sub>
F, S	0	2 <sub>A</sub>	2 <sub>A</sub>	3 <sub>A</sub>	3 <sub>A</sub>	3 <sub>A</sub>

- a. This value shall be 0 if compliance with Category d or e in Section EX-1201.6.8.1 has not been obtained.

**EX-1201.6.10.1 Categories.** The categories for smoke control are:

1. Category a — None.
2. Category b — The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system. Openings are provided in exterior walls at the rate of 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>) per 50 linear feet (15 240 mm) of exterior wall in each story and distributed around the building perimeter at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm). Such openings shall be readily openable from the inside without a key or separate tool and shall be provided with ready access thereto. In lieu of operable openings, clearly and permanently marked tempered glass panels shall be used.
3. Category c — One enclosed exit stairway, with ready access thereto, from each occupied floor of the building. The stairway has operable exterior windows and the building has openings in accordance with Category b.

4. Category d — One smoke-proof enclosure and the building has openings in accordance with Category b.
5. Category e — The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system. Each fire area is provided with a mechanical air-handling system designed to accomplish smoke containment. Return and exhaust air shall be moved directly to the outside without recirculation to other fire areas of the building under fire conditions. The system shall exhaust not less than six air changes per hour from the fire area. Supply air by mechanical means to the fire area is not required. Containment of smoke shall be considered as confining smoke to the fire area involved without migration to other fire areas. Any other tested and approved design which will adequately accomplish smoke containment is permitted.
6. Category f — Each stairway shall be one of the following. a smoke-proof enclosure in accordance with Section 1005.3.2.5 of the *Building Code*; pressurized in accordance with Section 909.20.5 of the *Building Code*; or shall have operable exterior windows.

**EX-1201.6.11 Means of egress capacity and number.** Evaluate the means of egress capacity and the number of exits available to the building occupants. In applying this section, the means of egress are required to conform to Sections 1004 of the *Building Code* (with the exception of Section 1004.2.4), 1003 of the *Building Code* (except that the minimum width required by this section shall be determined solely by the width for the required capacity in accordance with Tables 1003.2.3 of the *Building Code*), 1005 and 1006 of the *Building Code*. The number of exits credited are the number that are available to each occupant of the area being evaluated. Existing fire escapes shall be accepted as a component in the means of egress when conforming to Section EX-605.3.1.2. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.11, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.11, Means of Egress Capacity, for means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.11.1 Categories.** The categories for means of egress capacity and number of exits are:

1. Category a - Compliance with the minimum required means of egress capacity or number of exits is achieved through the use of a fire escape in accordance with Section EX-605.3.1.2
2. Category b — Capacity of the means of egress complies with Section 1003 of the *Building Code* and the number of exits complies with the minimum number required by Section 1005 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — Capacity of the means of egress is equal to or exceeds 125 percent of the required means of egress capacity, the means of egress complies with the minimum required width dimensions specified in the code and the number of exits

complies with the minimum number required by Section 1005 of the *Building Code*.

4. Category d — The number of exits provided exceeds the number of exits required by Section 1005 of the *Building Code*. Exits shall be located a distance apart from each other equal to not less than that specified in Section 1004.2.2 of the *Building Code*.
5. Category e — The area being evaluated meets both Categories c and d.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.11  
MEANS OF EGRESS VALUES**

<i>OC CU PA NC Y</i>	Categories				
	A	B	C	D	E
A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, E	- 1 0	0	2	8	1 0
M	- 3	0	1	2	4
B, F, S	- 1	0	0	0	0
R	- 3	0	0	0	0

- a. The values indicated are for buildings six stories or less in height. For buildings over six stories in height, add an additional -10 points.

**EX-1201.6.12 Dead ends.** In spaces required to be served by more than one means of egress, evaluate the length of the exit access travel path in which the building occupants are confined to a single path of travel. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.12, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.12, Dead Ends, for means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.12.1 Categories.** The categories for dead ends are:



1. Category a — Dead end of 35 feet (10 670 mm) in unsprinklered buildings or 70 feet (21 340 mm) in sprinklered buildings.
2. Category b — Dead end of 20 feet (6096 mm); or 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Group B in accordance with Section 1004.3.2.3, exception 2 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — No dead ends; or ratio of length to width ( $l/w$ ) is less than 2.5:1.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.12  
DEAD-END VALUES**

OC CU PA NC Y	Categories		
	A	B	C
A-1, A-3, A-4, B, E, F, M, R, S	- 2	0	2
A-2, E	- 2	0	2

a. For dead-end distances between categories, the dead-end value shall be obtained by adding the values for the two categories.

**EX-1201.6.13 Maximum travel distance to an exit.** Evaluate the length of exit access travel to an approved exit. Determine the appropriate points in accordance with the following equation and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.13, Maximum Exit Access Travel Distance, for means of egress and general safety. The maximum allowable exit access travel distance shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004.2.4 of the *Building Code*.

Points	=	20	Maximum allowable travel distance	-	Maximum actual travel distance
		x			
Maximum allowable travel distance					

**EX-1201.6.14 Elevator control.** Evaluate the passenger elevator equipment and controls that are available to the fire department to reach all occupied floors. Elevator recall controls shall be provided in accordance with the *Fire Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in

Table EX-1201.6.14, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.14, Elevator Control, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. The values shall be zero for a single story building.

**EX-1201.6.14.1 Categories.** The categories for elevator controls are:

1. Category a — No elevator.
2. Category b — Any elevator without Phase I and II recall.
3. Category c — All elevators with Phase I and II recall as required by the *Fire Code*.
4. Category d — All meet Category c; or Category b where permitted to be without recall; and at least one elevator that complies with new construction requirements serves all occupied floors.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.14  
ELEVATOR CONTROL VALUES**

<i>Elevator Travel</i>	<b>Categories</b>			
	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>
Less than 25 feet of travel above or below the primary level of elevator access for emergency fire-fighting or rescue personnel	- 2	0	0	+ 2
Travel of 25 feet or more above or below the primary level of elevator access for emergency fire-fighting or rescue personnel	- 4	N P	0	+ 4

For SI: 1 foot  
304.8 mm.

**EX-1201.6.15 Means of egress emergency lighting.** Evaluate the presence of and reliability of means of egress emergency lighting. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.15, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.15, Means of Egress Emergency Lighting, for means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.15.1 Categories.** The categories for means of egress emergency lighting are:

1. Category a — Means of egress lighting and exit signs not provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702 of the *Building Code*.
2. Category b — Means of egress lighting and exit signs provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — Emergency power provided to means of egress lighting and exit signs which provides protection in the event of power failure to the site or building.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.15  
MEANS OF EGRESS EMERGENCY LIGHTING VALUES**

<b>NUMBER OF EXITS REQUIRED BY SECTION 1005.2 OF THE INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE</b>	<b>Categories</b>		
	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
Two or more exits	NP	0	4
Minimum or one exit	0	1	1

**EX-1201.6.16 Mixed occupancies.** Where a building has two or more occupancies that are not in the same occupancy classification, the separation between the mixed occupancies shall be evaluated in accordance with this section. Where there is no separation between the mixed occupancies or the separation between mixed occupancies does not qualify for any of the categories indicated in Section EX-1201.6.16.1, the building shall be evaluated as indicated in Section EX-1201.6 and the value for mixed occupancies shall be zero. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.16, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.16, Mixed Occupancies, for fire safety and general safety. For buildings without mixed occupancies, the value shall be zero.

**EX-1201.6.16.1 Categories.** The categories for mixed occupancies are:

1. Category a — Minimum 1-hour fire barriers between occupancies.
2. Category b — Fire barriers between occupancies in accordance with Section 302.3.3 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — Fire barriers between occupancies having a fire resistance rating of not less than twice that required by Section 302.3.3 of the *Building Code*.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.16  
MIXED OCCUPANCY VALUES<sup>A</sup>**

<b><i>OCCUPANCY</i></b>	<b>Categories</b>		
	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
A-1, A-2, R	-10	0	10
A-3, A-4, B, E, F, M, S	-5	0	5

- a. For fire-resistance ratings between categories, the value shall be obtained by linear interpolation.

**EX-1201.6.17 Sprinklers.** Evaluate the ability to suppress a fire based on the installation of an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *Building Code*. “Required sprinklers” shall be based on the requirements of this code. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.17, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.17, Automatic Sprinklers, for fire safety, means of egress divided by 2 and general safety. Hi-Rise buildings defined in Section 403.1 of the *Building Code* that undergo a change in occupancy to Use groups R, shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 403.2 and Chapter 9 of the *Building Code*.

**EX-1201.6.17.1 Categories.** The categories for automatic sprinkler system protection are:

1. Category a — Sprinklers are required throughout; sprinkler protection is not provided or the sprinkler system design is not adequate for the hazard protected in accordance with Section 903 of the *Building Code*.
2. Category b — Sprinklers are required in a portion of the building; sprinkler protection is not provided or the sprinkler system design is not adequate for the hazard protected in accordance with Section 903 of the *Building Code*.
3. Category c — Sprinklers are not required; none are provided.
4. Category d — Sprinklers are required in a portion of the building; sprinklers are provided in such portion; the system is one which complied with the code at the time of installation and is maintained and supervised in accordance with Section 903 of the *Building Code*.
5. Category e — Sprinklers are required throughout; sprinklers are provided throughout in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *Building Code*.

6. Category f — Sprinklers are not required throughout; sprinklers are provided throughout in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *Building Code*.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.17  
SPRINKLER SYSTEM VALUES**

A								& B
		A	B	C	D	E	F	
	A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	- 6	- 3	0	2	4	6	
	A-2	- 4	- 2	0	1	2	4	
	A-4, B, E, S-2	- 1 2	- 6	0	3	6	1 2	Evaluate initiate by making available the Standpipes with

Section 905.0 of *Building Code*. “Required Standpipes” shall be based on the requirements of *Building Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table EX-1201.6.18, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into table EX-1201.7 under Safety Parameter EX-1201.6.18, Standpipes, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

**EX-1201.6.18.1 Standpipe:** The categories for Standpipe systems are:

1. Category a – Standpipes are required; Standpipe is not provided or the Standpipe system design is not in compliance with Sections 905.3 of the *Building Code*.
2. Category b – Standpipes are not required; none are provided.
3. Category c – Standpipes are required; standpipes are provided in accordance with Section 905 of the *Building Code*.
4. Category d – Standpipes are not required; standpipes are provided in accordance with Section 905 of the *Building Code*.

**TABLE EX-1201.6.18  
STANDPIPE SYSTEM VALUES**

<b>OCCUPANCY</b>	<b>Categories</b>			
	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>
A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	-6	0	4	6
A-2	-4	0	2	4
A-4, B, E, S-2	-12	0	6	12

- a. This option cannot be taken if category a or b in section EX-1201.6.17 has been obtained.

**EX-1201.6.19 Incidental use.** Evaluate the protection of incidental use areas in accordance with Section 302.1.1 of the *Building Code*. Do not include those where this code requires suppression throughout the building including covered mall buildings, high-rise buildings, public garages and unlimited area buildings. Assign the lowest score for the building or fire area being evaluated. If there are no specific occupancy areas in the building or fire area being evaluated, the value shall be zero.

**EX-1201.7 Building score.** After determining the appropriate data from Section EX-1201.6, enter those data in Table EX-1201.7 and total the building score.

**EX-1201.8 Safety scores.** The values in Table EX-1201.8 are the required mandatory safety scores for the evaluation process listed in Section EX-1201.6.

**EX-1201.9 Evaluation of building safety.** The mandatory safety score in Table EX-1201.8 shall be subtracted from the building score in Table EX-1201.7 for each category. Where the final score for any category equals zero or more, the building is in compliance with the requirements of this section for that category. Where the final score for any category is less than zero, the building is not in compliance with the requirements of this section.

**EX-1201.9.1 Mixed occupancies.** For mixed occupancies, the following provisions shall apply:

1. Where the separation between mixed occupancies does not qualify for any category indicated in Section EX-1201.6.16, the mandatory safety scores for the occupancy with the lowest general safety score in Table EX-1201.8 shall be utilized. (See Section EX-1201.6.)
2. Where the separation between mixed occupancies qualifies for any category indicated in Section EX-1201.6.16, the mandatory safety scores for each occupancy shall be placed against the evaluation scores for the appropriate occupancy.

**TABLE EX-1201.7  
SUMMARY Sheet – Building Code**

Existing Occupancy _____	Proposed occupancy _____		
Year building was constructed _____	Number of stories _____ Height in _____		
Type of construction _____	Area per f _____		
Percentage of Frontag Increase _____ %	Percentage of height reduction _____ %		
Completely suppressed: Ye _____ Nc _____	Corridor wal rating _____		
Compartmentation Ye _____ Nc _____	Required door closers: Yes _____ Nc _____		
Fire resistance rating of vertical opening enclosures _____			
Type of HVAC system _____	Serving number o floors _____		
Automatic fire detection: Yes _____ No _____	Type and Location _____		
Fire alarm system Yes _____ No _____	Type _____		
Smoke control: Yes _____ No _____	Type _____		
Adequate exit rou Yes _____ No _____	Dead ends Yes _____ Nc _____		
Maximum exit access tra distance _____	Elevator controls: Yes _____ Nc _____		
Means of egress emerge lighting: Yes _____ Nc _____	Mixed occupancies: Yes _____ Nc _____		
<b>SAFETY PARAMETERS</b>	<b>FIRE SAFETY</b>	<b>MEANS OF EGRESS (ME)</b>	<b>GENERAL SAFETY (GS)</b>
EX-1201.6.1 Building Height EX-1201.6.2 Building Area EX-1201.6.3 Compartmentation			
EX-1201.6.4 Tenant and Dwelling Unit Separations EX-1201.6.5 Corridor Walls EX-1201.6.6 Vertical Openings			



EX-1201.6.7 HVAC Systems EX-1201.6.8 Automatic Fire Detection EX-1201.6.9 Fire Alarm System			
EX-1201.6.10 Smoke control EX-1201.6.11 Means of egress EX-1201.6.12 Dead ends	**** **** ****		
EX-1201.6.13 Maximum Exit Access Travel Distance EX-1201.6.14 Elevator Control EX-1201.6.15 Means of Egress Emergency Lighting	**** ****		
EX-1201.6.16 Mixed Occupancies EX-1201.6.17 Sprinklers EX-1201.6.18 Standpipes EX-1201.6.19 Incidental Use Area Protection		**** divide by 2	
Building score – total value			

\*\*\*\* No applicable value to be inserted

**TABLE EX-1201.8**  
**mandatory safety scores<sup>a</sup>**

<b>OCCUPANCY</b>	<b>FIRE SAFETY (MFS)</b>	<b>MEANS OF EGRESS (MME)</b>	<b>GENERAL SAFETY (MGS)</b>
A-1	20	31	31
A-2	21	32	32
A-3	22	33	33
A-4, E	29	40	40
B	30	40	40
F	24	34	34
M	23	40	40
R	21	38	38
S-1	19	29	29
S-2	29	39	39

- a MFS = Mandatory Fire Safety  
MME = Mandatory Means of Egress  
MGS = Mandatory General Safety

**TABLE EX-1201.9  
EVALUATION FORMULAS<sup>a</sup>**

FORMULA	TEX- 1207.1	TEX- 1201.7	Score	PASS	FAIL
FS - MFS $\geq$ 0	_____ (FS)	_____ (MFS)	= _____	_____	_____
ME - MME $\geq$ 0	_____ (ME)	_____ (MME)	= _____	_____	_____
GS - MGS $\geq$ 0	_____ (GS)	_____ (MGS)	= _____	_____	_____

a FS = Fire Safety      MFS = Mandatory Fire Safety  
 ME = Means of Egress      MME = Mandatory Means of Egress  
 GS = General Safety      MGS = Mandatory General Safety

## **CHAPTER 13 CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS**

### **SECTION EX – 1301 GENERAL**

**EX – 1301.1 Safeguards during construction:** All construction work covered in the Existing Building Code, including any related demolition, shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 33 of the *Building Code*.

**CHAPTER 14  
REFERENCED STANDARDS**

**AISC** American Institute of Steel Construction  
One East Wacker Drive, Suite 3100  
Chicago, IL 60601-2001

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AISC	Steel Design Guide Series 12-Modifications of Existing Welded Steel Moment Frame Connections	

**ASCE** American Society of Civil Engineers  
1801 Alexander Bell Drive  
Reston, VA 20191-4400

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ASCE 31-XX	Seismic Evaluation of existing Buildings (updated version of FEMA 310).....	407.1.1, 407.1.1.3, Table 407.1.1.2
SEI/ASCE 11-99	Guideline for Structural Condition Assessment Of Existing Buildings	

**FEMA** Federal Emergency Management Agency  
Federal Center Plaza  
500 C Street, S.W.  
Washington, DC 20472

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
FEMA 351	Recommended Seismic Evaluation and Upgrade Criteria for Existing Welded Steel	
FEMA 352	Recommended Post-Earthquake Evaluation and Repair Criteria for Welded Steel Moment-Frame Buildings	
FEMA 356	Pre-standard for the Seismic Rehabilitation of Buildings (updated version of FEMA 273).....	407.1.1.1, 407.1.1.2, 407.1.1.3, Table 407.1.1.2

**ICC** International Code Council  
5203 Leesburg Pike, Suite 708  
Falls Church, VA 22041

Standard	Referenced
----------	------------

*District of Columbia Building Code Supplement of 2003*

reference number	Title	in code section number
ICC EC	ICC Electric Code.....	503.3, 608.1, 808.1, 808.2, 808.3, 808.4
IBC	International Building Code.....	202
		301.4, 401.4, 402.1, 403.2, 407.1.1.1, 407.1.1.2, 407.1.1.1.3, T407.1.1.2, 407.1.2, 407.2, 407.3.1, 407.2.3.1.1, 407.3.5, 501.2, 501.3, 503.1, 503.2, 503.3, 506.1, 507.2.1, 601.3, 602.1, 603.2.1, 603.3.2, 603.4, 603.5.2, 604.2, 604.2.2, 604.2.3, 604.2.4, 604.3, 605.3.1, 605.4.3, 605.5, 605.6, 605.7.1, 605.8.1, 605.9.2, 605.10.2, 607.1, 607.2, 607.4, 607.4.1, 607.4.3, 704.1.2, 704.2 704.2.1, 705.2, 705.3, 707.2, 707.3, 707.5.1, 707.6, 707.7, 801.1, 802.1, 807.1, 807.2, 807.3.1, 812.1.1, 812.1.2, 812.3.1, 812.4.1.1, 812.4.1.2, 812.4.1.3, 812.4.2.1, 812.4.2.2, 812.4.2.3, 812.4.3.1, 812.4.3.3, 812.4.4.1, 812.4.4.3, 812.5, 902.1, 902.2, 903.1, 903.2, 903.3, 903.3.1, 903.3.2, 903.4, 903.5, 904.1, 904.2, 1001.4, 1002.3, 1002.5, 1004.2, 1004.9, 100.16, 1005.1.4, 1101.2, 1102.1, 1102.2, 1102.2.1, 1102.3, 1102.4, 1102.5, 1102.6, 1201.2.2, 1201.2.3, 1201.2.4, 1201.2.5, 1201.3.3, 1201.4.1, 1201.6.1, 1201.6.1.1, 1201.6.2, 1201.6.2.1, 1201.6.3.1, 1201.6.3.2, 1201.6.4.1, 120.6.5, 1201.6.5.1, 1201.6.6, 1201.6.7.1, 1201.6.8, 1201.6.9.1, 1201.6.10.1, 1201.6.11, 1201.6.11.1, 1201.6.12.1, 1201.6.15.1, Table 1201.6.15, 1201.6.16.1, 1201.6.17, 1201.6.17.1, 1201.6.18, 1201.6.18.1,, 1201.6.19, B1301.6.4.1, B1201.6.7, B1306.3
IECC	International Energy Conservation Code.....	503.3, 906.1
IFC	International Fire Code .....	603.2.1, 603.2.3, 604.4.1.1, 604.4.1.2, 604.4.1.3, 604.4.1.5, 604.4.3, 1201.3.2, 1201.6.8.1, 121.6.14, 1201.6.14.1, 1304.1, 1304.2,
IMC	International Mechanical Code.....	503.3, 609.1, 702.1.1, 702.2.1, 809.1, 1201.6.7.1, 1201.6.8, 1201.6.8.1,
IPC	International Plumbing Code .....	410.2, 503.3, 610.1, 810.1, 810.2, 810.3, 810.5, 1301.5
IPMC	International Property Maintenance Code .....	1101.2, 1201.3.2

*District of Columbia Building Code Supplement of 2003*

IFGC                                      International Fuel Gas Code .....411.2.1, 503.3, 503.3.1,  
611.1, 710.1, 1102.7.1

IRC                                        International Residential Code.....403.2, 407.1.2, 507.2.1, 607.4.3, 608.3,  
707.5.1, 707.6, 903.2, 903.3, 904, 1102.1,  
1201.2.2, 1201.2.3

---

**HUD**                                      U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development  
Washington, D.C. 20410

Or  
Superintendent of Documents  
U.S. Government printing Office  
Washington, D.C. 20402

---

Rehabilitation Guideline #8	Referenced
Guidelines on Fire Ratings of archaic Materials and Assemblies	in code
	section number
	605.5.1

---